AL-BAHER



CONNECT PLUS

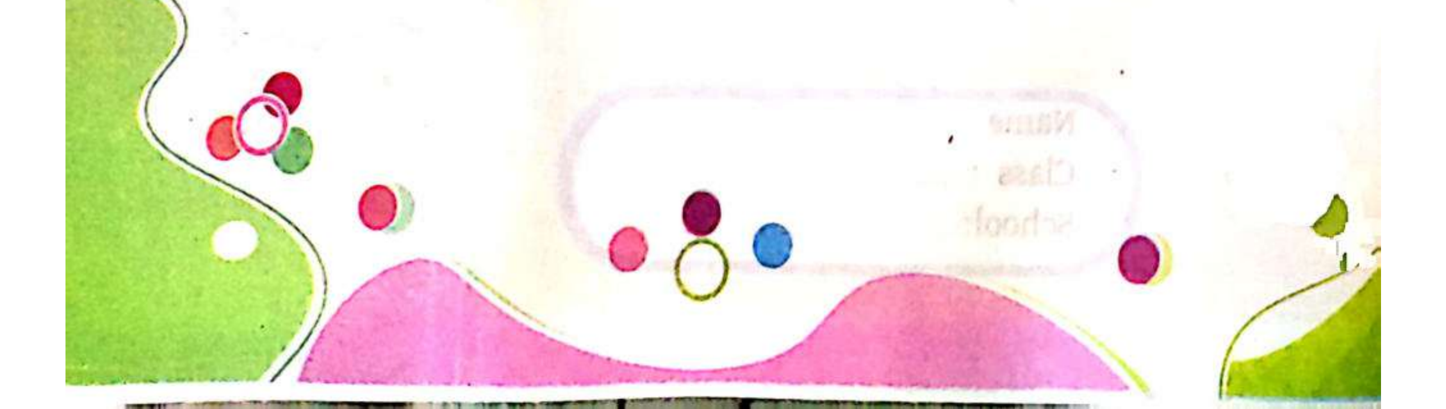
4th 2025
Primary
Second Term



Contents

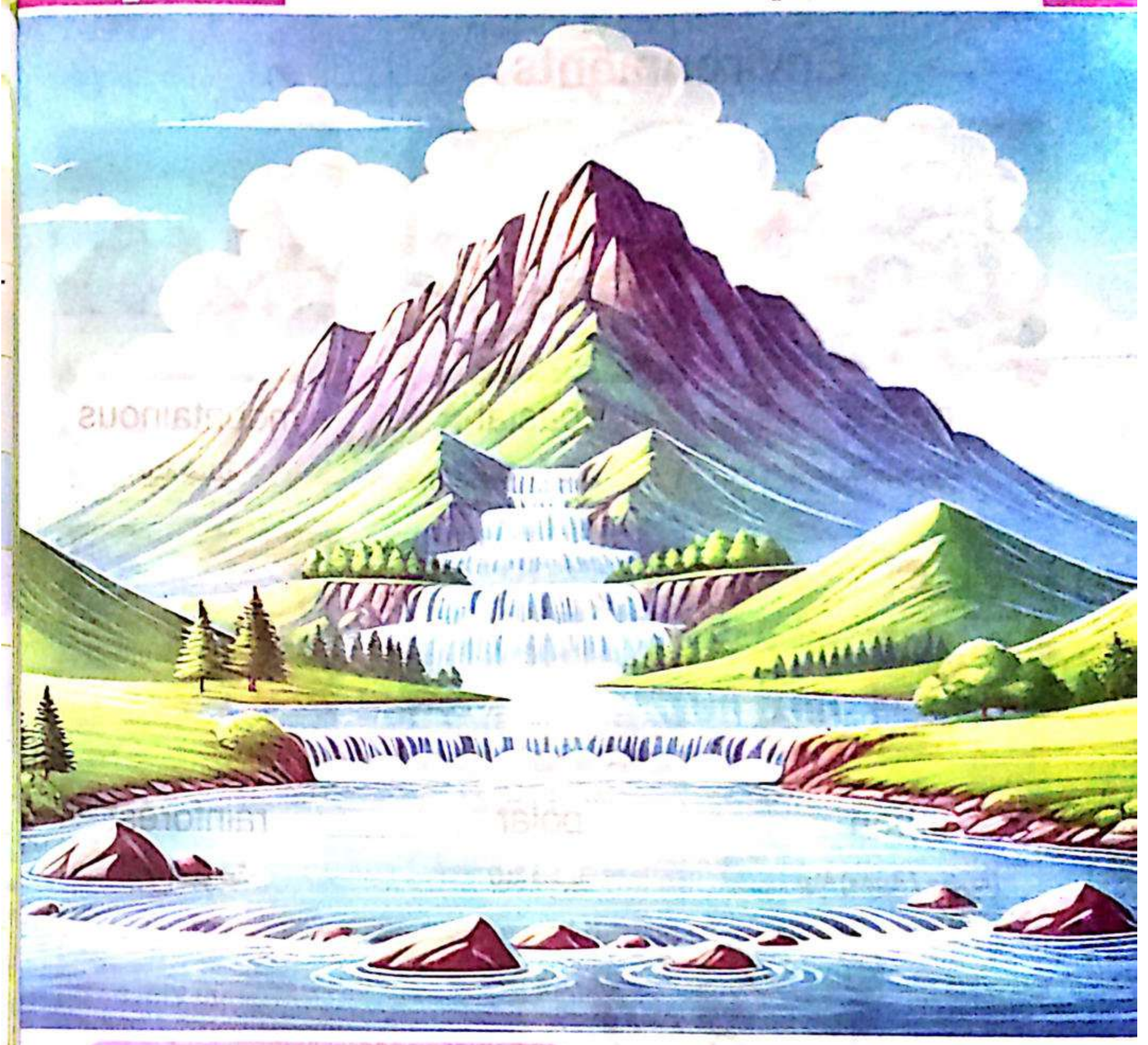
Theme (3): My society

Theme 4: I'm a responsible person



Unit 7 All around the world

في جميع أنحاء العالم



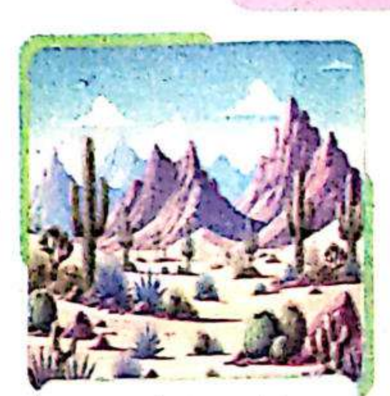
In this unit, the students will ...

• understand environments around the world.	يفهم البيئات في جميع أنحاء العالم.
• learn about renewable and non-renewable energy.	يتعلم عن الطاقة المتجددة وغير المتجددة.
• form and use the present continuous.	يكون ويستخدم المضارع المستمر.
• read about different energy sources.	يقرأ عن مصادر الطاقة المختلفة.
• understand the meaning of words in context.	يفهم معاني الكلمات في سياقها.
• compare and order high numbers.	يقارن ويرتّب الأرقام الكبيرة.
• talk about how to help the environment.	يتحدث عن كيفية مساعدة البيئة.
• make a competition entry to improve their environment.	يشارك في مسابقة لتحسين البيئة.

Lesson (1) OUR WORLD

Listen and repeat.

Environments البيئات



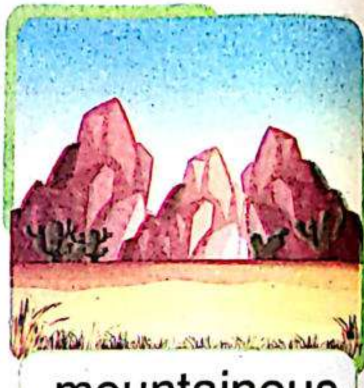
desert

بيئة صحراوية



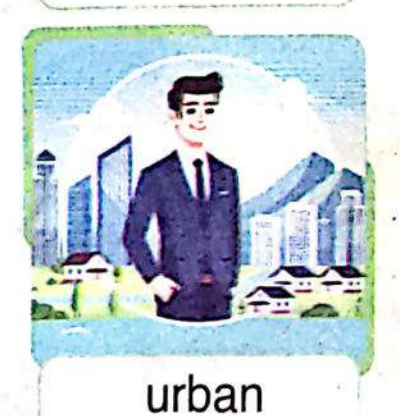
coastal

بيئة ساحلية



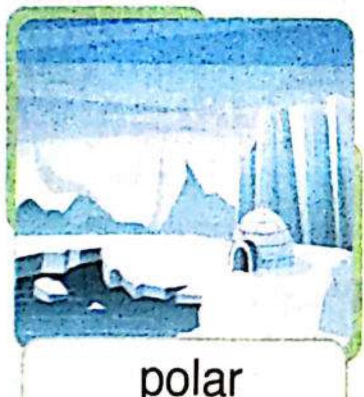
mountainous

بيئة جبلية



urban

بيئة (مدنية / حضرية)



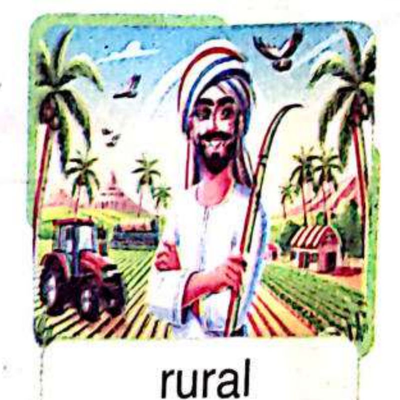
polar

بيئة قطبية



rainforest

بيئة استوائية



rural

بيئة ريفية



rocky

بيئة صخرية

Help your child identify different environments.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على البيئات المختلفة.

Lesson (1)



Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

reptiles	زواحف	The Nile Delta	دلتا النيل
swamps	مستنقعات	sparsely populated	قليلة السكان
dry	جاف	densely populated	مكتظة بالسكان
continent	قارة	metropolitan	عاصمي (متعلق بالعاصمة)
traffic	المرور	Antarctic	منطقة القطب الجنوبي
mammals	ثدييات	Arctic	منطقة القطب الشمالي



Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
breathe	يتنفس	breathed
survive	ينجو/ يعيش	survived
cover	يغطي	covered
rain	تمطر	rained

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
find	يجد	found
get	يحصل على	got
make	يصنع	made
have / has	يملك / لديه	had



Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

lots of	كثير من	have to	يجب أن
special ways	طرق خاصة	travel around	يسافر حول
survive without	يحيا بدون	at the top of	على قمة
on every continent	في كل قارة	different kinds of	أنواع مختلفة من

Did you know?

The Amazon covers 40% of South America and is the world's largest rainforest. The second largest is the Congo in Africa.



تغطي غابة الأمازون 40% من مساحة أمريكا الجنوبية، وهي أكبر غابة مطيرة في العالم. ثاني أكبر غابة مطيرة هي الكونغو في أفريقيا.

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Did you know?



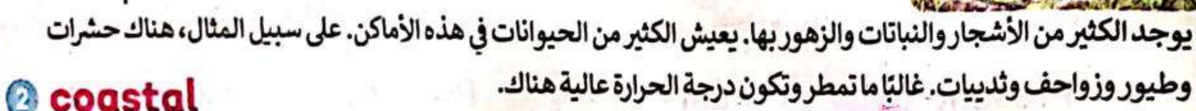
It is harder to get enough oxygen when you breathe at the top of a high mountain. If you aren't used to being in the mountains, it can make you sick!

من الصعب الحصول على ما يكفي من الاكسجين عندما تتنفس على قمة جبل عالٍ. اذا لم تكن معتادًا على التواجد في الجبال، فقد يجعلك ذلك مريضًا!

Read, then answer the questions.

1 rainforest

There are lots of trees, plants and flowers here. Lots of animals live in these places. For example, there are insects, birds, reptiles, and mammals. It often rains and the temperature is hot.



يوجد الكثير من الأشجار والنباتات والزهور بها. يعيش الكثير من الحيوانات في هذه الأماكن. على سبيل المثال، هناك حشرات وطيور وزواحف وثدييات. غالبًا ما تمطر وتكون درجة الحرارة عالية هناك.

2 coastal

This environment is where the land is next to the sea. In some places there are beaches with sand, and sometimes there are swamps and forests. The Nile Delta is an example, and so is the Red Sea.

هذه البيئة هي المكان الذي تكون فيه الأرض بجوار البحر. في بعض الأماكن توجد شواطئ ذات رمال وأحيانًا توجد مستنقعات وغابات. دلتا النيل مثال على ذلك وكذلك البحر الأحمر.



3 desert

It is very dry in this environment. The animals and plants that live here have to find clever ways to survive without a lot of water. You can find these environments on every continent, and they can be hot or cold.

الطقس جاف جدًا في هذه البيئة. يجب على الحيوانات والنباتات التي تعيش فيها إيجاد طرق للبقاء على قيد الحياة دون الكثير من الماء. توجد هذه البيئات في كل قارة. ويمكن أن تكون حارة أو باردة.

4 rural

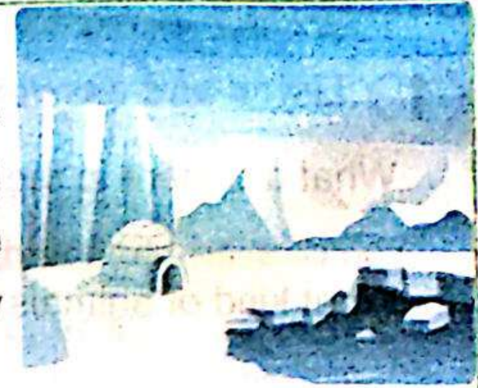


There aren't many houses or buildings here, so this place often has more animals and plants. Not many people live here, so it is sparsely populated.
It can have lots of different kinds of weather, but it's a quiet place to live.

لا يوجد العديد من المنازل والمباني بها. لذلك غالبًا ما تحتوي هذه البيئة على المزيد من الحيوانات والنباتات. لا يعيش الكثير من الناس فيها لذلك فهي قليلة السكان. يمكن أن يكون بها الكثير من حالات الطقس المختلفة. لكنها مكان هادئ للعيش فيه.

Help you child understand environments around the world.

ساعد طفلك أن يفهم البيئات المختلفة حول العالم.



⑤ polar

There are two of these environments in the world: The Arctic and the Antarctic. It is cold and windy here, with a lot of ice. Some animals have found ways to live here, but there aren't any trees or flowers.

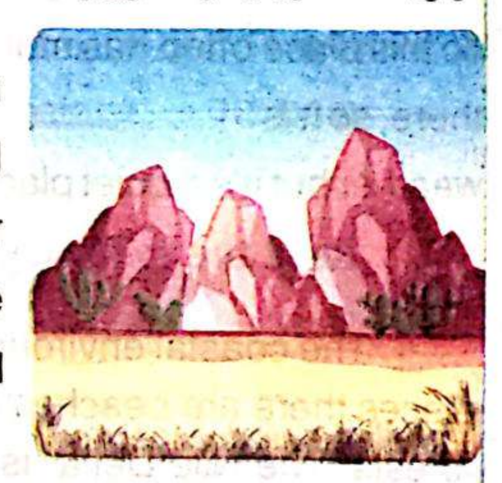
هناك نوعان من هذه البيئات في العالم: القطب الشمالي والقطب الجنوبي. الجو بارد وعاصف في هذه البيئة. وبها الكثير من الجليد. تجد بعض الحيوانات طرقًا للعيش فيها ولا توجد أي أشجار أو أزهار.



⑥ urban

This is a metropolitan area which is densely populated. Most people in the world live in this kind of environment. There are lots of buildings, and there can be a lot of traffic, too.

هذه المنطقة حضرية وكثيفة السكان. يعيش معظم الناس في العالم في هذا النوع من البيئات. يوجد الكثير من المباني. ويمكن أن يكون هناك الكثير من حركة المرور أيضًا.



⑦ mountainous

It can be difficult for people to live and travel in this high environment. They are very beautiful places, but they can be cold, with lots of rain or snow, and the weather can change quickly. The animals and plants that live here have to find special ways to survive.

قد يكون من الصعب على الناس العيش والسفر في هذه البيئة المرتفعة. إنها أماكن جميلة جدًا. لكن يمكن أن تكون باردة، مع هطول الكثير من الأمطار أو الثلوج، ويمكن أن يتغير الطقس بسرعة. يتعين على الحيوانات والنباتات التي تعيش بها إيجاد طرق خاصة للبقاء على قيد الحياة.

Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1) There is always a beach in a costal environment. ( )



2) There are polar environments on every continent. ( )

3) An urban environment is a quiet place to live. ( )

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What are there in the rainforest?

....

2. What kind of animals live in these places?

....

3. How often does it rain there?

....

4. What's the weather like there?

....

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

weather - plants - sparsely - rural

There aren't many houses or buildings in the 1)...................... environment so this place often has more animals and 2)...................... Not many people live there, so it is 3)............................ populated. It can have lots of different kinds of weather but it's a quiet place to live.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

The coastal environment is where the land is next to the sea. In some places there are beaches with sand, and sometimes there are swamps and forests. The Nile Delta is an example, and so is the Red Sea.

The desert is very dry. The animals and plants that live <u>here</u> have to find clever ways to survive without a lot of water. You can find these environments on every continent, and they can be hot or cold.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The Nile Delta is a .... environment.

   a) desert b) coastal c) urban d) rural

2. The underlined word "here" refers to the .... environment.

   a) coastal b) rural c) desert d) urban

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What is the coastal environment?..
4. Describe the desert. ....
5. Mention two examples of the coastal environment..
6. What do the animals and plants that live in the desert have to do? ....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The .... environment has little water.
   a) country b) desert c) coastal d) rural
2. The .... environment is noisy and has a lot of traffic.
   a) urban b) rural c) coastal d) polar
3. There are no trees or flowers in the .... environment.
   a) rural b) rainforest c) coastal d) polar
4. It's hard for people and animals to survive in a .... environment.
   a) coastal b) mountainous c) urban d) rural
5. There are often more animals than people in a .... environment.
   a) rural b) urban c) coastal d) polar

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. is - a quiet - The - to - place - live - environment - rural - .

....

2. is - a beach - There - always - environment - a coastal - in - .

....

3. kind of - do - you - What - in - live - environment - ?

....

6 Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:

Guiding elements: **Rainforest environment**

(Rainforest - rains - hot - insects and birds - temperature)

....

....



LANGUAGE

Definitions

climate change	when the weather and temperature change over a long period of time	تغير المناخ
air pollution	when the air is dirty; this can make people or animals sick	تلوث الهواء
water pollution	when water is dirty because of chemicals or plastic	تلوث الماء
fuel	this is something we burn to make heat or power	وقود
carbon dioxide	a gas in the atmosphere known as CO_2. It can be dangerous when there is too much in the air	غاز ثاني أكسيد الكربون
emissions	these are made, for example by factories, cars and lorries, they can cause air pollution	انبعاثات

Vocabulary

forest fires (WB)	حرائق الغابات	recycled plastic	بلاستيك معاد تصنيعه
chemicals (WB)	مواد كيميائية	volcanic eruptions (WB)	ثوران بركاني
pollution	تلوث	podcast	إذاعة صوتية
atmosphere	الغلاف الجوي	factories	مصانع
dirty	ملوث / قذر	garbage	قمامة / مهملات
heat	حرارة	article	مقال
gas	غاز	amazing	رائع / مدهش
ocean	محيط	power	طاقة

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Lesson (2)



Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة — **Irregular verbs** أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
talk	يتكلم	talked	learn	يتعلم	learnt / learned
try	يحاول	tried	drive	يقود	drove
appear	يظهر	appeared	burn	يحترق	burnt
use	يستخدم	used	wear	يرتدي	wore
pick up	يلتقط	picked up	throw	يرمي	threw
cause	يسبب	caused	put	يضع	put
wait	ينتظر	waited	do / does	يفعل	did



Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

because of	بسبب	go into	يذهب إلى الداخل
known as	معروف بـ	in the air	في الهواء
full of	مليء بـ	to make heat	لتوليد الحرارة
over a long period of time			على مدى فترة طويلة من الزمن

Look, listen and read.



Woman 1 : Hello, and welcome to our Clean World podcast! We live in an amazing world, but the things that people do can damage the environment. Today we're talking about pollution? What is it, and what are we doing to stop it?

أهلا ومرحبًا بكم في نشرتنا الصوتية عن "عالمنا النظيف"! نحن نعيش في عالم مذهل لكن الأشياء التي يفعلها الناس ممكن أن تدمر البيئة. سنتحدث اليوم عن التلوث. ماهو التلوث وماذا نفعل لإيقافه؟

Woman 2 : There are two main types of pollution - air pollution and water pollution. Air pollution is caused by the things that people do, such as driving cars and trucks, or making things in factories. When we burn fuels, it makes carbon dioxide emissions. Over a long time, this can lead to climate change, because there is too much carbon dioxide in the atmosphere. Things in the natural world, such forest fires, or volcanic eruptions, can also cause air pollution. Chemicals from factories or farms go into rivers or to sea to cause water pollution. There is also a problem with plastic pollution - there's a lot of plastic garbage in rivers and oceans, and this is very bad for the animals that live there.

هناك نوعان أساسيان من التلوث؛ تلوث الهواء وتلوث الماء. يحدث تلوث الهواء بسبب الأشياء التي يفعلها الناس، مثل قيادة السيارات والشاحنات أو صناعة الأشياء في المصانع. عندما نحرق الوقود، يصدر انبعاثات ثاني أكسيد الكربون. وعلى المدى الطويل يمكن أن يؤدى هذا لتغير المناخ لأنه يوجد الكثير من ثاني أكسيد الكربون في الغلاف الجوي. الأشياء التي في العالم الطبيعي مثل حرائق الغابات أو الثورات البركانية يمكنها أيضًا أن تسبب تلوث الهواء. الكيماويات الصادرة من المصانع أو المزارع التي تصل إلى الأنهار أو البحر يمكنها أن تسبب تلوث المياه. هناك أيضًا مشكلة التلوث الناتج عن البلاستيك. فهناك الكثير من القمامة البلاستيكية في الأنهار والمحيطات وهذا ضار جدًا للحيوانات التي تعيش هناك.

Woman 1 : Today, we know more about pollution than we used to, and we know how important it is to reduce it. Scientists are finding new ways to travel and to use fuels. We can also change the things we do - for example, we can walk, cycle or use public transportation instead of using cars. We also need to think about how we can use less plastic. Lots of people are trying to make our world a cleaner place!

اليوم، أصبحنا نعرف عن التلوث أكثر مما كنا نعرفه من قبل، ونعلم مدى أهمية الحد منه. يجد العلماء طرقًا جديدة للسفر واستخدام الوقود. يمكننا أيضًا تغيير الأشياء التي نقوم بها - على سبيل المثال، يمكننا المشي أو ركوب الدراجة أو استخدام وسائل النقل العام بدلاً من استخدام السيارات. نحتاج أيضًا إلى التفكير في كيفية استخدام كمية أقل من البلاستيك. يحاول الكثير من الناس جعل عالمنا مكانًا أنظف!

Lesson (2)



The Present Continuous Tense زمن المضارع المستمر

Form:

I	+	am	
He / She / It / A singular noun	+	is	+ (v+ing)
We / You / They / A plural noun	+	are	

- I'm walking to school.
- He is waiting for the bus.
- They're driving electric cars.

Usage:

To express an action that is happening now.

يستخدم للتعبير عن حدث يحدث الآن (لحظة الكلام).

Spelling rules:

⇨ Verbs that end with (e), we omit (e) before adding (ing).

take → taking　　　drive → driving

⇨ Verbs that end with (one vowel + one consonant), we double the consonant before adding (ing).

swim → swimming　　　put → puting

⇨ Verbs that end with (ie), we change it to (y) before adding (ing)

die → dying　　　lie → lying

Keywords:

now	الآن	Listen!	استمع!	at the moment	في هذه اللحظة
Look!	انظر!	today	اليوم	at present	في الوقت الحاضر

Negative:

I	+ am		
He / She / It / A singular noun	+ is	+ not + (v+ing)	
They / We / You / A plural noun	+ are		

- I am not using recycled bags.
- They aren't walking to school.
- He isn't watching a TV program.

Yes / No question:

Is + (he / she / it / a singular noun) + (v+ing)...?

- Is he walking to school?

Yes, he is. No, he isn't.

Are + (they / we / you / a plural noun) + (v+ing)...?

- Are they watching a TV program?

Yes, they are. No, they aren't.

Wh- question:

Q.W + is + (he / she / it / a singular noun) + (v + ing)...?

- What is he doing now?

He is driving an electric car.

Q.W + are + (they / we / you / a plural noun) + (v + ing)..?

- What are you doing?

I am walking to school.

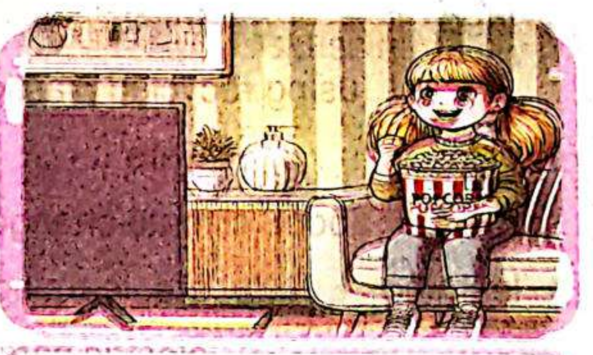
Help your child identify and use the present continuous tense.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على و يستخدم زمن المضارع المستمر.

Lesson (2)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Today, we're .... about pollution.
   a) talk b) talks c) talking d) talked
2. What .... doing to stop pollution?
   a) are we b) we are c) have we d) can we
3. I am .... to school now.
   a) walk b) walked c) walking d) walks
4. Now, he .... for the bus.
   a) wait b) waited c) is waiting d) waits
5. What is he .... now?
   a) does b) do c) did d) doing

2 Look and write a sentence in the present continuous.



Hana / watch / a TV program

....



I / walk / to school

....



Tarek / listen to / a podcast

....



They / wear / gloves

....

General Activities

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

putting - dirty - picking - wearing

These people are helping to stop pollution. They are on a beach and they are 1)..................... up garbage. The garbage can be 2)........................., so they are 3)................... gloves. They are putting the plastic in bags, so it doesn't go into the sea.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Scientists .... new ways to travel and to use fuels.
   a) is finding b) are finding c) finding d) finds
2. They are .... to make our world a cleaner place.
   a) tries b) try c) tried d) trying
3. I .... using recycled plastic.
   a) am b) is c) are d) were
4. Today, we .... about climate change.
   a) learned b) learn c) learning d) are learning
5. Are they .... electric cars?
   a) drive b) drives c) driving d) drove
6. Look! Hana .... a TV program.
   a) watch b) is watching c) watching d) watched
7. What are you .... ?
   a) reads b) reading c) read d) to read
8. She is .... gloves.
   a) wear b) wears c) wearing d) wore
9. .... picking up garbage?
   a) You are b) Are you c) He is d) She is

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lesson (2)

10. They aren't .... plastic in bags.
    a) puts b) putting c) put d) to put
11. They .... picking up the garbage.
    a) isn't b) aren't c) don't d) doesn't
12. Now, I .... in an electric car.
    a) travel b) traveled c) am traveling d) travels
13. Are you .... an article about climate change?
    a) read b) reads c) reading d) to read
14. We're .... the beach because it is full of plastic.
    a) cleans b) cleaned c) clean d) cleaning
15. Scientists are .... new forms of renewable energy.
    a) discover b) discovering c) discovered d) discovers

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. are - What - discussing - they - ?

....

2. about - We - pollution - talking - are - .

....

3. school - walking - I - to - am - .

....

4. about - learning - They - climate change - are - .

....

5. is - What - stop - he - doing - pollution - to - ?

....

4 Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:

Pollution

Guiding elements:

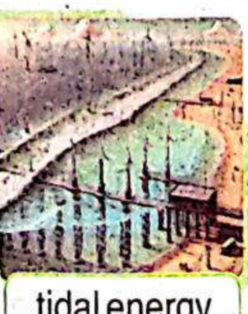
(air pollution - carbon dioxide - dirty - water pollution - chemicals)

Lesson (3) ENERGY AROUND US

Listen and repeat.

Renewable energy طاقة متجددة


wind energy
طاقة الرياح


tidal energy
طاقة المد والجزر


solar energy
الطاقة الشمسية

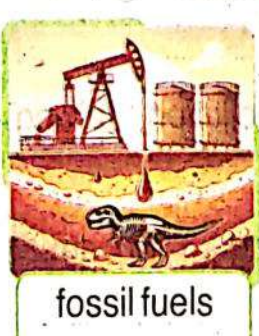

geothermal energy
الطاقة الحرارية (المنبعثة من باطن الأرض)

Non-renewable energy طاقة غير متجددة


oil
بترول



coal
فحم



fossil fuels
وقود حفري



gas
غاز

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

kind	نوع	natural resources	مصادر طبيعية
remains	بقايا	electrical energy	طاقة كهربية
electricity	كهرباء	future	مستقبل
solar panels	ألواح شمسية	movement	حركة
generate energy	يولد طاقة	moving water	المياه الجارية

Help your child identify renewable and non-renewable energy.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الطاقة المتجددة وغير المتجددة.

Lesson (3)



Definitions تعريفات

turbine (n)	a machine to make energy	توربين
tide (n)	when the level of the sea gets higher or lower	المد والجزر
generate (v)	to make something	يولّد
store (v)	to keep something	يخزّن

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
heat	يسخن	heated
release into	يُطلق في	released into
store	يخزن	stored
generate	يولد	generated

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
keep	يحفظ	kept
run out	ينفد	ran out
shine	يلمع / تشرق	shone
blow	تهب	blew

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

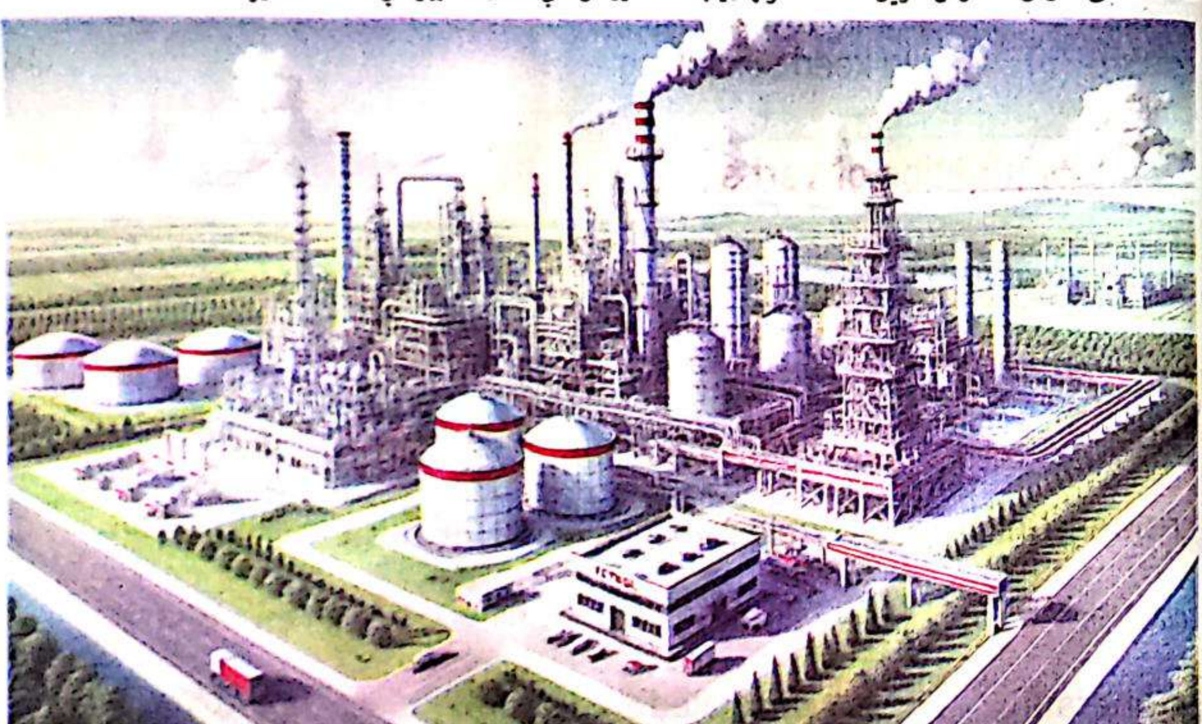
on the long run	على المدى الطويل	release into	يتم إطلاقه في
on Earth	على كوكب الأرض	run out	ينفد
such as	مثل	make electricity	يولد كهرباء
under the ground	تحت الأرض	get more of	يحصل على المزيد من
a period of time	فترة من الوقت	throughout the day	على مدار اليوم
go up and down	يرتفع وينخفض		

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Read the text.

Fossil fuels are things like coal, gas, and oil. These are burned in factories or used to make homes and buildings warm. However,They are non-renewable: when they run out, we can't find or make more of them. Fossil fuels are made from the remains of very old plants and animals that lived on Earth a long time ago. When we burn them, a lot of carbon dioxide is released into the atmosphere.

الوقود الحفري هو أشياء مثل الفحم والغاز والنفط. يتم حرقها في المصانع أو استخدامها لتدفئة المنازل والمباني. ومع ذلك، فهي غير متجددة: عندما تنفد، لا يمكننا العثور عليها أو صنع المزيد منها. يتكون الوقود الحفري من بقايا النباتات والحيوانات القديمة جدًا التي عاشت على الأرض منذ زمن طويل. عندما نحرقها، ينبعث الكثير من ثاني أكسيد الكربون في الغلاف الجوي.



There are other kinds of energy we can use which are renewable: they don't run out. We can get renewable energy from natural resources such as the wind,the sun, water and heat inside the Earth. These kinds of energy don't make pollution, and, on the long run, they are better. There are many types of environments on Earth, and we can use different natural resources in different places. For example, a hot desert is a good place to get solar energy from the sun, and there are large farms with lots of solar panels that can make clean electricity. A coastal environment can get a lot of wind, so some places have a lot of wind turbines in the sea, close to the coast.

هناك أنواع أخرى من الطاقة التي يمكننا استخدامها وهي متجددة: فهي لا تنفد. يمكننا الحصول على الطاقة المتجددة من الموارد الطبيعية مثل الرياح والشمس والماء والحرارة داخل الأرض. هذه الأنواع من الطاقة لا تسبب تلوث، وهي أفضل على المدى الطويل. هناك أنواع عديدة من البيئات على الأرض، ويمكننا استخدام موارد طبيعية مختلفة في أماكن مختلفة. على سبيل المثال، تعد الصحراء الحارة مكانًا جيدًا للحصول على الطاقة الشمسية من الشمس، ويوجد مزارع كبيرة مزودة بالكثير من الألواح الشمسية التي بإمكانها إنتاج كهرباء نظيفة. يمكن أن تتعرض البيئة الساحلية للكثير من الرياح، لذلك يوجد في بعض الأماكن الكثير من توربينات الرياح في البحر بالقرب من الساحل.

Help your child read about different energy sources.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ عن مصادر الطاقة المختلفة.

In some places, the sea goes up and down throughout the day. This is called a tide. In places where the tides are very big and strong, we can use tidal energy from the moving water to make electricity. Wind and wave turbines work by movement. The wind or water make turbines move, and this moving energy generates electrical energy. You can store this energy, so if the sun isn't shining or the wind isn't blowing, we will still have electricity! In other places, it is very hot under the ground. These are good places for geothermal energy, as the ground can heat water. In the future, we need to get more of our energy from renewable sources, and less from non-renewable sources.

وفي بعض الأماكن، يرتفع منسوب البحر وينخفض طوال اليوم. وهذا ما يسمى بالمد والجزر. في الأماكن التي يكون فيها المد والجزر كبيرًا وقويًا جدًا، يمكننا استخدام طاقة المد والجزر من المياه المتحركة لإنتاج الكهرباء. تعمل توربينات الرياح والأمواج بالحركة. تعمل الرياح أو الماء على تحريك التوربينات، وهذه الطاقة المتحركة تولد طاقة كهربائية. يمكنك تخزين هذه الطاقة، لذلك إذا لم تكن الشمس مشرقة أو لم تهب الرياح، فسيظل لدينا كهرباء! وفي أماكن أخرى، يكون الجو حارًا جدًا تحت الأرض. وهذه أماكن جيدة للطاقة الحرارية الأرضية، حيث يمكن للأرض تسخين المياه. في المستقبل، نحتاج إلى الحصول على المزيد من طاقتنا من المصادر المتجددة، والقليل من المصادر غير المتجددة.

Answer the following questions.

1) What are fossil fuels made from?

....

2) Why is a coastal environment a good place for wind energy?

....

Reading Tips!

- Sometimes when we read a text, we find words which we don't understand. Look at the rest of the words in the sentence carefully. They can help you understand the new word.

أحيانًا عندما نقرأ نصًا نجد كلمات لا نستطيع فهمها. انظر لباقي الكلمات في الجملة بعناية فهذا يساعدك على فهم الكلمة الجديدة.

- Look at how a new word is used in a sentence and decide if it is a verb or a noun. This helps you guess the meaning of new words.

انظر إلى استخدام الكلمة الجديدة في الجملة وحدد إذا كانت اسم أم فعل. سيساعدك هذا على تخمين معنى الكلمات الجديدة.

Help your child read about different energy sources.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ عن مصادر الطاقة المختلفة.

General Activities



1 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

remains - renewable - What - oil

Sara : How many kinds of energy are there?

Toka : There are two kinds: 1) .... and non-renewable.

Sara : 2) .... are fossil fuels?

Toka : They are things like coal, gas and oil.

Sara : What are fossil fuels made from?

Toka : They are made from the 3) .... of very old plants and animals.

2 Read the following text and answer the questions.

There are many **types** of environments on Earth, and we can use different natural resources in different places. For example, a hot desert is a good place to get solar energy from the sun, and there are large farms with lots of solar panels that can make clean electricity. A coastal environment can get a lot of wind. In some places, the sea goes up and down throughout the day. This is called a tide. In places where the tides are very big and strong, we can use tidal energy from the moving water to make electricity. Wind and wave turbines work by movement. The wind or water make turbines move, and this moving energy generates electrical energy. In other places, it is very hot under the ground. These are good places for geothermal energy, as the ground can heat water.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The underlined word "types" means ....
   a) kinds b) panels c) calls d) places
2. A coastal environment can get a lot of ....
   a) snow b) ice c) wind d) sun

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What is the general idea of the text?..
4. When does the tide happen? ....
5. Where can you find solar panels?..
6. Give examples of natural resources. ....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lesson (3)

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Fossil fuels are .... energy.
   a) modern b) renewable c) new d) non-renewable
2. Solar energy comes from the ....
   a) wind b) sun c) water d) moon
3. .... energy uses the movement of the sea to make energy.
   a) Tidal b) Solar c) Wind d) Geothermal
4. To .... is to keep something.
   a) make b) play c) store d) stare
5. We use .... to make electricity.
   a) cars b) turbines c) planes d) bridges

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. are - fossil - What - fuels - from - made - ?

....

2. store - You - can - energy - electrical - .

....

3. doesn't - Renewable - out - energy - run - .

....

4. get - from - resources - We - can - renewable - natural - energy - .

....

5 Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:

Energy around us

Guiding elements:

(renewable energy - solar energy - wind energy - run out - clean - non-renewable - pollution - coal - gas)

....

....

....

....

Lesson (4) WRITING: HOW TO WRITE A REPORT

Key Vocabulary كلمات أساسية

waterwheel	ساقية	source	مصدر
features	مميزات / سمات	location	موقع
hydroelectricity	طاقة كهرومائية	report	تقرير



Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

country	دولة	flooding	فيضان / طوفان
heat	حرارة	hydropower	الطاقة الكهرومائية
machine	آلة	underground	تحت الأرض
steam	بخار	Iceland	دولة أيسلندا
kilowatt	كيلو وات (وحدة لقياس الطاقة الكهربائية)	spring	ينبوع
volcano	بركان	The High Dam	السد العالي
holes	فتحات / ثقوب	mechanical energy	الطاقة الميكانيكية
generator	مولد كهربائي	Greek	يوناني / أغريقي
farming	الزراعة	both	كلاهما
tunnel	نفق	reservoirs	خزانات



Definitions تعريفات

location	a place or a position	موقع
kilowatt	a unit for measuring electrical power	كيلو وات
waterwheel	a wheel with buckets used to raise water	ساقية الماء



Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
finish	ينتهي	finished
change	يتغير	changed
turn	يحول / يدور	turned

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
mean	يعني / يقصد	meant
build	يبني	built
come up	يصعد / يرتفع	came up

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Lesson (4)

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

more than	أكثر من	come from	يأتي من
make electricity	يولد كهرباء	stop... from	يمنع.....من
change to	يتحول إلى	the location of	موقع .....
making food	صناعة الطعام	water tunnels	أنفاق مائية

Look, listen and read.

Report: Geothermal energy, Iceland



Why Iceland? لماذا أيسلندا؟

Iceland is a cold country, but it has more than **600** hot springs and **200** volcanoes. There is a lot of hot water underground, and this is used to heat homes and to make electricity.

أيسلندا بلد طقسها بارد، لكن بها أكثر من 600 ينبوع ماء ساخن و200 بركان. يوجد الكثير من الماء الساخن تحت الأرض، ويستخدم لتدفئة المنازل وتوليد الكهرباء.

How does it work? كيف يعمل؟

When water gets hot, it makes steam. Engineers in Iceland can make holes down to the hot water underground. Then steam comes up and it moves turbines to make electricity.

عندما يسخن الماء، ينتج عنه بخارًا. يمكن للمهندسين في أيسلندا عمل ثقوب تصل إلى المياه الساخنة تحت الأرض. ثم يتصاعد البخار ويقوم بتحريك التوربينات لتوليد الكهرباء.

Why is it important? لماذا هو مهم؟

100% of its electricity and heat comes from renewable sources.

100٪ من الكهرباء المنتجة منه والحرارة تأتي من مصادر متجددة.

Help your child read about geothermal energy in Iceland. ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ عن الطاقة الحرارية في أيسلندا.

Writing Tip!

A report is a way to give information about a topic. It often has these features.

التقرير: هو طريقة لإعطاء معلومات عن موضوع و غالبًا ما يكون له هذه السمات.

- A title: this tells you what the report is about.

العنوان الرئيسي: وهذا يخبرك عن موضوع التقرير.

- Photos: these illustrate the report and make it look interesting. A photo can help explain what you mean.

الصور: وهي توضح التقرير وتجعله شيقًا. الصورة تساعدك على شرح ما تقصده.

- Subtitles: these break down the information into smaller sections by topic.

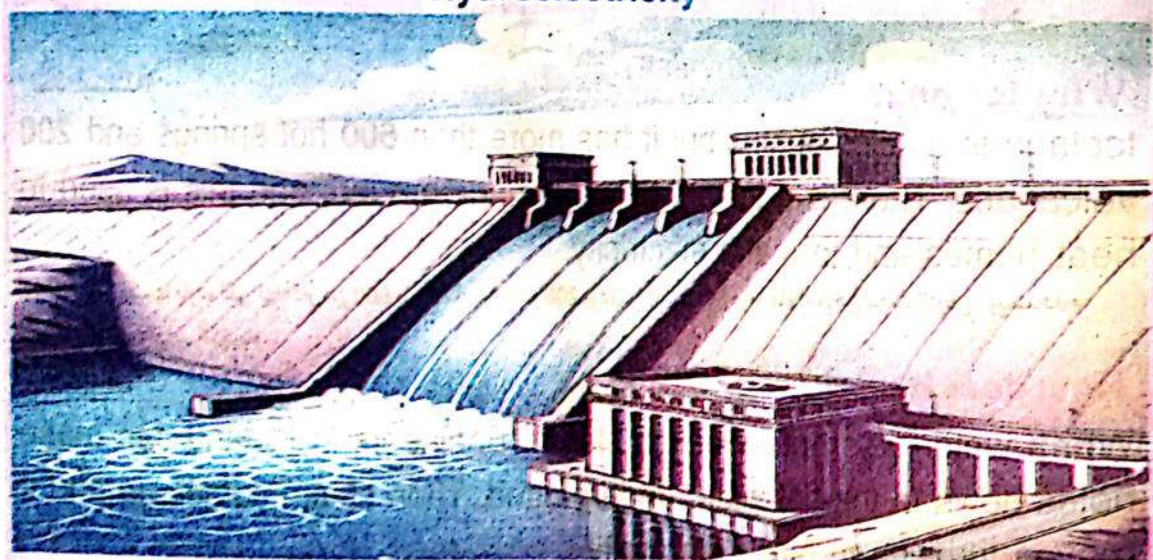
العناوين الفرعية: تُجزأ المعلومات لأقسام أصغر حسب الموضوع.

- Facts and figures: a report uses these to show that information is true.

الحقائق والأرقام: وتستخدم في التقرير لتوضيح صحة المعلومات.

Read the text.

Hydroelectricity



People have used hydroelectricity (also called hydropower) for a very long time. Hydroelectricity means using the energy from moving water to move machines or generate electricity.

لقد استخدم الناس الطاقة الكهرومائية (وتسمى أيضًا الطاقة المائية) لفترة طويلة جدًا. الطاقة الكهرومائية تعني استخدام الطاقة الناتجة عن حركة المياه لتحريك الآلات أو توليد الكهرباء.

Help your child read about different energy sources.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ عن مصادر الطاقة المختلفة.

The Ancient Egyptians and Greeks used the energy in moving water to turn waterwheels. The waterwheels could move machines and these machines helped with both farming and making food.

استخدم القدماء المصريين والإغريق الطاقة الناتجة من المياه المتحركة لتشغيل سواقي المياه. يمكن لسواقي المياه أن تحرك الآلات، وساعدت هذه الآلات في كلًا من الزراعة وصنع الطعام.

Now, we can use hydroelectricity to generate electricity. A hydroelectric dam uses the energy in falling water to turn a turbine. The mechanical energy of the moving turbine is changed to electrical energy by a generator.

الآن، يمكننا استخدام الطاقة الكهرومائية لتوليد الكهرباء. يستخدم السد الكهرومائي الطاقة من المياه المتساقطة لتشغيل التوربين. يتم تحويل الطاقة الميكانيكية للتوربين المتحرك إلى طاقة كهربائية بواسطة مولد.

The High Dam was finished in 1971. It uses water from the River Nile to generate electricity. The location of Aswan made this a good place to build the dam because it could stop the River Nile from flooding. The dam has twelve large turbines inside. It generates more than 10 billion kilowatt hours of electricity a year!

تم الانتهاء من بناء السد العالي عام 1971. ويستخدم مياه نهر النيل لتوليد الكهرباء. موقع أسوان جعلها مكانًا جيدًا لبناء السد لأنه يمكن أن يمنع فيضانات نهر النيل. يحتوي السد على اثني عشر توربينًا كبيرًا بداخله. ويولد السد أكثر من 10 مليارات كيلو وات/ساعة من الكهرباء سنوياً!

Read again and answer the questions.

1) What is hydroelectricity mean?

....

2) What did the ancient Egyptians use the energy to?

....

3) Where is the High Dam?

....

General Activities

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What's the weather like in Iceland?

....

2. How many hot springs are there?

....

3. Where is hot water found?

....

4. What is hot water used to?

....

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

waterwheels - High Dam - Hydroelectricity - electricity

People have used hydroelectricity for a very long time. 1).............................. means using the energy from moving water to generate 2)............ . The Ancient Egyptians and Greeks used the energy in moving water to turn 3)........................ The High Dam uses water from the River Nile to generate electricity.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. A .... tells you what the report is about.
   a) title b) photo c) subtitle d) figure
2. .... illustrate the report and make it look interesting.
   a) Titles b) Subtitles c) Facts d) Photos
3. A report uses .... to show that information is true.
   a) facts and figures b) titles c) photos d) subtitles
4. When water gets hot, it makes ....
   a) ice b) snow c) steam d) electricity
5. 100% of Iceland's electricity and heat comes from .... sources.
   a) non- renewable b) renewable c) rural d) urban

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lesson (4)

6. The ancient Egyptians used the energy in moving water to turn ....

 a) waterwheels b) bicycles c) cars d) boats

7. A .... is a unit for measuring electrical power.

 a) kilowatt b) kilogram c) gram d) kilometer

8. The waterwheel is a wheel with buckets used to raise ....

 a) food b) electricity c) heat d) water

9. The .... of Aswan made it a good place to build the High Dam.

 a) view b) statues c) weather d) position

10. We can use hydropower to generate ....

 a) electricity b) water c) food d) houses

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. is - Iceland - country - a - cold - .

....

2. has - 600 - springs - hot - Iceland - more than - .

....

3. is - the High - Why - important - Dam - ?

....

4. was - How - hydroelectricity - in - used - the past - ?

....

5. in - finished - The High Dam - 1971 - was - .

....

5 Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:

Hydroelectricity

Guiding elements:

(used - in the past - generate - electricity - clean - renewable - High Dam - Aswan)

Lessons (5 & 6)

- CLIL: MATH: COMPARING AND ORDERING HIGH NUMBERS
- PROJECT



Vocabulary كلمات

article	مقال	public parks	حدائق عامة
tonne	الطن (وحدة وزن)	average	متوسط / معدل
humans	البشر	planet	كوكب
cells	خلايا	protecting	حماية
home	موطن	green spaces	مساحات خضراء



Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
plant	يزرع	planted
cause	يسبب	caused
waste	يهدر	wasted
absorb	يمتص	absorbed
protect	يحمي	protected

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
give	يعطي	gave
understand	يفهم	understood
beat	يدق / يضرب	beat
take out	يُخرج	took out
think	يفكر / يعتقد	thought



Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

You're right.	أنت محق.	home **for**	موطن لـ
make the air cleaner	يجعل الهواء أكثر نقاء	important **to**	مهم أن
look really nice	تبدو جميلة حقًا	That's amazing!	هذا مذهل!
a good way **to**	طريقة جيدة لكي	I think	أنا أعتقد
find **out**	يكتشف	create pollution	يسبب التلوث
turn off lights	يطفئ الأنوار	waste electricity	يبدد الكهرباء

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Read the story.



"Listen to this, Mom," said Nessma one day after school. "This article says that in 2019, Egypt started a project to plant one million trees in public parks and gardens all over the country. That's amazing!" "You're right," said Mom. "Do you understand why it's important to plant trees?"

قالت نسمة بعد يوم من المدرسة: "اسمعي هذا يا أمي". "يذكر هذا المقال أن مصر بدأت في عام 2019 مشروعًا لزراعة مليون شجرة في الحدائق العامة والمتنزهات في جميع أنحاء البلاد. وهذا مذهل!" قالت أمي: "أنت على حق". "هل تفهمي سبب أهمية زراعة الأشجار؟"

Nessma wasn't sure. "They look really nice, don't they? They give us fruit, and they can be homes for animals.""All those things are true, but trees are even more special than that," said Mom. "Some of the things that people do make carbon dioxide emissions. This causes air pollution and climate change. But forests can absorb carbon dioxide. That means they take it out of the atmosphere and make the air cleaner! Did you know that forests absorb about 2.6 billion tonnes of carbon dioxide every year?" "Wow, that's a lot of carbon dioxide!" said Nessma. "So trees are really important in protecting our planet!"

لم تكن نسمة متأكدة. "إن الأشجار تبدو جميلة حقًا، أليس كذلك؟ إنها تعطينا الفاكهة، ويمكن أن تكون بيوتًا للحيوانات." قالت أمي: "كل هذه الأشياء صحيحة، لكن الأشجار مميزة أكثر من ذلك". "بعض الأشياء التي يفعلها الناس تؤدي إلى انبعاثات ثاني أكسيد الكربون. وهذا يسبب تلوث الهواء وتغير المناخ. لكن الغابات يمكن أن تمتص ثاني أكسيد الكربون. وهذا يعني أنها تخرجه من الغلاف الجوي وتجعل الهواء أنظف! هل تعلمي أن الغابات تمتص حوالي 2.6 مليار طن من ثاني أكسيد الكربون كل عام؟" "واو، هذا كثير من ثاني أكسيد الكربون!" قالت نسمة. "لذا فإن الأشجار مهمة حقًا لحماية كوكبنا!"

Math : Large numbers

Listen and repeat.

Smallest

Number	Words	Arabic
1,000	(one thousand)	ألف
10,000	(ten thousand)	عشرة الآف
100,000	(one hundred thousand)	مائة ألف
1,000,000	(one million)	مليون
10,000,000	(ten million)	عشرة مليون
100,000,000	(one hundred million)	مائة مليون
1,000,000,000	(one billion)	مليار

Largest

1 Put these numbers in order from smallest to largest.

a. 10,000 ☐ b. 1,000 ☐

c. 1,000,000 ☐ d. 100,000 ☐

1 Read and match.

1.	10,000,000	a)	one billion
2.	1,000,000	b)	one hundred million
3.	100,000,000	c)	ten million
4.	1,000,000,000	d)	one million

Help your child compare and order high numbers.
ساعد طفلك أن يقارن ويرتب الأرقام الكبيرة.

Listen and read.



Nadia : So, the first question is: What can our country do to help the environment? That's interesting. I think our country can help by using more renewable energy.

إذا فالسؤال الأول هو: ما الذي يمكن أن تفعله بلادنا لمساعدة البيئة؟ هذا شيق. أعتقد أن بلادنا يمكن أن تساعد من خلال استخدام المزيد من الطاقة المتجددة.

Nour : I agree. That would be a good way to use less fossil fuel. I also think it's a good idea to plant more trees and protect the forests we have.

أنا أتفق معك. هذه طريقة جيدة تجعل استخدامنا للوقود الحفري أقل. أعتقد أيضًا أنه من الجيد زراعة المزيد من الأشجار وحماية الغابات التي لدينا.

Nadia : Yes, you're right. Forests help to protect the environment.

أنتِ مُحقة. الغابات تساعد على حماية البيئة.

Nour : And what can I do to help the environment? Well, I can recycle plastic and not drop garbage.

وماذا أيضًا يمكننا فعله لمساعدة البيئة؟ حسنًا، يمكنني إعادة استخدام البلاستيك وعدم إلقاء القمامة.

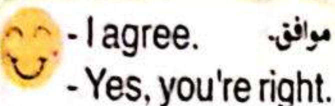
Nadia : Yes, we shouldn't drop garbage, but I think the most important thing is to turn off lights and not waste electricity.

نعم، يجب علينا ألا نلقي القمامة. لكن أعتقد الشيء الأكثر أهمية أن نغلق الأنوار وعدم إهدار الكهرباء.

Help you child listen and read.
ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

Expressions for replying and giving opinion

تعبيرات لإبداء الرأي والرد عليه


- I agree. موافق.
- Yes, you're right. نعم، أنت محق.


- I'm not sure. لست متاكدًا.
- But I think..... لكن أنا أعتقد .....


I disagree. غير موافق.





1. What can our country do to help the environment? That's interesting. I think our country can help by using more renewable energy.

2. I agree. That would be a good way to use less fossil fuel. I also think it's a good idea to plant more trees and protect the forests we have.

3. Yes, you're right. Forests help to protect the environment.

4. And what can I do to help the environment? Well, I can recycle plastic and not drop garbage.

5. Yes, we shouldn't drop garbage, but I think the most important thing is to turn off lights and not waste electricity.

Help your child talk about how to help the environment. ساعد طفلك ان يتعلم كيف يساعد البيئة

General Activities

1 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

take - article - help - plant

Sara : What are you doing, Mai?

Mai : I'm reading an 1)................................ about helping the environment.

Sara : What can our country do to 2)................................the environment?

Mai : Egypt started a project to 3)............one million trees in public parks.

Sara : Why is it important to plant trees ?

Mai : Because they take carbon dioxide of the atmosphere.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I think you .... right.
   a) is b) am c) are d) was
2. We shouldn't .... garbage.
   a) drop b) drops c) dropped d) dropping
3. Why is it important .... plant trees?
   a) in b) of c) at d) to
4. Forests can .... carbon dioxide.
   a) absorb b) store c) give d) take

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. is - it - Why - to - important - trees - plant - ?

   ....

2. help - to - Forests - environment - protect - the - .

   ....



4 Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:

How to keep the environment

Guiding elements:

(keep - clean - plant - drop - garbage - renewable energy - protect forests - turn off lights)

Writing Corner

Different environments

In our world, there are different environments like coastal, desert, rura urban and polar environments. In coastal environments, there are beache The Nile Delta and the Red Sea are two examples of this environmen Desert environment is very dry. The animals and plants that live there hav to find ways to survive without a lot of water.

Pollution

There are different kinds of pollution. Water pollution happens whe it is dirty because of chemicals or plastic. Carbon dioxide can be dangerou when there is too much in the air. Emissions that are made by factories, car and lorries cause air pollution. We should keep the air clean by plantin more trees.

Energy around us

There are two kinds of energy: renewable and non-renewable energy. Non-renewable energy are like coal, gas and oil. They run out. They pollut the environment. Renewable energy like solar, wind, tidal and geotherma energies. They don't run out. We can get renewable energy from natura resources. They are better than non-renewable energy.

The High Dam

The High Dam was finished in 1971. It uses water from the River Nile t generate electricity. The location of Aswan made this a good place to buil the dam because it could stop the River Nile from flooding. The dam ha twelve large turbines inside. It generates more than 10 billion kilowatt hour of electricity a year!

Help your child write paragraphs.
اعد طفلك ان يكتب فقرات.

Dictation on Unit (7)

Lesson (1)

بيئة ريفية	....	بيئة صحراوية	....
بيئة صخرية	....	بيئة ساحلية	....
قارة	....	بيئة جبلية	....
يتنفس	....	بيئة قطبية	....
زواحف	....	بيئة استوائية	....

Lesson (2)

قمامة	....	تغيير المناخ	....
طاقة	....	تلوث الهواء	....
غاز	....	وقود	....
يسبب	....	انبعاثات	....
مليء بـ	....	الغلاف الجوي	....

Lesson (3)

طاقة المد والجزر	....	طاقة الرياح	....
وقود حفري	....	بترول	....
ألواح شمسية	....	فحم	....
يسخن	....	الطاقة الشمسية	....
ينفد	....	كهرباء	....

Lesson (4)

يتغير	....	ساقية	....
بخار	....	مميزات	....
يأتي من	....	تقرير	....
مصدر	....	دولة	....
نبع ماء	....	موقع	....

Lessons (5 & 6)

يزرع	....	مقال	....
يحمي	....	موطن	....
يكتشف	....	كوكب	....
يمتص	....	خلايا	....
حدائق عامة	....	البشر	....

Help your child dictate these words.
ساعد طفلك في إملاء هذه الكلمات.

Review on Unit (7)

Environments

coastal	ساحلية	desert	صحراوية	urban	حضرية
mountainous	جبلية	rural	قروية / ريفية	polar	قطبية
rainforest	غابة مطيرة	temperature	درجة الحرارة	difficult	صعبة

Pollution

air pollution	تلوث الهواء	water pollution	تلوث الماء
fossil fuels	وقود حفري	climate change	تغير المناخ
carbon dioxide	ثاني أكسيد الكربون	emissions	انبعاثات

Energy

Renewable	متجددة	Non-renewable	غير متجددة
wind energy	طاقة الرياح	coal	فحم
solar energy	الطاقة الشمسية	gas	غاز
tidal energy	طاقة المد و الجزر	oil	بترول
geothermal energy		الطاقة الحرارية (المنبعثة من باطن الأرض)	

Other words

generate	يولد	store	يخزن	absorb	يمتص
hydroelectricity	طاقة كهرومائية	release	يطلق	heat	حرارة
waterwheels	السواقي	take out	يخرج	turbine	توربين

Large Numbers

1,000 (one thousand)	10,000 (ten thousand)
100,000 (one hundred thousand)	1,000,000 (one million)
10,000,000 (ten million)	100,000,000 (one hundred million)
1,000,000,000 (one billion)	

Help your child revise unit (7).
ساعد طفلك على مراجعة الوحدة السابعة .



The Present Continuous Tense

زمن المضارع المستمر

Form:

Subject + am / is / are + (v + ing)

- I'm walking to school.

Usage:

To express an action that is happening now.

Keywords:

now الآن	Listen! استمع!	at the moment في هذه اللحظة
Look! انظر!	today اليوم	at present في الوقت الحاضر

Negative:

Subject + am / is / are + not + (v + ing)

- I am not using recycled bags.

Yes / No question:

Q.W + is + (he / she / it / a singular noun) + (v + ing)...?

- Is he walking to school? - Yes, he is. - No, he isn't.

Q.W + are + (they / we / you / a plural noun) + (v + ing)..?

- Are they watching a TV program? - Yes, they are. - No, they aren't.

Wh- question:

Q.W + is / are + subject + (v+ing)...?

- What is he doing now? - He is driving an electric car.

Exam On Unit (7)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. How can our country help the environment?

....

2. What should we do?

....

3. What should our country plant?

....

4. What can we do to the forests?

....

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

take - important - absorb - billion

Carbon dioxide emissions cause air pollution and climate change. But forests can 1)........................ carbon dioxide. That means they 2)........................ it out of the atmosphere and make the air cleaner! Did you know that forests absorb about 2.6 3)........................ tonnes of carbon dioxide every year? That's a lot of carbon dioxide, so trees are really important in protecting our planet!

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Iceland is a cold country, but it has more than 600 hot springs and 200 volcanoes. There is a lot of hot water underground, and this is used to heat homes and to make electricity. When water gets hot, it makes steam. Engineers in Iceland can make holes down to the hot water underground. Then steam comes up and it moves turbines to make electricity. 100% of its electricity and heat comes from renewable sources.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Exam On Unit (7)

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The opposite of the underlined word "renewable" is ....

   a) hot b) non-renewable c) cold d) warm

2. When water gets hot, it makes ....

   a) steam b) ice c) snow d) rain

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What is the main idea of the text?

....

4. How many springs does Iceland have?

....

5. What can engineers in Iceland make?

....

6. Where do electricity and heat come from in Iceland?

....

4 The Reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Amir helped his grandma cook dinner. [ ]
2. Amir took the laundry up to the roof. [ ]

B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

3. Amir could see plastic bottles floating down on the ....

   a) sink b) river c) road d) sea

4. Amir took the .... up to the roof.

   a) dishes b) bottles c) laundry d) bags

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. We are .... to stop poll

   a) helps b) helped c) help d) helping

2. Look! He .... up the garb

   a) picks b) picking c) is picking d) pick

3. We are .... glo

   a) wears b) wearing c) wear d) wore

4. I'm .... to school n

   a) walk b) walks c) walked d) walking

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. are - talking - pollution - We - about - .

   ....

2. machine - A turbine - make - to - is - a - energy - .

   ....

7 Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:

Polar environment

Guiding elements:

(Polar - cold - windy - Arctic - Antarctic - ice - any trees - flowers)

....

....

....

....

....

....

Unit 8 Customs and traditions

العادات والتقاليد



In this unit, the students will ...

- understand some traditional celebrations. — يفهم بعض الاحتفالات التقليدية.
- learn about some traditional recipes. — يتعرف على بعض وصفات الطعام التقليدية.
- compare the present simple and present continuous. — يقارن بين المضارع البسيط والمضارع المستمر.
- understand a conversation about clothes. — يفهم محادثة عن الملابس.
- read about Egypt's traditions. — يقرأ عن تقاليد مصر.
- understand and write a tourist brochure. — يفهم ويكتب كتيب سياحي.
- learn about traditional fables. — يتعلم عن الخرافات التقليدية.
- write a story. — يكتب قصة.

Lesson (1) IMPORTANT FESTIVALS

Key Vocabulary كلمات أساسية

sunset	غروب الشمس	sunrise	شروق الشمس
feast	وليمة	Hajj pilgrimage	فريضة الحج
fairground	ملاهي	prayers	صلوات - مصلين
grateful	شاكر - ممتن	ancient Egyptians	المصريون القدماء

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

customs	عادات	dream	حلم	traditional	تقليدي
festival	عيد / مهرجان	rides	ألعاب (في الملاهي)	traditions	تقاليد
dish	طبق / أكلة	life - lives	حياة / حيوات	celebrations	احتفالات
spring	فصل الربيع	lantern	فانوس	weather	الطقس
creation	خلق / ابتكار	warm	دافئ	sunny	مشمس



Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
celebrate	يحتفل	celebrated
prepare	يجهز	prepared
decorate	يزين	decorated
sacrifice	يضحي	sacrificed
mark	يميز	marked
boil	يغلي - يسلق	boiled
paint	يلون	painted
last for	يستمر لمدة	lasted for

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
spend	يقضي	spent
give out	يوزع	gave out
come up	تشرق	came up
stick	يلصق	stuck
go down	تغيب (الشمس)	went down
wear	يرتدي	wore
wake up	يستيقظ	woke up
hang	يعلق	hung

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Lesson (1)



Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Coptic Easter	عيد الفصح القبطي (عيد القيامة المجيد)	front door	الباب الأمامي
get ready	يستعد	on the side of	على جانب
at sunrise	عند شروق الشمس	electric candle	شمعة كهربية
in different colors	بألوان مختلفة	make a lantern	يصنع فانوسًا
play music	يعزف موسيقى	glass jar	برطمان زجاج
mid-July	منتصف شهر يوليو	Islamic festival	عيد إسلامي
for the start of	مع بداية	listen to	يستمع لـ
spend (time) + v + ing	يقضي وقتًا	love + (v + ing)	يحب



Definitions تعريفات

celebrate	to spend time with others, being happy and having fun	يحتفل
grateful	feeling that you want to thank someone	ممتن / شاكر
prayer	important words which you say to give thanks or ask for help	دعاء - صلاة
give out	to offer something	يوزع
fairgrounds	an open area of land where people can enjoy rides	الملاهي / ساحات الألعاب
sunrise	when the sun comes up in the morning	شروق الشمس
sunset	when the sun goes down at night	غروب الشمس
feast	a large meal	وليمة (وجبة كبيرة)

Did you know?

The ancient Egyptians had many festivals. Wepet Renpet was a festival marking the beginning of a new year. It celebrated the first flooding of the Nile. The ancient Egyptians celebrated it around mid-July.

كان للمصريين القدماء العديد من المهرجانات. كان مهرجان «وبت رنبت» يمثل بداية عام جديد. كان الاحتفال بأول فيضان لنهر النيل. احتفل به المصريون القدماء في منتصف شهر يوليو تقريبًا.

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Listen and read.

Sham El-Nessim



I love celebrating Sham El-Nessim with my family. The festival is for the start of spring and it is very old. The ancient Egyptians also celebrated it, as a festival of creation and new life. Sham El-Nessim is always on the same day as Coptic Easter Monday.

شم النسيم: أحب الاحتفال بشم النسيم مع عائلتي. وهذا الاحتفال عبارة عن بداية الربيع وهو قديم جدًا. كما احتفل به المصريون القدماء كعيد للخلق والحياة الجديدة. ويكون شم النسيم دائمًا في نفس يوم الاثنين لعيد القيامة المجيد.

Because it is the start of spring, the weather at Sham El-Nessim is usually sunny and warm. I always wake up at sunrise to get ready. Lots of people go with their family to meet friends in parks, gardens or beaches. We eat lots of nice food and play music and games. Sometimes there are fairgrounds with rides for children - they are a lot of fun!

ولأنه بداية فصل الربيع، يكون الطقس في شم النسيم عادةً مشمسًا ودافئًا. أستيقظ دائمًا عند شروق الشمس للاستعداد. يذهب الكثير من الأشخاص مع أسرهم للقاء الأصدقاء في المتنزهات أو الحدائق أو الشواطئ. نحن نأكل الكثير من الطعام اللذيذ ونعزف الموسيقى ونلعب الألعاب. في بعض الأحيان توجد ملاهي بها ألعاب للأطفال - فهي ممتعة للغاية!!

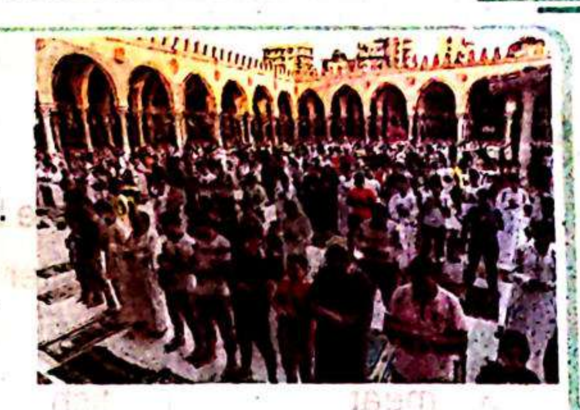
Before the day of the festival, we spend time preparing lots of different traditional food, often until sunset! We also boil eggs, then paint and decorate them in different colors to make them look beautiful.

قبل يوم الاحتفال، نقضي وقتًا في إعداد الكثير من الأطعمة التقليدية المختلفة، غالبًا حتى غروب الشمس! نقوم أيضًا بسلق البيض ومن ثم طلاءه وتزيينه بألوان مختلفة ليبدو جميلًا.

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

Eid Al-Adha



Eid Al-Adha usually lasts for four days, and it is a very important Islamic festival. It celebrates the time when Ibrahim listened to God in a dream. At Eid Al-Adha, many people sacrifice a sheep and eat some of its meat in a traditional dish called fatta. We give out meat to our family and friends.

عيد الأضحى: يستمر عيد الأضحى عادة لمدة أربعة أيام، وهو عيد إسلامي مهم للغاية. إنه يحتفل بالوقت الذي استمع فيه سيدنا إبراهيم إلى الله في المنام. في عيد الأضحى، يضحي الكثير من الناس بخروف ويأكلون بعض لحمه في وجبة تقليديه تسمى الفتة. نحن نوزع اللحوم على عائلاتنا وأصدقائنا.

During Eid Al-Adha, we go to the mosque for prayers and we are grateful for all the good things in our lives. We wear our best clothes for the celebrations and we visit our family and friends. We give each other presents and we have a feast together. Eid Al-Adha is during the month of Zu Elhijja when Muslims go to the Hajj pilgrimage.

خلال عيد الأضحى نذهب إلى المسجد للصلاة ونشعر بالامتنان لكل الأشياء الجيدة في حياتنا. نرتدي أفضل ملابسنا للاحتفالات ونزور عائلاتنا وأصدقائنا. نعطي بعضنا البعض الهدايا ونقيم وليمة معًا. عيد الأضحى يكون خلال شهر ذو الحجة عندما يذهب المسلمون لأداء فريضة الحج.

Look and read.



This year for Ramadan I made a special lantern. I washed a glass jar and stuck some colored paper on the side. My mom gave me a small electric candle to put inside. I hung it on the front door of our house. It is pretty and bright in the night time!

في شهر رمضان هذا العام قمت بصنع فانوس مميز. غسلت برطمانًا زجاجيًا وقمت بلصق بعض الورق الملون على جانبه. أعطتني أمي شمعة كهربائية صغيرة لأضعها بالداخل. لقد علقته على الباب الأمامي لمنزلنا. إنه جميل ومنير في الليل!

Help your child listen and read.
ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

General Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Sham El-Nessim marks the beginning of ....
   a) spring b) winter c) Ramadan d) fall
2. We give out .... in Eid Al-Adha
   a) meat b) fish c) rice d) onions
3. Sham El-Nessim is always on ....
   a) Friday b) Tuesday c) Monday d) Sunday
4. I always wake up at ....
   a) sunrise b) sunset c) afternoon d) morning
5. At Eid Al-Adha, people sacrifice a ....
   a) cat b) sheep c) bird d) monkey
6. We go to the mosque for ....
   a) playing b) prayers c) money d) celebrating
7. We should be .... to Allah for all the good things.
   a) great b) grateful c) helpful d) bad
8. I made a special .... for Ramadan
   a) stick b) jar c) lantern d) jar
9. Wepet Renpet celebrated flooding of the ....
   a) lake b) sea c) Red Sea d) Nile
10. I went to the .... and enjoyed many rides.
    a) school b) library c) playground d) fairgrounds

2 Read and match.

1. celebrate	a. to offer something
2. give out	b. where people can enjoy rides
3. grateful	c. to spend time with others and have fun
4. fairgrounds	d. words you say to give thanks or ask for help

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

sacrifice - prayers - lasts - give

Eid Al-Adha usually 1).. for four days. Many people 2)............................... a sheep and eat a traditional dish called fatta. We go to the mosque for 3)..................................... and be grateful to Allah.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

I love celebrating Sham El-Nessim with my family. The festival is for the start of spring and it is very old. The ancient Egyptians also celebrated it, as a festival of creation and <u>new</u> life. Sham El-Nessim is always on the same day as Coptic Easter Monday. Because it is the start of spring, the weather at Sham El-Nessim is usually sunny and warm. I always wake up at sunrise to get ready. Lots of people go with their family to meet friends in parks, gardens or beaches. Sometimes there are fairgrounds for children. We eat lots of nice food and play music and games.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Children can have fun at the ....
   a) school b) hospital c) fair d) fairgrounds
2. The underlined word "new" is the opposite of ....
   a) tall b) old c) modern d) short

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What's the general idea of the text? ....
4. What's the weather like at Sham El-Nessim? ....
5. When do we celebrate Sham El-Nessim? ....
6. Where do lots of people meet friends? ....



5 Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:

Your lantern

Guiding elements:

(Ramadan - special - jar - candle - hung - pretty)

Lesson (2) GRANDMA'S RECIPES

Look, listen and read.




Ful Medames
فول مدمس


Sayadeya
سمك صيادية

Fatta
فتة


Hawawshi
حواوشي

Traditional Food
طعام تقليدي


olive oil
زيت زيتون


herbs
أعشاب


beans
فول


garlic
ثوم


spices
توابل


vinegar
خل


pastry
فطيرة (معجنات)

Help your child identify these words.
طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Lesson (2)



Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

cook book	كتاب الطهي	lamb	لحم الضأن
recipe	وصفة - طريقة	beef	لحم البقر
meals	وجبات	carefully	بعناية
difficult	صعب	well	بشكل جيد
tomato sauce	صلصة طماطم	easily	بسهولة
tomb	مقبرة	delicious	لذيذ
paintings	لوحات	chilli	فلفل حار



Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
digest	يهضم	digested
press	يضغط	pressed
bake	يخبز	baked
describe	يصف	described

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
say	يقول	said
show	يبين	showed
make	يصنع	made
sit	يجلس	sat



Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

make a meal	يعد وجبة	her own book	كتابها الخاص بها
share recipes	يشارك وصفات الطهي	made with	مصنوع من (مكونات)
take a long time	يستغرق مدة طويلة	baked in	مخبوز في

Did you know?

Bread was important in ancient Egypt. There are paintings in the tomb of Ty in Saqqara which show how people made it.

كان للخبز أهمية كبيرة في مصر القديمة. توجد رسومات في مقبرة (تي) في سقارة تُظهر كيف كان الناس يصنعونه.

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Read about the meals in Grandma's cook book.

Grandma's Cook Book



Aya was visiting her grandma. Grandma was making a meal, and Aya was sitting in the kitchen looking carefully at Grandma's books. Grandma cooked very well and she had her own cook book. It described different meals and had pictures of delicious food.

نت آية تزور جدتها. كانت الجدة تعد وجبة وكانت آية جالسة في المطبخ تنظر بعناية في كتب الجدة. تطبخ جدة بطريقة جيدة وكان لديها كتاب طبخ خاص بها. كان يصف العديد من الوجبات وبه صور للأكل اللذيذ.

"Wow, Grandma," said Aya. "You have lots of different meals in your book!"

الت آية «واو يا جدتي لديك الكثير من الوجبات المختلفة في كتابك!»

"Yes, I do," said Grandma. "I often share recipes with family and friends in other parts of Egypt. I like to try new things."

الت الجدة «نعم بالفعل غالبًا ما أشارك الوصفات مع العائلة والأصدقاء في أجزاء أخرى من مصر. أحب أن أجرب شياء جديدة.

"These look delicious! Can you make all of these?"

بدو الوجبات لذيذة! هل تستطيعين عمل كل هذه الوجبات؟

"Yes, I can. And I can easily show you, too! What would you like to make?"

نعم، أستطيع. ويمكنني أن أريك بسهولة أيضًا! ماذا تودين أن تصنعي؟

"Hmm, that's difficult," said Aya. "There are so many recipes to choose from!"

الت آية «همم، هذا صعب. هناك العديد من الوصفات للاختيار من بينها!»

Ful Medames:



This dish uses beans cooked with lemon juice, garlic, onion, chilli and herbs. It never has any meat in it. We always eat it with bread.

فول مدمس: يتكون هذا الطبق من الفول المطبوخ مع عصير الليمون والثوم والبصل والفلفل الحار والأعشاب. لا يوجد فيه أي لحوم أبداً. نحن دائما نأكله بالخبز.

Fatta:



Fatta has layers of rice and bread, with tomato sauce, vinegar, and meat. It takes a long time to digest, so we don't eat it very often.

فته: تتكون الفتة من طبقات من الأرز والخبز مع صلصة الطماطم والخل واللحم. يستغرق هضمه وقتًا طويلاً، لذلك لا نأكله كثيرًا.

Hawawshi:



Hawawshi is delicious. It is made with bread and beef or lamb. The meat is cooked with onion, herbs and spices. The bread is pressed together around the meat and cooked. We sometimes eat it with salad.

حواوشي: االحواوشي لذيذ. يتكون من الخبز ولحم البقر أو لحم الضأن. يتم طهي اللحم مع البصل والأعشاب والبهارات. يتم ضغط الخبز معًا حول اللحم وطهيه. نتناوله أحياناً مع السلطة.

Sayadeya:

People who live near the coast often make sayadeya. We use fish, which is baked in the oven with olive oil, onion, tomatoes, herbs, and spices. It's delicious!

صيادية: الناس الذين يعيشون بالقرب من الساحل غالبًا ما يطهون الصيادية. نستخدم السمك المطهي بالفرن بزيت الليمون والبصل والطماطم والأعشاب والبهارات. إنها لذيذة!

Help your child read about different meals.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ عن الوجبات المختلفة.

Adverbs of frequency ظروف التكرار

They tell us how often we do something. تخبرنا بعدد مرات حدوث الفعل.

always	■■■■■■■	= at all times
usually	■■■■■□□	= most often
often	■■■■□□□	= many times
sometimes	■■■□□□□	= now and then
never	□□□□□□□	= at no time

تأتي قبل الفعل الأساسي أو بعد (verb to be).

- We always eat hawawshi with bread. (قبل الفعل الأساسي)
- I am never late for school. (verb to be بعد)

Adverbs of manner ظروف الطريقة

They describe how we do something. تصف كيف نقوم بالأشياء.

- Aya was looking carefully at Grandma's book.
- Grandma cooked very well. - I can easily show you.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. People who live near the coast .... eat sayadeya.
   a) never b) often c) ever d) rarely
2. Grandma cooks .... , I like her food.
   a) bad b) good c) well d) happy
3. We .... go to school on Friday.
   a) always b) usually c) never d) sometimes
4. I can read English ....
   a) easily b) easy c) good d) nice
5. We .... eat Ful medames with bread.
   a) always b) never c) sometimes d) don't

Help your child learn adverbs of frequency and manner. ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم ظروف التكرار والطريقة.

Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. Who was Aya visiting?

....

2. Where was Aya sitting?

....

3. How did Grandma cook?

....

4. What did Grandma have?

....

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

olive - sayadeya - fish - meat

People who live near the coast often make 1)................................ . We use 2)............................, which is baked in the oven with 3)............................ oil, onion, tomatoes, herbs and spices. It's delicious.

3 Read and match.

1.	Hawawshi	a.	is made with beans.
2.	Fatta	b.	is made with beef or lamb.
3.	Sayadeya	c.	has rice, bread and meat.
4.	Ful medames	d.	has fish, tomatoes and onions.

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. People don't eat fatta very .... because it's difficult to digest.
   a) always b) rarely c) never d) often
2. I .... recipes with family and friends.
   a) take b) play c) share d) give
3. We .... eat ful medames with bread.
   a) always b) never c) last d) just

4. At Eid Al-Adha, we always eat ....

a) sayadeya b) ful medames c) fatta d) fish

5. Press the bread .... around the meat to make hawawsh

a) carefully b) quick c) easy d) slow

6. Grandma loves cooking and she cooks ....

a) good b) lazily c) badly d) well

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. was - **Bread** - in - important - Egypt - ancient - .

....

2. dish - hard - is - digest - **Which** - to - ?

....

3. always - ful medames - **We** - eat - bread - with - .

....

4. does - **How** - her - get - recipes - Grandma - ?

....

6 Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:

Your favorite dish

Guiding elements:

(fatta - rice - bread - sauce - Eid Al-Adha - digest)

....

....

....

....

....

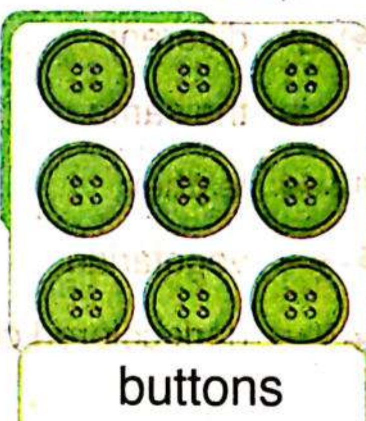
....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Traditional Clothes
ملابس تقليدية


T-shirt
تي شيرت


buttons
أزرار


linen
الكتان


galabeya
جلابية


hizam
حزام


sandals
صندل


jewelry
حُلي / مجوهرات


sleeve
كم

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

kaftan	قفطان	Eid Al-Fitr	عيد الفطر
dress	فستان	striped	مقلم
skirt	تنورة (جيبة)	different	مختلف
warm	دافئ	the same	نفس الشيء
cool	معتدل البرودة	leather	جلد
loose	واسع - فضفاض	vegetarian	شخص نباتي
weekend	عطلة نهاية الأسبوع	dark colored clothes	ملابس داكنة اللون

Look and read.

- Sandals are a type of shoe. They are sometimes made of leather.



- Jewelry is a type of ornament. زينة

  It's usually made of gold. الذهب



- Kaftan is a type of long belted tunic.

  It's always worn in Arab countries.



- The galabeya is a type of clothes.

  It has long sleeves.



- Linen keeps you cool.



- Many ancient Egyptians wore sandals made of leather.
- The ancient Egyptians wore white clothes.

 Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

l and read.

Presenter	:	Hello and welcome to Radio Now. What did people wear in the past, and what are they wearing now? Today I'm talking to Dr Samir today about clothes in Egypt - Hello,Dr Samir! أهلًا ومرحبًا بكم في «راديو الآن». ماذا كان يرتدي الناس في الماضي، وماذا يرتدون الآن؟ أتحدث اليوم مع دكتور سمير عن الملابس في مصر - مرحبًا، دكتور سمير!
Dr Samir	:	Hello! مرحبًا!
Presenter	:	So, when we think about ancient Egyptian clothing, it's often quite simple, isn't it ? عندما نفكر في الملابس المصرية القديمة، فغالبًا ما يكون الأمر بسيطًا للغاية، أليس كذلك؟
Dr Samir	:	Yes, that's right - we have lots of old paintings that show people wearing loose white linen. White is a good color to wear in hot weather, and loose linen clothes help to keep you cool. نعم، هذا صحيح - لدينا الكثير من اللوحات القديمة التي تظهر أشخاصًا يرتدون الكتان الأبيض الفضفاض. يعتبر اللون الأبيض لونًا جيدًا للارتداء في الطقس الحار، كما تساعد الملابس الكتانية الفضفاضة على إبقائك معتدل الحرارة.
Presenter	:	I see - and what other things did people wear at that time? أفهم ذلك - وما الأشياء الأخرى التي كان يرتديها الناس في ذلك الوقت؟
Dr Samir	:	Many ancient Egyptians wore sandals on their feet. These were made from leather. And they wore lots of jewelry, too. It was important to look beautiful. ارتدى العديد من المصريين القدماء الصنادل في أقدامهم، وكانت مصنوعة من الجلد. وكانوا يرتدون الكثير من المجوهرات أيضًا. كان من المهم أن تبدو جميلًا.
Presenter	:	So how are things different today? إذًا كيف تختلف الأمور اليوم؟

Dr Samir : Well there's a lot more color in traditional Egyptian clothing today, but many people still prefer loose clothing. In some parts of Egypt, it is traditional for men and women to wear the galabeya, which is long and loose, with long sleeves. Men sometimes wear a striped kaftan over this with a hizam, which is a colored sash around their body. Men and women also wear items on their heads such as scarves or different styles of hats. In some cities, though, men and women often wear more modern clothes, such as trousers and shirts, or dresses and skirts.

حسنًا، هناك الكثير من الألوان في الملابس المصرية التقليدية اليوم، لكن الكثير من الناس ما زالوا يفضلون الملابس الفضفاضة. وفي بعض مناطق مصر، من التقليدي أن يرتدي الرجال والنساء الجلابية، وهي طويلة وفضفاضة، ذات أكمام طويلة. يرتدي الرجال أحيانًا قفطانًا مخططًا فوقها مع حزام، وهو وشاح ملون حول أجسادهم. يرتدي الرجال والنساء أيضًا أشياء على رؤوسهم مثل الأوشحة أو أنماط مختلفة من القبعات. ومع ذلك، في بعض المدن، غالبًا ما يرتدي الرجال والنساء ملابس أكثر حداثة، مثل السراويل والقمصان، أو الفساتين والتنانير.

Look and read.



This is Hana. Today she is wearing a blue dress. She usually wears a T-shirt and a skirt, but today is a special day. She is celebrating Eid Al-Fitr with her family.

هذه هنا. اليوم هي ترتدي فستان أزرق. هي عادةً ما ترتدي تي شيرت وتنورة (جيبة) لكن اليوم يوم مميز. فهي تحتفل بعيد الفطر مع عائلتها.



This is Adam. Today he is helping his mom make ful medames. They often eat meat but today they are making a vegetarian recipe.

هذا هو آدم. اليوم هو يساعد والدته في إعداد الفول المدمس. فهم غالبًا يأكلون اللحوم لكنهم اليوم يطهون وصفة نباتية.

Help you child look and read.

ساعد طفلك أن ينظر ويقرأ.



The Present Simple and Present Continuous Tenses

زمن المضارع البسيط والمضارع المستمر

Form التكوين	Present Simple المضارع البسيط	Present Continuous المضارع المستمر
Affirmative الإثبات	I / We / You / They + inf. He / She / It + inf. + s / es / ies - Men wear the galabeya.	Subj. + am / is / are + v + ing - She is wearing a skirt.
Usage الاستخدام	Something that is true, or that usually happens.	Something that is happening now.
Negative النفي	I / We / You / They + don't + inf. He / She / It + doesn't + inf. - I don't wear a dress.	Subj. + am/is/ are + not + v + ing - She isn't playing tennis.
Question السؤال	Do / Does + subj. + inf.? - Do you wear a shirt? - Yes, I do. QW + do / does + subj. + inf.? e.g. What do you wear on the weekend? - I wear a T-shirt.	Am / Is / Are + Subj. + v + ing? - Are you eating now? - Yes, I'm. QW + am/ is/ are + Subj. + v + ing? e.g. What are they wearing now? - They are wearing shirts.
Keywords الكلمات الدالة	always, usually, sometimes, often, never, every	at the moment, now, at present, still Look!, Listen!, Watch out!

Help your child compare the present simple and present continuous.
ساعد طفلك أن يقارن بين المضارع البسيط والمستمر.



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Today, I .... to Dr Sam
   a) talk b) am talking c) talks d) talking
2. What are you .... now
   a) wear b) wearing c) wears d) wore
3. We often .... at home
   a) help b) are helping c) helping d) helps
4. .... she waiting for the bus
   a) Do b) Does c) Are d) Is
5. I .... ful medames in the morning
   a) eat often b) usually eats c) often eat d) eat usually

2 Read and complete with the correct verbs in brackets.

1. Today Hana .... (wear) a blue dress.
2. Heba usually .... (wear) a T-shirt and skirt.
3. Today .... (be) a special day.
4. Mona .... (celebrate) Eid Al-Fitr with her family.
5. Today Adam .... (help) his mom make ful medames.
6. They often .... (eats) meat.
7. Look! They .... (make) a vegetarian recipe.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

General Activities

1 Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box:

dress - birthday - wearing - is

Nadia : Hello, Nour. What are you 1) ....?

Nour : I'm wearing a blue 2) ....

Nadia : Why?

Nour : Because today is a special day.

Nadia : What is it?

Nour : It's my grandma's 3) ....

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

shoes - celebrating - give - goes

Nadia lives in Luxor with her family. Today, she is 1)................................ Eid Al-Fitr with her family. She is wearing her best dress and new 2)............................ . She usually 3)........................... out on Thursday, but today is a holiday. The whole family is together. They are sitting in the living room.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. you - now - **What** - wearing - are - ?

   ....

2. prefer - clothes - **Some** - white - people - .

   ....

3. has - **The galabeya** - sleeves - long - .

   ....

4. favorite - my - **Eid El-Fitr** - is - festival - .

   ....



4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Hana .... a blue dress toda
   a) wear b) wears c) is wearing d) wore
2. Adam always .... his mom at hom
   a) help b) helps c) helping d) is helping
3. He .... for the bus no
   a) wait b) waited c) is waiting d) are waiting
4. Dad .... me present
   a) give always b) give often
   c) gives always d) always gives
5. Today, we .... Eid Al-Fit
   a) is celebrating b) celebrated c) celebrate d) are celebrating
6. He .... eat mea
   a) don't b) doesn't c) isn't d) aren't
7. What .... wear to do sports
   a) do you b) are you c) you are d) you do
8. We sometimes .... fish and rice for dinner on Saturdays
   a) having b) are having c) have d) has
9. Hello! .... for the bus?
   a) Are you waiting b) You are waiting
   c) Do you wait d) Does he wait
10. The sun .... in the morning
    a) rise b) rises c) rising d) to rise
11. Dalia's mom .... in an office every day.
    a) work b) works c) worked d) working
12. Sami is in the garden with his dad. Sami .... him.
    a) help b) helps c) helping d) is helping



5 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Hana is wearing a blue dress. She usually wears a T- shirt and skirt, but today is a special day. She is celebrating Eid Al-Fitr with her family. Adam is helping his mom make ful medames. They often eat meat but today they are making a vegetarian recipe.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Adam's mom is making .... today.
   a) fish   b) ful medames   c) fatta   d) pizza
2. The underlined pronoun "She" refers to ....
   a) Adam   b) Mom   c) Hana   d) Mona

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What is Hana wearing today?

....

4. What type of recipe are they making?

....

5. What is the main idea of the text?

....

6. What is Hana celebrating?

....

6 Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:

Eid Al-Fitr

Guiding elements:

(special - celebrate - Ramadan - cookies - enjoy)

....

....

....

....

Lesson (4) WELCOME TO EGYPT

Key Vocabulary كلمات أساسية

festival	احتفال	stew	ر مطبوخ مع اللحم
sights	معالم	guests	ف
host	مضيف	generous	م - سخي

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

sunrise	شروق الشمس	cookies	ك مُحَلّي
statue	تمثال	wife	ة
stuffed vegetables	خضراوات محشية	main temple	عبد الرئيسي
friendly	ودود	visitor	ر
dried salted fish	سمك مجفف ومملح	typical meal	بة نمطية

Famous statues تماثيل مشهورة

Ra	الملك رع	Ramses II	سيس الثاني
Amun	تمثال آمون	Nefertari	لكة نفرتاري
Hatshepsut	الملكة حتشبسوت	Ptah	لك بتاح

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

famous for	مشهور بـ	learn about	علم عن
It's a good idea to	إنها فكرة جيدة أن	at sunrise	د شروق الشمس
served with	تُقدم مع	write about	تب عن
give information for	يعطي معلومات لـ	ask for	لب

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
invite	يدعو	invited
camp	يعسكر	camped
serve	يقدم	served
bake	يخبز	baked

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
eat	يأكل	ate
meet	يقابل	met
come	يأتي	came
bring	يحضر	brought

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Lesson (4)

Look and read.



Egypt is a fantastic country to visit! There is so much to see, such as the pyramids of Giza, the old Luxor Temple, the Red Sea, and of course the River Nile. In all parts of the country, you can see amazing sights, eat delicious food, and meet friendly people.

مصر بلد رائع للزيارة! هناك الكثير مما يمكن رؤيته، مثل أهرامات الجيزة ومعبد الأقصر القديم والبحر الأحمر وبالطبع نهر النيل. وفي جميع أنحاء البلاد، يمكنك رؤية مناظر مذهلة، وتناول الطعام اللذيذ، والتعرف على أشخاص ودودين.

Visitors often like to learn about Egyptian traditions before they come. Egyptian people are famous for welcoming visitors with food and drink, and for inviting guests to their home. If you are invited to an Egyptian family's home, it's a good idea to bring a present, for example chocolates or sweets. However, the host usually doesn't open the present at the time when they get it.

غالبًا ما يرغب الزوار في التعرف على التقاليد المصرية قبل قدومهم. يشتهر الشعب المصري باستقبال الزوار بالطعام والشراب، ودعوة الضيوف إلى منازلهم. إذا تمت دعوتك إلى منزل عائلة مصرية، فمن الجيد أن تحضر معك هدية، على سبيل المثال الشوكولاتة أو الحلويات. ومع ذلك، فإن المضيف عادةً لا يفتح الهدية في الوقت الذي يحصل فيه عليها.

A traditional Egyptian meal is served with people sitting together around a table. A typical meal has rice, a kind of vegetable stew, soup, stuffed vegetables and meat or chicken. Egyptians are very generous and are very happy when you ask for more food. This means you enjoyed their delicious meal! Some Egyptian festivals have traditional food, too. At Eid Al-Fitr, people bake special cookies called kahk, with sugar on top. At Sham El-Nessim, people eat dried salted fish, called fesikh. If you visit Egypt at these times, you should try these dishes!

يتم تقديم وجبة مصرية تقليدية مع أشخاص يجلسون معًا حول طاولة. تتكون الوجبة النمطية من الأرز، و نوع من الخضار المطهي، والحساء، والخضروات المحشوة، واللحوم أو الدجاج. المصريون كرماء للغاية ويسعدون جدًا عندما تطلب المزيد من الطعام. هذا يعني أنك استمتعت بوجبتهم اللذيذة! بعض المهرجانات المصرية لها طعام تقليدي أيضًا. في عيد الفطر، يخبز الناس بسكويت خاص يسمى الكحك، مع السكر فوقه. وفي شم النسيم، يأكل الناس السمك المجفف المملح، الذي يسمى الفسيخ. إذا قمت بزيارة مصر في هذه الأوقات عليك تجربة هذه الأطباق!

Help you child look and read.

ساعد طفلك أن ينظر ويقرأ.

Look and read.

The Abu Simbel Sun Festival



Near Aswan, you can see the temples of Abu Simbel. Outside the temples, there are some very big statues of Ramses II and his wife Nefertari. Twice a year, people celebrate the Abu Simbel Sun Festival there, on February 22nd and October 22nd. On these days, light from the sun at sunrise shines all the way inside the main temple, to the rooms inside.

رب من أسوان يمكنك رؤية معابد أبو سمبل. يوجد خارج المعابد بعض التماثيل الكبيرة جدًا لرمسيس الثاني وزوجته
تاري. ويحتفل الناس هناك بمهرجان أبو سمبل للشمس مرتين في العام، يومي ٢٢ فبراير و٢٢ أكتوبر. في هذه الأيام،
رق ضوء الشمس وقت شروق الشمس على طول الطريق داخل المعبد الرئيسي، إلى الغرف الموجودة بداخله.

There are four statues inside the temple: those of Ramses, Ra, Amun ar Ptah. The sunlight shines on all of them except Ptah. He is always in th dark. People celebrate the Abu Simbel sun festival by getting up early see the light inside the temple at sunrise. Then people eat, drink and sir to celebrate this special day.

جد داخل المعبد أربعة تماثيل: تماثيل رمسيس ورع وآمون وبتاح. وتشرق الشمس عليهم جميعا ما عدا بتاح. هو دائمًا في
لام. يحتفل الناس بعيد أبو سمبل للشمس من خلال الاستيقاظ مبكرًا لرؤية الضوء داخل المعبد عند شروق الشمس. ثم
ل الناس ويشربون ويغنون للاحتفال بهذا اليوم المميز.



Answer the following questions.

1. What places can you visit in Egypt?

....

2. How often do people celebrate the Abu Simbel Sun Festival?

....

Help your child learn about Egypt's traditio

طفلك أن يتعلم عن تقاليد مصر.

Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What country is the text about?

....

2. What can you see in this country?

....

3. How are the Egyptians?

....

4. What do Egyptian festivals have?

....

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

generous - typical - kahk - traditional

A traditional Egyptian meal is served with people sitting together around a table. A 1)................. meal has rice, a kind of vegetable stew soup, stuffed vegetables and meat or chicken. Egyptians are very 2)........................ and are very happy when you ask for more food. Some Egyptian festivals have 3)........................... food, too.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. is - a fantastic - Egypt - to - country - visit - .

....

2. temple - four - There - statues - are - inside - the - .

....

3. very - Egyptians - are - generous - .

....



4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Near Aswan, you can see the temples of Abu Simbel. **Outside** temples, there are some very big statues of Ramses II and his wife Nefer Twice a year, people celebrate the Abu Simbel Sun Festival there, February 22nd and October 22nd. On these days, light from the sun at sun shines all the way inside the main temple, to the rooms inside. There a four statues inside the temple: those of Ramses, Ra, Amun and Ptah. T sunlight shines on all of them except Ptah. He is always in the dark. Peop celebrate the Abu Simbel Sun Festival by getting up early to see the lig inside the temple at sunrise.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The temples of Abu Simbel are near ....

   a) Giza b) Luxor c) Aswan d) Cairo

2. The underlined word "Outside" is opposite of ....

   a) on b) inside c) under d) above

B) Answer the following questions.

3. When do people celebrate the Abu Simbel Sun Festival? ....
4. Name the four statues inside the temple. ....
5. How many statues are there inside the temple? ....
6. What is the general idea of the text? ....

5 Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:

Egypt

Guiding elements:

(visit - fantastic - traditional meals - kahk - fesikh - enjoy)

....

....

....

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lessons (5&6)

- CLIL: FABLES AND FOLKLORE
- PROJECT

Key Vocabulary كلمات أساسية

servant	خادم	successful	ناجح
shipwreck	حُطام السفينة	sailor	بحّار
special	خاص - مُميّز	folklore	تراث شعبي

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

frightened	خائف	giant	عملاق
king	ملك	bright	لامع - مضيء
journey	رحلة	patient	صبور
island	جزيرة	imaginary	خيالي
waves	أمواج	gold	ذهب
snake	ثعبان	terrible	فظيع
storm	عاصفة	exciting	مثير
strong	قوي	conflict	صراع



Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
look	ينظر	looked	laugh	يضحك	laughed
smile	يبتسم	smiled	need	يحتاج	needed
travel	يسافر	traveled	ask	يسأل	asked
solve	يحل	solved	prepare	يعد - يجهز	prepared
return	يعود	returned	stay	يبقى / يقيم	stayed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
tell	يخبر told	leave	يغادر left
come	يأتي came	begin	يبدأ began
fall	يسقط fell	say	يقول said
bring	يحضر brought	speak	يتحدث spoke
hear	يسمع heard	go	يذهب went
send	يرسل sent	sink	يغرق sank

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

travel with	يسافر مع	listen to	يستمع إلى
frightened about	خائف بشأن	went on a journey	ذهب في رحلة
speak to	يتحدث إلى	fell into	سقط في
look for	يبحث عن	get to	يصل إلى
return to	يعود إلى	Be patient	كن صبورًا
leave for	يغادر من أجل	on the island	في الجزيرة
decide to	يقرر أن	worried about	قلق على
fall down	يسقط	go home	يذهب للمنزل
get home	يصل للمنزل	solve a problem	يحل مشكلة
try your best	تبذل أقصى جهدك	live with	يعيش مع

Did you know?

Fables and folklore are types of stories that are passed down from one group of people to another group of people. They teach us a lesson or "moral", and are often about animals, plants or things that happen in nature. There are many stories from ancient Egypt.

الأساطير والتراث الشعبي هي أنواع من القصص التي تتوارثها مجموعة من الناس وتنقلها إلى مجموعة أخرى من الناس. إنهم يعلموننا درسًا أو مغزى أخلاقي». وغالبًا ما تحكى عن الحيوانات أو النباتات أو الأشياء التي تحدث في الطبيعة. هناك العديد من القصص من مصر القديمة.

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Lessons (5&6)

Listen and read.

The Tale of the Shipwrecked Sailor



"Long ago, the king asked an important man to leave Egypt for a special job. The man traveled with many other sailors, but he wasn't successful. When he returned, he was frightened about what the King would say. His servant spoke to him."You must tell the King that you tried your best", he said." I don't want to say that I was not successful", said the man. "Listen to my story," said the servant. "I was a sailor, too. I went on a journey for the King with the best sailors in the country. But a storm came, and our ship sank. I fell into the sea, and swam to an island. I was alone and frightened. Then, I looked for food, and the island had food, water, and everything I needed.

«منذ زمن بعيد، طلب الملك من رجل مهم أن يغادر مصر من أجل مهمه خاصة. سافر الرجل مع العديد من البحارة الآخرين، لكنه لم ينجح. وعندما عاد كان خائفا مما سيقوله الملك. فتكلم معه خادمه قائلا: «يجب أن تخبر الملك إنك بذلت قصارى جهدك». قال الرجل: «لا أريد أن أقول إنني لم أكن ناجحًا». قال الخادم: «استمع إلى قصتي». «كنت بحارًا أيضًا. ذهبت في رحلة للملك مع أفضل البحارة في البلاد. ولكن جاءت عاصفة وغرقت سفينتنا. لقد سقطت في البحر، وسبحت إلى جزيرة. كنت وحيدا وخائفا. ثم بحثت عن الطعام، وكان في الجزيرة طعام وماء وكل شيء كنت بحاجة إليه.

" Another storm began. I saw a giant snake in the waves. His body was gold and his eyes were bright blue. I fell down as he spoke.

"How did you get to this island?" said the snake.

"I couldn't speak. The snake put me in his mouth and took me to the place where he lived. He asked me again how I got to the island, so I told him about the shipwreck.

«بدات عاصفة اخرى. رايت ثعبانًا عملاقًا وسط الأمواج. كان جسده ذهبيًا وعيناه زرقاء لامعة. لقد سقطت بينما كان يتحدث.

قال الثعبان «كيف وصلت إلى هذه الجزيرة؟»

«لم أستطع التحدث. وضعني الثعبان في فمه واخذني إلى المَكان الذي يعيش فيه. سالني مرة أخرى كيف وصلت إلى الجزيرة، فأخبرته عن تحطم السفينة.

"Don't be frightened," said the snake. "You'll stay on the island for four months, and you'll be safe. Then people will find you and take you home. Be patient, and you'll return to your family."

Help your child read a traditional fable.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ قصة خرافية تقليدية ذات مغزى.

Then the snake told me what happened to him.
"Long ago, I lived on the island with my children and brothers.
A star fell, bringing a terrible fire. I was the only one to live. But
I stayed strong and patient, and things became better."
"Thank you," I said. "When I get home, I will send you many presents." The
snake laughed. "I don't need your presents. I have everything I need here."

ل الثعبان: «لا تخف». «ستبقى في الجزيرة لمدة أربعة أشهر، وستكون آمنًا. ثم سيجدك الناس ويأخذونك إلى موطنك،
ير، وستعود إلى أهلك». ثم أخبرني الثعبان بما حدث له. «منذ زمن طويل، عشت في الجزيرة مع أطفالي وإخوتي. سقط
جم، مما أدى إلى حريق رهيب. كنت الوحيد الذي يعيش. لكنني بقيت قويا وصبورا، وأصبحت الأمور أفضل". قلت: «شكرًا
لك. «عندما أعود إلى المنزل، سأرسل لك العديد من الهدايا.» ضحك الثعبان. «لست بحاجة إلى الهدايا الخاصة بك. لدي
كل ما أحتاجه هنا.»

"I was on the island for four months, then a ship came, just as the snake
said. The snake gave me special presents to take home."
"Tell people in your city about me," he said.
"I returned to my family, gave the presents to the King, and he was pleased.
So listen to my story. I was in a terrible place, but now I'm safe." The man
heard the story, and smiled.

لقد مكثت في الجزيرة أربعة أشهر، ثم جاءت سفينة، كما قال الثعبان لقد أعطاني الثعبان هدايا خاصة لآخذها إلى وطني.
وقال: «حدث عني الناس في مدينتك». «عدت إلى أهلي وقدمت الهدايا للملك ففرح. لذا استمع إلى قصتي. لقد كنت في
مكان رهيب، لكني الآن بأمان". سمع الرجل القصة وابتسم.

A good story has القصة الجيدة تحتوي على

شخصيات ← characters: people, animals or imaginary things.

مكان / زمان ← setting: where or when the story happens.

حبكة درامية ← a plot: exciting events that join together.

صراع ← conflict: a problem that the characters have to solve.

حل - قرار ← Resolution: when the problem is solved and the story ends.

Feature	Example
Characters	the servant, the snake
Setting	an island in the sea / long ago
A plot	a servant goes on a journey, but he is shipwrecked and meets a giant snake
Conflict	the servant wants to go home, but he can't
Resolution	people come and take the servant home

Help your child read a traditional fable.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ قصة خرافية تقليدية ذات مغزى.

General Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The man traveled .... many other sailors.
   a) at b) with c) by d) on
2. I went on a journey .... the king with the best sailors.
   a) at b) by c) about d) for
3. I was on the island for four months but unfortunately there was a .... I was very scared.
   a) snake b) shipwreck c) rock d) stone
4. I looked .... the food everywhere but I didn't find it.
   a) at b) in c) for d) by
5. A .... is where the story happens.
   a) setting b) conflict c) resolution d) plot

2 Read and match.

1. Setting is
2. Plot is
3. I'm frightened
4. I was on the island

a. for four months.
b. of snakes.
c. where the story happens.
d. exciting events that join together.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. a giant - I - saw - waves - in - snake - the - .
   ....
2. send - will - I - presents - you - many - .
   ....
3. long - was - How - the servant - island - the - on - ?
   ....



4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Long ago, the King asked an important man to leave Egypt for a spec job. The man traveled with many other sailors, but he wasn't successful. Wh he returned, he was frightened about what the King would say. His serv spoke to him. "You must tell the King that you tried your best," he said.

"I don't want to say that I was not successful," said the man.

"Listen to my story," said the servant. "I was a sailor, too. I went on a journ for the King with the best sailors in the country. But storm came, and our sh sank. I fell into the sea, and swam to an island. I was alone and frightened.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The .... asked the man to leave Egypt for a special jo

   a) Prince b) Princess c) King d) Queen

2. The underlined word "frightened" means ....

   a) afraid b) happy c) excited d) fast

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What happened to the ship and the man?....................................
4. With whom did the man go?....................................
5. What is the main idea of the text?....................................
6. How was the man on the island?....................................

5 Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:

A tale of sailor

Guiding elements:

(food - sank - journey - sea)

....

....

....

....

....

Writing Corner

Eid Al-Adha

Eid Al-Adha usually lasts for four days. It's during the month of Zu Elhijja. Many people sacrifice a sheep and eat some of its meat. They have a dish called fatta. During Eid Al-Adha, we go to the mosque for prayers and we are grateful for all the good things in our lives. We wear our best clothes and visit our family and friends.

Ful Medames

Ful medames is my favorite meal. We use beans cooked with lemon juice, garlic, onion and herbs. It never has any meat in it .We always eat it with bread. I eat it every day.

Sham El-Nessim

I love celebrating Sham El-Nessim with my family. It is in spring. The ancient Egyptians also celebrated it, as a festival of creation and new life. It is always on the same day as Coptic Easter Monday. Because it is the start of spring, the weather is usually sunny and warm. We eat different traditional food like boiled eggs and fesikh.

Egypt

Egypt is a fantastic country to visit. There is so much to see, such as the Pyramids of Giza, the old Luxor Temple,.the Red Sea, and of course the River Nile. In all parts of the country, you can see amazing sights, eat delicious food, and meet friendly people.

Dictation on Unit (8)

Lesson (1)

غروب الشمس	....
شروق الشمس	....
ملاهي	.... مهرجان
المصريون القدماء	.... شاكر
وليمة	....

Lesson (2)

زيت زيتون	....
ثوم	....
توابل	....
وصفة - طريقة طهى	....
لحم الضأن	.... وجبة

Lesson (3)

الكتان	.... - مجوهرات
صندل	....
أزرار	....
دافئ	.... - فضفاض
جلد	....

Lesson (4)

احتفال	.... - سخي
ضيوف	....
يكتب عن	....
زوجة	....
مضيف	....

Lessons (5 & 6)

خادم	....
تراث شعبي	.... السفينة
ناجح	....
خائف	....
يبتسم	....

Help your child dictate these words.
ساعد طفلك في إملاء هذه الكلمات.

Review on Unit (8)

Festivals

Sham El-Nessim	شم النسيم	celebration	احتفال
prayer	صلاة - دعاء	sunset	غروب الشمس
fairgrounds	ساحات الألعاب (ملاهى)	sacrifice	يضحي
come up	تشرق	feast	وليمة
dark colored clothes	ملابس داكنة اللون	celebrate	يحتفل
Eid Al-Adha	عيد الأضحى	creation	خلق
Hajj pilgrimage	الحج	sunrise	شروق الشمس
Coptic Easter	عيد الفصح القبطي	lantern	فانوس

Recipes

recipes	وصفات (للطعام)	ful medames	فول مدمس	beans	فول
fatta	فتة	hawawshi	حواوشي	herbs	أعشاب
sayadeya	سمك صيادية	spices	بهارات / توابل	bread	خبز
garlic	ثوم	olive oil	زيت زيتون	vinegar	خل

Clothes

buttons	أزرار	kaftan	قفطان	linen	كتان (قماش)
jewelry	حُلي	short	قصير	sleeves	أكمام
hizam	حزام	loose	فضفاض/ واسع	galabeya	جلابية
wear (wore)	يرتدي	long	طويل	sandals	صندل

Fables and folklore

shipwreck	حطام السفينة	servant	خادم	patient	صبور
successful	ناجح	sailor	بحار	special	مميز



The Present Simple and Present Continuous Tenses

زمن المضارع البسيط والمضارع المستمر

Form التكوين	Present Simple المضارع البسيط	Present Continuous المضارع المستمر
Affirmative الإثبات	**I/ We/ You/ They + inf.** **He/ She/ It + inf. + s/ es/ ies** - Men wear the galabeya.	**Subj. + am/ is/ are + v + ing** - She is wearing a skirt.
Usage الاستخدام	Something that is true, or that usually happens.	Something that is happening now.
Negative النفي	**I/ We/ You/ They + don't + inf.** **He/ She/ It + doesn't + inf.** - I don't wear a dress.	**Subj. + am/ is/ are + not + v + ing** - She isn't playing tennis.
Question السؤال	**Do/ Does + subj. + inf.?** - Do you wear a shirt? - Yes, I do.	**Am/ Is/ Are + Subj. + v + ing?** - Are you eating now? - Yes, I'm.
	QW + do/ does + subj. + inf.? e.g. What do you wear on the weekend? - I wear a T-shirt.	**QW + am/ is/ are + Subj. + v + ing?** e.g. What are they wearing now? - They are wearing shirts.
Keywords الكلمات الدالة	always, usually, sometimes, often, never, every	at the moment, now, at present, still Look!, Listen!, Watch out!

Help your child revise unit (8).
ساعد طفلك على مراجعة الوحدة الثامنة .

Exam On Unit (8)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What's your favorite festival?

....

2. What do we decorate in Sham El-Nessim?

....

3. When do we eat kahk?

....

4. What do we eat at Eid Al-Adha?

....

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

Pyramids - the Red Sea - the Nile - Egypt

I think Egypt is a great place to visit. You can visit the 1)............................ of Giza, the library in Alexandria, or the beautiful temple of Hatshepsut in the Valley of the Kings. There are so many things to see. It's a fantastic place to have a holiday. You can take a boat trip down 2).................... or go camping in the desert or you can go diving in 3)...

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Eid Al-Adha usually lasts for four days, and it is a very important Islamic festival. **It** celebrates the time when Ibrahim listened to God in a dream. At Eid Al-Adha, many people sacrifice a sheep and eat some of its meat in a traditional dish called fatta. We give out meat to our family and friends. During Eid Al-Adha, we go to the mosque for prayers and we are grateful for all the good things in our lives. We wear our best clothes for the celebrations and we have a feast together. Eid Al-Adha is during the month of Zu Elhijja when Muslims go to the Hajj pilgrimage.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Eid Al-Adha lasts for .... days

a) four b) fourteen c) five d) forty

2. The underlined pronoun "It" refers to ....

a) Eid Al-Adha b) Eid Al-Fitr c) Sham El-Nessim d) New Year

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What is the general idea of the text?

....

4. What do Muslims sacrifice at Eid Al-Adha?

....

5. Where do Muslims go for prayers?

....

6. What do we wear during the days of Eid Al-Adha?

....

4 The Reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. It's hot on the roof today. [ ]
2. Eagle landed in a nest on top of the neighbour's building. [ ]

B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

3. The .... is so beautiful.

a) seagull b) eagle c) chick d) chicken

4. Amir and Grandma hang up the ....

a) bottles b) clothes c) dishes d) bags

 Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Dina .... a book of Egyptian fables in her bedroom now.
   a) is reading b) read c) reading d) are reading
2. Fares .... in an apartment near the coast.
   a) living b) lives c) live d) are living
3. Look at these! I .... some eggs for Sham El-Nessim.
   a) paints b) paint c) painted d) am painting
4. The children usually .... games in the park on the weekend.
   a) play b) playing c) plays d) are playing

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. never - any - Ful medames - has - in - meat - it - .

....

2. are - many - There - stories - ancient - from - Egypt - .

....

7 Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:

Your favorite dish

Guiding elements:

(Ful medames - bread - lemon juice - onion - meat - delicious)

....

....

....

....

....

....

Unit 9

Our culture

ثقافتنا

In this unit, the students will ...

- read about their cultural heritage.
- read a story about culturai artifacts.
- revise past simple verbs.
- form and use past continuous verbs.
- listen to information about tourism and archaeology.
- learn about and draw bar charts.
- write notes for an object in a museum.
- write a report about an archaeological site.

يقرأ عن تراثهم الثقافي.
يقرأ قصة عن القطع الأثرية الثقافية.
يراجع الأفعال الماضية البسيطة.
يكوّن ويستخدم الأفعال المستمرة في الزمن الماضي.
يستمع إلى معلومات حول السياحة والآثار.
يتعلم عن الرسوم البيانية الشريطية ويرسمها.
يكتب ملاحظات عن قطعة في المتحف.
يكتب تقريرًا عن موقع أثري.



Lesson (1) WHAT IS HERITAGE?



Key Vocabulary كلمات أساسية

identity	هوية	heritage	تراث	civilization	حضارة
temple	معبد	archaeologist	عالم آثار	site	موقع أثري
agriculture	الزراعة	calendar	تقويم	culture	ثقافة



Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

country	بلد / دولة	food	طعام	unique	فريد من نوعه
object	شيء	important	هام	fertile	خصب
interesting	شيق	dancing	رقص	crops	محاصيل
historian	مؤرخ	soil	تربة	museum	متحف
system	نظام	growth	نمو/نماء	farming	الزراعة
field	حقل	amazing	مذهل	monuments	آثار



Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة | *Irregular verbs* أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
include	يتضمن	included	come	يأتي	came
explore	يستكشف	explored	build	يبني	built
store	يخزن	stored	know	يعرف	knew
flood	يفيض	flooded	lead to	يؤدي إلى	led to
develop	يطور	developed	grow	يزرع / ينمو	grew
farm	يزرع	farmed	cut	يقطع	cut

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.



Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

their own heritage	تراثهم الخاص	ancient Egypt	ـصر القديمة
lead to	يؤدي إلى	come from	ـتي من
learn about	يتعلم عن	interested in	ـهتم بـ
used to	اعتاد أن	connect to	ـرتبط بـ
find out	يكتشف	full of	ـملوء بـ
proud of	فخور بـ	good for	ـالح لـ / جيد لـ



Places أماكن

Abu Simbel Temple	معبد أبو سمبل	Luxor	الأقصر
The Nile	نهر النيل	Giza	الجيزة

Definitions التعريفات

site	an interesting place, for example where an old town or building used to be	موقع أثري
civilization	a large group of people who have their unique art, music, science, etc.	حضارة
heritage	is what people in a country have done	تراث

Did you know?

The Rosetta Stone is a special object that helped people understand hieroglyphics. It had the same words in two other languages that people could read, so they used these to translate the hieroglyphics! This is one of the ways we have learned about life in ancient Egypt.

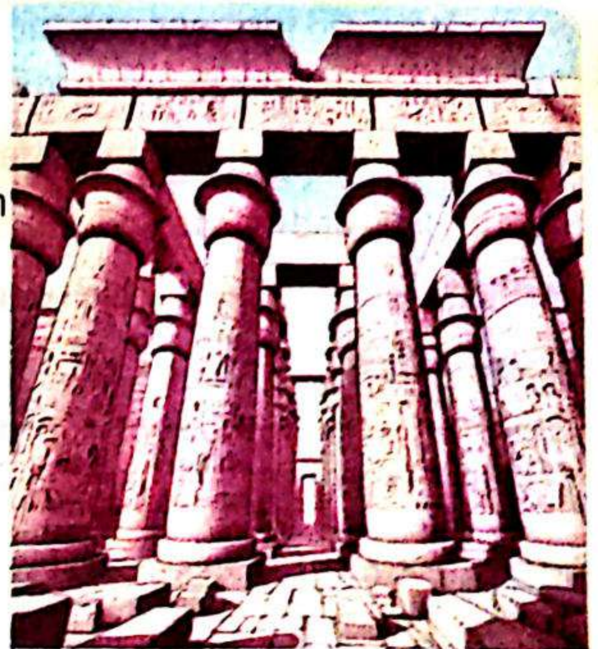
حجر رشيد هو قطعة أثرية مميزة. ساعد الناس على فهم الكتابة الهيروغليفية. كان يحتوي على نفس الكلمات بلغتين أخرتين. يمكن للناس قراءتها لذلك استخدموها لترجمة الهيروغليفية! هذه إحدى الطرق التي عرفنا بها الحياة في مصر القديمة.

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Lesson (1)

Listen and read.

My heritage



A country's heritage is an important part of its identity. All countries have their own heritage, and it comes from its history and traditions. Heritage includes art, buildings, and objects from the past, or things like food, music, and dancing. People in ancient Egypt built many amazing temples and monuments, and this is an important part of our heritage. They also developed agriculture and some of the first calendars.

تراث أي بلد هو جزء مهم من هويته. كل الدول لها تراثها الخاص، وهو يأتي من تاريخها وتقاليدها. يشمل التراث الفن والمباني وقطع أثرية من الماضي، أو أشياء مثل الطعام والموسيقى والرقص. بنى الناس في مصر القديمة العديد من المعابد والآثار الرائعة، وهذا جزء مهم من تراثنا. كما قاموا بتطوير الزراعة وبعض التقاويم الأولى.

Archaeologists have learned lots of interesting things about the civilization of ancient Egypt by exploring historical sites at places like Abu Simbel, Luxor and Giza. I'm very interested in Egypt's heritage and I enjoy learning about it. I visit museums with my parents to learn about the things people did in the past. For example, did you know that the ancient Egyptians were one of the first civilizations to develop a system of writing? I'm very proud of my heritage.

لقد تعلم علماء الآثار الكثير من الأشياء المثيرة للاهتمام حول حضارة مصر القديمة من خلال استكشاف المواقع التاريخية في أماكن مثل أبو سمبل والأقصر والجيزة. أنا مهتم جدًا بتراث مصر وأستمتع بالتعرف عليه. أقوم بزيارة المتاحف مع والدي للتعرف على الأشياء التي فعلها الناس في الماضي. على سبيل المثال، هل تعلم أن القدماء المصريين كانوا من أوائل الحضارات التي طورت نظام الكتابة؟ أنا فخور جدًا بتراثي.

Help your child read about cultural heritage.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ عن التراث الثقافي.

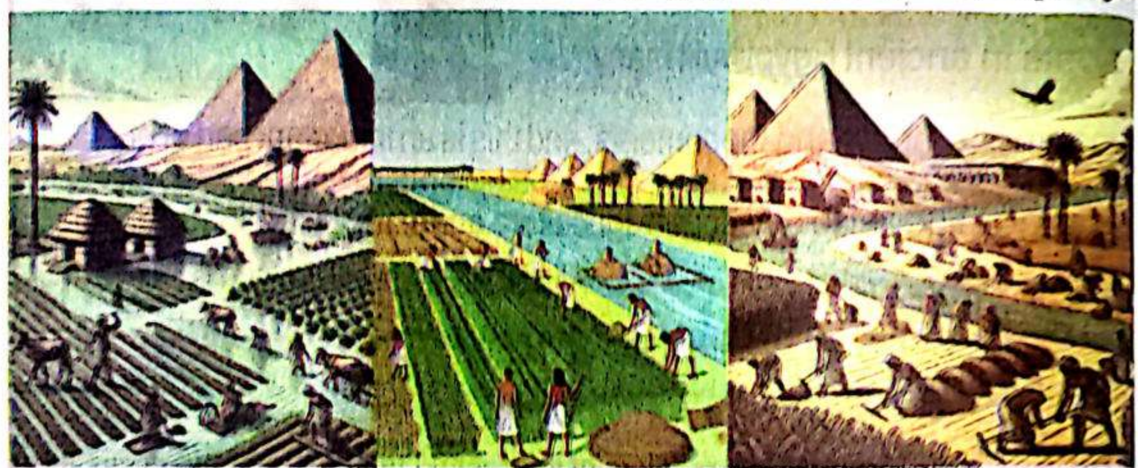
Listen and read.

How did farmers use the Nile? كيف استخدم المزارعون النيل؟

Agriculture is an important part of Egypt's heritage, too. The Nile used to flood every year, making the soil more fertile. This is why ancient Egyptians could farm the land and it led to a growth in civilization. There were three seasons of farming in ancient Egypt, which were all connected to the Nile.

These were:

تعتبر الزراعة جزءًا مهمًا من تراث مصر أيضًا. وكان نهر النيل يفيض كل عام، مما يجعل التربة أكثر خصوبة. ولهذا السبب تمكن المصريون القدماء من زراعة الأرض وأدى ذلك إلى نمو الحضارة. كانت هناك ثلاثة مواسم للزراعة في مصر القديمة، وكانت جميعها مرتبطة بنهر النيل. وهذه الفصول هي:



The flooding season: from June to September. The fields were full of water for four months.

موسم الفيضان: من يونيو حتى سبتمبر: تمتلئ الحقول بالمياه لمدة أربعة أشهر.

The growing season: from October to February. The water went away and the soil was rich and fertile. Farmers planted lots of different crops.

موسم الزراعة: من أكتوبر حتى فبراير: تجف المياه وتصبح التربة غنية وخصبة. يقوم المزارعون بزراعة الكثير من المحاصيل المختلفة.

The harvesting season: from March to May. Farmers cut the crops and stored them safely before the Nile flooded again.

موسم الحصاد: من مارس حتى مايو: يقوموا المزارعون بحصد المحاصيل وتخزينها بأمان قبل فيضان النيل مرة أخرى.

Help your child read about cultural heritage.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ عن التراث الثقافي.

General Activities

1 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

history - past - identity - heritage

Omar : What do you know about a country's 1) ....?

Ali : It's an important part of its 2) ....

Omar : Where does a heritage come from?

Ali : It comes from a country's 3) .... and traditions.

Omar : What does a heritage include?

Ali : It includes art , buildings and objects from the past.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. A country's heritage is an important part of its ....
   a) subject b) sport c) identity d) land
2. People in ancient Egypt built many amazing ....
   a) temples b) towers c) factories d) hotels
3. People in .... Egypt developed lots of new things.
   a) far b) proud c) ancient d) high
4. .... want to find out how people used to live in the past.
   a) Farmers b) Teachers c) Archaeologists d) Vets
5. A .... is an interesting place where an old building used to be.
   a) season b) site c) calendar d) city
6. We use a .... to see what day, month or time of year it is.
   a) calendar b) heritage c) temple d) book
7. .... is a large group of people who have their unique art,music,etc.
   a) Heritage b) Site c) Civilization d) Season
8. Historians are interested in .... of ancient Egypt.
   a) crops b) goats c) monuments d) seasons

9. The fields were full of water in the .... seas

a) flooding b) growing c) harvesting d) watering

10. Farmers cut the crops and stored them in the .... seas

a) growing b) flooding c) harvesting d) cutting

11. The Nile used to flood every year making the soil ....

a) bad b) fertile c) dry d) deep

12. There were three .... of farming in ancient Egy

a) months b) days c) seasons d) weeks

13. Farmers planted a lot of ....

a) pumps b) towers c) crops d) temples

14. Farming in ancient Egypt led to a .... in civilizatio

a) length b) width c) growth d) depth

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. have - heritage - All - own - their - countries - .

....

2. museum - my - I - visited - parents - with - the - .

....

3. do - in - What - grow - Egypt - farmers - ?

....

4. in - heritage - Are - you - Egypt's - interested - ?

....

4 Read and match.

1. All countries have	a. in Egypt's heritage.
2. Ancient Egyptians built	b. you like to visit?
3. I'm very interested	c. their own heritage.
4. Which sites would	d. many amazing temples.

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

5 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Agriculture is an important part of Egypt's heritage. The Nile used to flood every year, making the soil more fertile. This is why ancient Egyptians could farm the land and it led to a growth in civilization. There were three seasons of farming in ancient Egypt, which were all connected to the Nile. These were:

- The flooding season when the fields were full of water.
- The growing season when farmers planted lots of different crops.
- The harvesting season when farmers cut and stored the crops safely.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The Nile used to .... every year.

   a) flood b) dry c) drink d) break

2. The .... season is when the fields were full of water.

   a) growing b) harvesting c) flooding d) watering

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What is the main idea of the text? ....
4. What were the seasons of farming in ancient Egypt?..
5. How many seasons of farming were in ancient Egypt? ....
6. Is agriculture important in Egypt? ....

6 Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

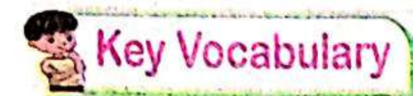
How do farmers use the Nile today

Guiding elements:

(Agriculture - fertile - seasons)

....
....
....
....
....
....

Lesson (2) AN ANCIENT GAME



Key Vocabulary كلمات أساسية

counters	بيادق (مثل قطع الشطرنج)	artifacts	صنوعات يدوية
senet game	لعبة السينيت	ordinary	دي

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

goats	ماعز	happily	بسعادة	tired	تعب / مُرهق
hill	تل	cookies	بسكويت / كعك	desert	صحراء
squares	مربعات	rich	غني	information	علومات
winner	الفائز	museum	متحف	board game	لعبة لوحية

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة | *Irregular verbs* أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
wave	يلوّح	waved	see	يرى	saw
move	ينتقل / يتحرك	moved	find	يجد	found
wonder	يتساءل	wondered	make	يصنع	made
walk	يمشي	walked	sit	يجلس	sat
carry	يحمل	carried	take	يأخذ	took
invent	يخترع	invented	say	يقول	said
paint	يلون	painted	have / has	يملك	had
want	يريد	wanted	fly	يطير	flew
visit	يزور	visited	read	يقرأ	read

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Lesson (2)



Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

a hot day	يوم حار	on the top	على القمة
look happy	يبدو سعيدًا	on the side	على الجانب
look fun	يبدو ممتعًا	have to	يجب أن
Let's play	هيا بنا نلعب	walk away	يمشي بعيدًا
a long wooden box	صندوق خشبي طويل	in front of	أمام
look up	ينظر لأعلى	wave at	يلوح لـ
come home	يعود للمنزل	look after	يعتني بـ
take a photo	يلتقط صورة	like me	مثلي / يشبهني
Quick!	أسرع!	read about	يقرأ عن

Ordering sentences in a story ترتيب الجمل في قصة

1- First	أولًا	3- Then	بعد ذلك
2- Next	التالي	4- Finally	في النهاية

Model

First, Sara read some information in a museum brochure (كتيب - منشور).
Next, she wanted to find out more. Then, she turned on her phone.
Finally, she found some interesting information about Queen Nefertari.

Did you know?

Senet is the world's oldest board game. Archaeologists found a senet game in Tutankhamun's tomb!

لعبة السينيت هي أقدم لعبة لوحية في العالم. وجد علماء الآثار لعبة السينيت في مقبرة توت عنخ آمون.



Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Read the story. What did Sara see in the museum?



Akil often helped his dad look after their goats. One day, he was sitting under a tree. It was a hot day, and he was tired. Then he saw his friend Ottah, and waved at him. Ottah was carrying a bag, and he looked happy when he saw Akil. "Look, Akil! my dad made me a game!" H showed Akil a long wooden box with squares on the top.

البًا ما كان عقيل يساعد والده في رعاية ماعزهم. وفي أحد الأيام كان يجلس تحت شجرة. كان يومًا حارًا، وكان متعبًا. ثم رأى صديقه أوتاه، ولوح له. كان أوتاه يحمل حقيبة، وبدا سعيدًا عندما رأى عقيل. «انظر يا عقيل! لقد صنع لي والدي لعبة! وأراه صندوقًا خشبيًا طويلًا به مربعات في الأعلى.

The box had beautiful pictures on the side. Next, he took out some counters from his bag. Seven were tall, and seven were short. "That looks fun What do we have to do?" said Akil "We have to move the counters and see how far we can move. The winner is the first to get all their counters off the board. Let's play!" Ottah and Akil played happily under the tree. Then Akil looked up. "Oh no!" he said. "Ottah, where are my goats?" Ottah and Akil looked around. The goats were walking away over a small hill. "Look, there they are!" Akil said. "Quick! We have to get them!"

كان الصندوق يحتوي على صور جميلة على الجانب. بعد ذلك، أخرج بعض البيادق من حقيبته. سبعة طوال، وسبعة قصار. قال عقيل: «يبدو ذلك ممتعًا! ماذا علينا أن نفعل؟» قال أوتاه: "علينا أن نحرك البيادق ونرى إلى أي مدى يمكننا التحرك. الفائز هو أول من يزيل جميع القطع الخاصة به من اللوحة. هيّا بنا لنلعب!» لعب أوتاه وعقيل بسعادة تحت الشجرة. ثم نظر عقيل للأعلى وقال «أوه لا!» . «أوتاه، أين عنزاتي؟» نظر أوتاه وعقيل حولهما. كانت الماعز تسير بعيدًا فوق تلة صغيرة. «انظر، ها هم هناك!» قال عقيل. «اسرع! علينا أن نحضرهم!

Help your child read about an ancient Egyptian game.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ عن لعبة مصرية قديمة.

Lesson (2)



Sara was in the museum with her mom and dad. They were looking at Egyptian artifacts. There were lots of very old things and Sara was reading the information about each object. Finally, Sara stopped in front of a long wooden box.

كانت سارة في المتحف مع والدتها وأبيها. وكانوا ينظرون إلى القطع الأثرية المصرية. كان هناك الكثير من الأشياء القديمة جدًا وكانت سارة تقرأ المعلومات المتعلقة بكل قطعة. وأخيرًا، توقفت سارة أمام صندوق خشبي طويل.

"Mom, Dad, look at this!" she said. "What is it?" asked Dad.

It looks like an old senet game, said Mom.

"Look. The information says that it's 3,500 years old," said Sara. That's amazing! I wonder who used to play with it.

Archaeologists found it in the desert near Luxor.

"It says here that lots of people used to play senet: rich people and ordinary people."said Mom.

"Maybe children like me played with this game!" said Sara.

قالت سارة: «أمي، أبي، انظرا إلى هذا!». سأل أبي «ما هذا؟» .

قالت أمي: إنها تبدو وكأنها لعبة سينيت قديمة.

وقالت سارة: «أنظرا. المعلومات تقول أن عمرها ٣٥٠٠ عام». هذا مذهل! أتساءل، من اعتاد أن يلعب بها.

عثر عليه علماء الآثار في الصحراء بالقرب من الأقصر.

قالت أمي: «يُقال هنا أن الكثير من الناس كانوا يلعبون السينيت: الأغنياء والناس العاديون».

قالت سارة «ربما لعب الأطفال مثلي بهذه اللعبة!»

- Put (True) or (False).

1. Sara was in the club. ( )
2. Sara stopped in front of a golden box. ( )
3. The artifacts of ancient Egypt were very old. ( )



The Past Simple Tense

زمن الماضي البسيط

Form:

The second form of the verb

يتكون من التصريف الثاني للفعل (أي بإضافة d, ed, ied للفعل المنتظم وغير المنتظم يحفظ)

e.g. I visited Luxor last week.

e.g. They saw the lion at the zoo.

Usage:

يستخدم للتعبير عن فعل حدث و انتهي في الماضي.

e.g. I went to school late yesterday.

Negative:

Subject + didn't + inf. ...

e.g. We didn't watch TV yesterday.

Yes / No question:

Did + subject + inf. ...?

e.g. Did Dalia find her book? - Yes, she did. - No, she didn't.

Wh- question:

QW + did + subject + inf. .... ?

e.g. Where did you go yesterday? - I went to the zoo.

Keywords:

yesterday	أمس	last (week, month,.....)	الأسبوع، الشهر، ...) الماضي
ago	منذ	in the past	في الماضي

Help your child learn the past simple tense

ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم زمن الماضي البسيط.

Verb to "be" in the past

Form:

I / He / She / It / Singular noun + was ....

e.g. Akil was happy.

We / You / They / Plural noun + were ....

e.g. Akil and Ottah were happy.

Negative:

I / He / She / It / Singular noun + wasn't ......

e.g. She wasn't at school yesterday.

We / You / They / Plural noun + weren't ......

e.g. They weren't at the museum last week.

Yes / No question:

(Was / Were) + subject + باقي الجملة?

e.g. Was she happy in New York? - Yes, she was.

e.g. Were they at the park yesterday? - No, they weren't.

Wh- question:

Q.W + (was / were) + subject + باقي الجملة?

e.g. How was your trip? - It was nice.

e.g. Where were they yesterday? - They were at the museum.

The Past Continuous Tense

زمن الماضي المستمر

Form:

I / He / She / It / Singular noun + was + v + ing

e.g. He was sitting under a tree.

We / You / They / Plural noun + were + v + ing

e.g. Akil and Ottah were playing the senet game.

Usage:

يستخدم زمن الماضي المستمر للتعبير عن حدث كان مستمرًا في وقت محدد في الماضي:

e.g. They were having dinner yesterday evening.

Negative:

I / He / She / It / Singular noun + wasn't + v + ing

e.g. Ali wasn't sleeping at 5 p.m yesterday.

We / You / They / Plural noun + weren't + v + ing

e.g. We weren't watching TV yesterday morning.

Yes / No question:

(Was / Were) + subject + v + ing?

e.g. Were they playing tennis?

- Yes, they were. - No, they weren't.

Wh- question:

Q.W + (was / were) + subject + v + ing?

e.g. What were you doing at 4 p.m yesterday?

- I was watching TV.

Help your child learn the past continuous.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم زمن الماضي المستمر.

Lesson (2)

Keywords:

yesterday morning	yesterday evening
at 3 am yesterday	at that moment yesterday



تستخدم (when) لوصف حدث كان مستمرًا ولكن قطعه حدث آخر فجأة.

When + past simple + past continuous

e.g. When the archaeologist found an old box, she was digging.

Past continuous + when + Past simple

e.g. The archaeologist was digging when she found an old box.

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. She .... studying English yesterday evening.
   a) is b) has c) was d) am
2. They .... making cakes at 10 yesterday.
   a) were b) are c) is d) was
3. What .... the weather like yesterday?
   a) was b) is c) has d) were
4. We were digging .... we found an old box.
   a) how b) what c) when d) where
5. Where .... you born?
   a) am b) is c) was d) were
6. My father .... a story, when I entered the room.
   a) read b) reads c) was reading d) were reading
7. I .... a kite yesterday.
   a) make b) makes c) was making d) made

General Activities

في نهاية الكتاب



1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What is Khufu famous for?

   ....

2. What does the statue show?

   ....

3. When was the statue discovered?

   ....

4. How long is the solar boat?

   ....

2 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

old - museum - did - senet

Salem : Hi, Mazin. Where 1) .... you go yesterday

Mazin : I went to the 2) ....

Salem : What did you see there?

Mazin : I saw an old 3) .... game

Salem : How old was it?

Mazin : It was 3,500 year old.

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

tree - tired - waved - goats

Akil often helped his dad look after their 1) .... One day he was sitting under a 2) .... It was a hot day, and he was 3) ....

Then he saw his friend Ottah, and waved at him. Ottah was carrying a bag, and he looked happy when he saw Akil.

Help your child deal with such questions.

طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

Lesson (2)

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The children .... a game.
   a) was playing b) plays c) were playing d) playing
2. The archaeologist .... when she found an old box.
   a) was digging b) dug c) were digging d) have dug
3. I .... in the library when I saw Fares.
   a) was studying b) studies c) were studying d) will study
4. Dina and Yasmin .... a museum.
   a) was visiting b) visiting c) were visiting d) visits
5. Adam .... cookies when his dad came home.
   a) was making b) make c) were making d) will make
6. We .... photos of the bird when it flew away.
   a) was taking b) takes c) were taking d) will take
7. Sara .... in the museum yesterday.
   a) is b) was c) were d) has
8. Akil and Ottah .... ppy.
   a) were b) is c) have d) was
9. Farmers keep .... in their fields.
   a) elephants b) goats c) tigers d) lions
10. The .... is the first to get all their counters off the board.
    a) loser b) winner c) lazy d) liner
11. Rich and .... people used to play senet.
    a) ordinary b) wealthy c) lazy d) bad
12. Sara was looking at the Egyptian .... in the museum.
    a) facts b) artifacts c) mobiles d) pools
13. Senet is the world's oldest .... game.
    a) field b) board c) sports d) pool

5 Read and match.

1. First I did homework,
2. I was walking home
3. Senet is the world's
4. Sara stopped in

a. oldest board game.
b. front of a wooden box.
c. then I slept.
d. when I saw Ali.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. reading - information - **Sara** - some - was - .

....

2. walking - **The goats** - away - the - hill - were - over - .

....

3. sitting - a tree - **He** - under - was - .

....

4. the - boys - **What** - doing - were - ?

....

7 Write an email of FORTY (40) words about "Egypt civilization" your friend's name is Ali. Your name is Hany and your email address is Hany@yahoo.com, and your friend's email address is Ali@yahoo.com.

Guiding elements:

(famous - history - the Nile)

....

....

....

....

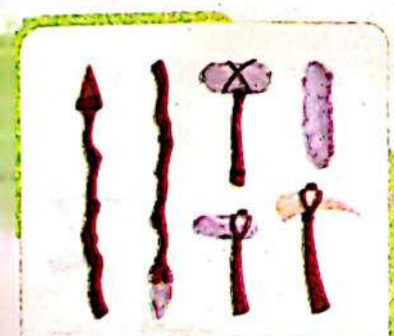
....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lesson (3) TOURISM AND ARCHAEOLOGY

Listen and repeat.



tools
أدوات



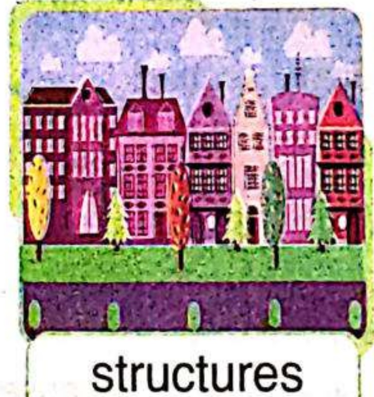
vase
زهرية



mask
قناع



cruise
جولة نيلية



structures
مباني



carve
ينحت



perfume
عطر

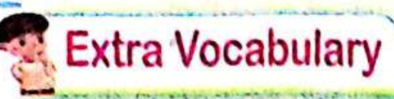


pottery
أواني فخارية



engravings
نقوش

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.



Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

tourism	السياحة	builders	بناء
archaeology	علم الآثار	clay	
pyramids	الأهرامات	simpler	
temples	معابد	port	
incredible	لا يصدق / هائل	paintings	
famous	مشهور	huge	
special	خاص / مميز	popular	بي / محبوب



Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
protect	يحمي	protected
decorate	يزين	decorated
visit	يزور	visited

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
think	يعتقد	thought
hold	يمسك/ يحفظ	held
tell	يخبر	told



Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

all over the world	في جميع أنحاء العالم	because of	بسبب
The capital city	العاصمة	a piece of stone	طعة حجر



Famous places أماكن مشهورة

The Step Pyramid of Djoser	رم زوسر المدرج
The Temple of Karnak	عبد الكرنك
The Valley of the Kings	ادي الملوك
The Roman Theater	لمسرح الروماني
Qaitbay Citadel	لعة قايتباي
The Library of Alexandria	كتبة الإسكندرية
Siwa Oasis	احة سيوة

Help your child identify these words.
طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Look and read about: Where can you see engravings?

Lots of people visit Egypt every year because of the amazing archaeological sites. Tourists want to see the large monuments, pyramids, and temples. It is incredible to think that ancient Egyptians were building these amazing structures over 4,000 years ago, when civilizations in other countries were much simpler. Archaeologists have found lots of artifacts such as tools, pottery,vases, and masks. These can tell us about how people lived in ancient Egypt. For example, we know that ancient Egyptians used lots of pottery. They made pottery vases from clay, and they sometimes decorated them. They used them to hold water and food. They also made small pots for oil or perfume. So, what are some of the most popular sites that tourists want to visit?

يزور الكثير من الناس مصر كل عام بسبب المواقع الأثرية المذهلة. يرغب السياح في رؤية الآثار الكبيرة والأهرامات والمعابد. إنه لأمر مذهل الاعتقاد بأن المصريين القدماء كانوا يبنون هذه المباني المذهلة منذ أكثر من 4000 عام، عندما كانت الحضارات في البلدان الأخرى أبسط بكثير. وقد عثر علماء الآثار على الكثير من القطع الأثرية مثل الأدوات والفخاريات والمزهريات والأقنعة. يمكن أن يخبرنا هذا عن كيفية حياة الناس في مصر القديمة. على سبيل المثال، نحن نعلم أن المصريين القدماء استخدموا الكثير من الفخار. وكانوا يصنعون مزهريات فخارية من الصلصال، وكانوا يزينونها أحياناً. لقد استخدموها لحمل الماء والطعام. كما صنعوا أوعية صغيرة للزيت أو العطر. إذن، ما هي بعض المواقع الأكثر شعبية التي يرغب السياح في زيارتها؟

Giza



Sometimes when people think about Egypt, they think of the Pyramids and the Sphinx at Giza. They are famous all over the world. Archaeologists think that the ancient Egyptians built the Sphinx to protect the Pyramids. They carved it from one huge piece of stone.

الجيزة: في بعض الأحيان عندما يفكر الناس في مصر، فإنهم يفكرون في الأهرامات وأبو الهول في الجيزة. إنهم مشهورون في جميع أنحاء العالم. ويعتقد علماء الآثار أن المصريين القدماء بنوا تمثال أبو الهول لحماية الأهرامات. لقد نحتوه من قطعة واحدة ضخمة من الحجر.

Help your child read about tourism and archaeology. ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ عن السياحة و الآثار.

Saqqara

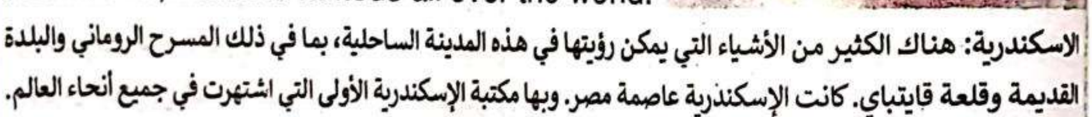


This is one of the biggest sites in Egypt. It has many tombs, including one of the oldest pyramids in Egypt. Builders made this for King Djoser in about 2630 BCE. It is the Step Pyramid, and it is one of the oldest stone monuments.

سقارة : هي من أكبر المواقع في مصر. وبها العديد من المقابر، ومن بينها أحد أقدم الأهرامات في مصر. وقد بناه عمال البناء للملك زوسر في حوالي عام 2630 قبل الميلاد. وهو الهرم المدرج، وهو من أقدم الآثار الحجرية.

Alexandria

There are lots of things to see in this port city, including a Roman theatre, the old town, and Qaitbay Citadel. Alexandria used to be the capital city of Egypt. It had the first Library of Alexandria, which is famous all over the world.



الاسكندرية: هناك الكثير من الأشياء التي يمكن رؤيتها في هذه المدينة الساحلية، بما في ذلك المسرح الروماني والبلدة القديمة وقلعة قايتباي. كانت الإسكندرية عاصمة مصر. وبها مكتبة الإسكندرية الأولى التي اشتهرت في جميع أنحاء العالم.



Luxor



Many tourists visit Luxor from a Nile River cruise. They can see the Temple of Karnak and Valley of the Kings. Ancient Egyptians buried their kings and queens here for thousands of years. You can see lots of paintings and engravings in the temples. There are lots of other amazing things to see in Egypt. What would you like to visit?

الأقصر: يزور العديد من السياح مدينة الأقصر من خلال رحلة نهرية في نهر النيل. يمكنهم رؤية معبد الكرنك ووادي الملوك. دفن المصريون القدماء ملوكهم وملكاتهم في الأقصر منذ آلاف السنين. يمكنك رؤية الكثير من اللوحات والنقوش في المعابد. هناك الكثير من الأشياء المدهشة الأخرى التي يمكنك رؤيتها في مصر. ماذا تحب أن تزور؟

Help your child read about tourism and archaeology. ساعد طفلك ان يقرأ عن السياحة و الآثار.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What does Saqqara have?

....

2. Who did the builders make the pyramid for?

....

3. When did the builders make Saqqara pyramid?

....

4. Where's the Step Pyramid?

....

2 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

carved - Pyramids - tourists - Giza

Mona : Where do you live?

Noha : I live in 1) ....

Mona : Why do 2) .... visit Giza?

Noha : To see the 3) ....

Mona : How did the ancient Egyptians build the Sphinx?

Noha : They carved it from one huge piece of stone.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Tourists visit Egypt to see the large ....
   a) pictures b) clubs c) monuments d) ships
2. Archaeologists have found lots of artifacts such as ....
   a) balls b) pottery c) tablets d) looms

3. The ancient Egyptians made pottery vases from ....

a) wood   b) glass   c) clay   d) stones

4. The ancient Egyptians used pottery vases to .... water and food.

a) hold   b) make   c) protect   d) cut

5. The ancient Egyptians used .... to smell good.

a) salt   b) oil   c) perfume   d) water

6. The ancient Egyptians built the Sphinx to .... the Pyramids.

a) visit   b) hold   c) protect   d) break

7. They .... the Sphinx from one huge piece of stone.

a) built   b) carved   c) visited   d) cut

8. Saqqara is one of the biggest .... in Egypt.

a) sites   b) ports   c) temples   d) cruises

9. Alexandria was the .... city of Egypt.

a) capital   b) club   c) port   d) library

10. Many tourists visit Luxor from a Nile River ....

a) taxi   b) truck   c) cruise   d) car

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. tourists - Luxor - How - many - travel - to - do - ?

....

2. Luxor - of - Karnak - in - The - is - Temple - .

....

3. Egyptians - lots - pottery - Ancient - of - used - .

....

4. is - for - its - famous - Alexandria - library - .

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lesson (3)

5 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Lots of people visit Egypt every year because of the amazing archaeological sites. Tourists want to see the large monuments, pyramids, and temples. It is incredible to think that ancient Egyptians were building these amazing structures over 4,000 years ago, when civilizations in other countries were much simpler. Archaeologists have found lots of artifacts such as tools, pottery,vases, and masks. These can tell us about how people lived in ancient Egypt. For example, we know that ancient Egyptians used lots of pottery. They sometimes decorated **them**. They used them to hold water and food. They also made small pots for oil or perfume.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Ancient Egyptians made pottery .... from clay.
   a) vases b) cups c) pens d) books
2. The underlined pronoun "them" refers to the ....
   a) masks b) pottery c) vases d) pots

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Why do a lot of people visit Egypt every year? ....
4. What have archaeologists found? ....
5. What is the general idea of the text? ....
6. Why did ancient Egyptians make small pots? ....

6 Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

Luxor

Guiding elements:

(tourists - Temple of Karnak - Valley of the Kings)

....

....

....

....

....

Lesson (4) MATH

Key Vocabulary كلمات أساسية

bar chart	تمثيل بياني بالأعمدة	exhibition	معرض
horizontal	أفقي	x-axis	محور السين
vertical	رأسي	y-axis	محور الصاد

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

project	مشروع	paper	ورق
room	حجرة	visitors	زوار
different	مختلف	ruler	مسطرة
popular	مشهور	number	رقم

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
design	يصمم	designed
plan	يخطط	planned
use	يستخدم	used

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
show	يعرض	showed
put	يضع	put
let	يدع/ يسمح	let

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

months of the year	شهور السنة	days of the week	أيام الأسبوع
Let me think.	دعني أفكر.	go up	يصعد لأعلى - يرتفع
International Museum Day			اليوم العالمي للمتاحف

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Lesson (4)



تذكر

The line that goes across is (horizontal)	الخط الموجود في أسفل التمثيل البياني (أفقي)
It is called the (x-axis)	ويُسمى (محور السين)
The line that goes up is (vertical)	الخط الذي يرتفع لأعلى في التمثيل البياني (رأسي)
It is called the (y-axis)	ويُسمى (محور الصاد)

Listen and read.

Adam was doing his school project. "This is a really interesting project, Mom!" he said.

"What do you have to do?" she asked.

"We're learning about International Museum Day. We have to design a new museum and say what is in it. There are many different exhibitions that show different things, and we have to show which is the most popular exhibition."

"OK, so what are you going to put in your museum?" Mom asked.

"Let me think," said Adam. "Maybe a room about art, and one about games. Can you help me to plan it?"

"OK! Let's get your paper, colored pens and a ruler!" said Mom.

كان آدم يقوم بمشروعه المدرسي. قال آدم «هذا مشروع مثير للاهتمام حقًا يا أمي!» .

قالت الأم «ماذا يجب عليك أن تفعل؟»

«نحن نتعلم عن اليوم العالمي للمتاحف. علينا أن نصمم متحفًا جديدًا ونقول ما بداخله. هناك العديد من المعارض المختلفة التي تعرض أشياء مختلفة، وعلينا أن نبين المعرض الأكثر شعبية.

قالت الأم «حسنًا، ما الذي ستضعه في متحفك؟»

قال آدم: «دعيني أفكر». «ربما حجرة للفن، وأخرى للألعاب. هل يمكنك مساعدتي في التخطيط لذلك؟»

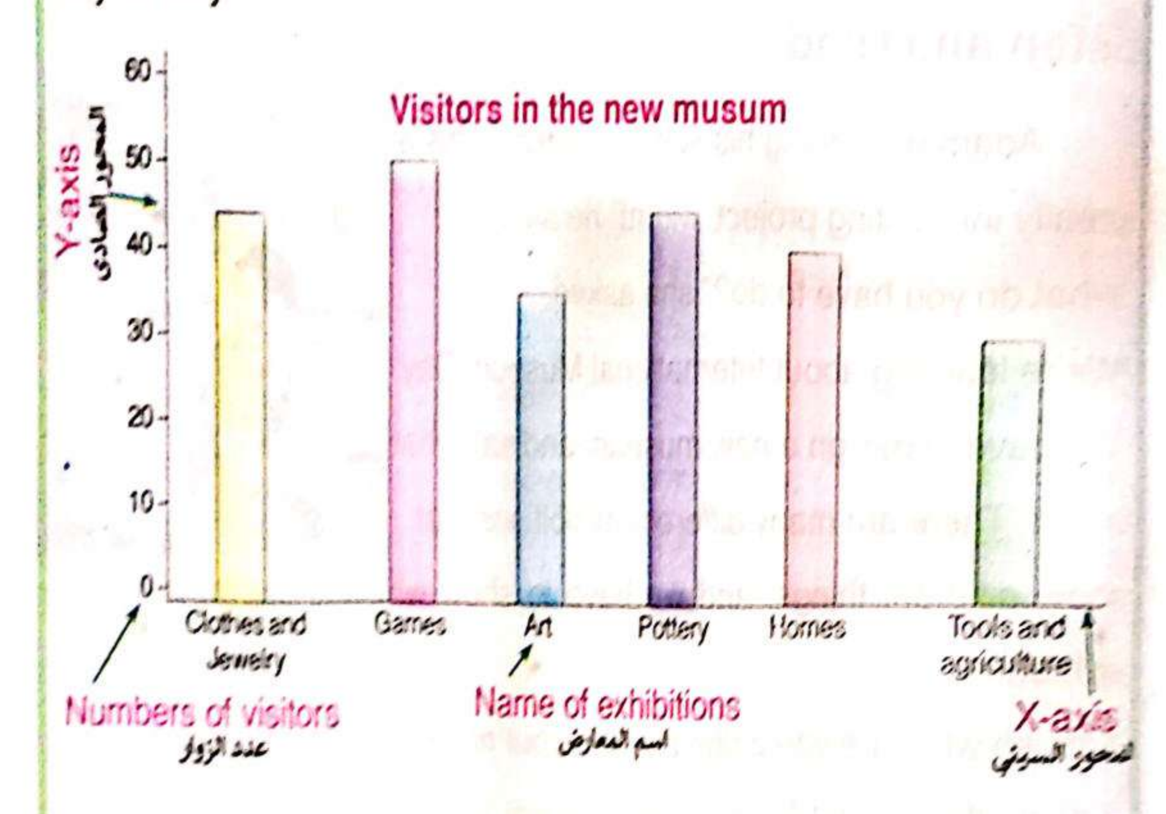
قالت الأم «نعم! هيا بنا نحضر ورقتك وأقلامك الملونة و مسطرة!»

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

Listen and read.

Adam wanted to show the most popular exhibition in th[e] museum. He used a bar chart to show how many people visited th[e] exhibitions. The line across the bottom is called the x-axis. It is horizonta[l]. The x-axis here shows the different exhibitions. The y-axis is the line th[at] goes up. It is vertical. The y-axis here shows the number of visitors on on[e] day in July.



[أرا]د آدم أن يعرض المعرض الأكثر شعبية في متحف استخدم مخطط رسم بياني لإظهار عدد الأشخاص الذين زاروا [ا]لمعارض. الخط الموجود في الأسفل يسمى المحور السيني، إنه أفقي. يُظهر المحور السيني هنا المعارض المختلفة [ال]محور صاد هو الخط الذي يرتفع. إنه عمودي. يوضح المحور ص هنا عدد الزوار في يوم واحد من شهر يوليو.

Answer the following questions.

1. What do we call the line that goes across the bottom?

   ....

2. What do we call the line that goes up?

   ....

Help your child learn about and draw bar charts.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم ويرسم التمثيل البياني بالأعمدة

Activities

1 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

across - line - vertical - chart

Ali : Do you know how to use a bar 1) .... ?

Tamer : Yes, I do.

Ali : What is the line that goes 2) .... the bottom?

Tamer : It's horizontal.

Ali : What is the 3) .... that goes up?

Tamer : It's the y-axis. It's vertical.

2 Read and match.

1.	We are learning	a.	visitors in the museum.
2.	There are twelve	b.	months in the year.
3.	Which exhibition	c.	about International Museum Day.
4.	There are a lot of	d.	had the most visitors?

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Adam always uses a .... chart in his study.

   a) pear b) bear c) bar d) wall

2. The line that goes across is ....

   a) horizontal b) column c) columnar d) vertical

3. The horizontal line is called the ....

   a) y-axis b) z-axis c) u-axis d) x-axis

4. The line that goes up is ....

   a) columnar b) horizontal c) column d) vertical

4 Here are the numbers of visitors to the zoo in a week.

Complete the bar chart in the space below.

Day	Visitors
Saturday	500
Sunday	3,000
Monday	3,500
Tuesday	3,000
Wednesday	2,000
Thursday	500
Friday	1,500

3,500
3,000
2,500
2,000
1,500
1,000
500

Saturday Sunday Monday Tuesday Wednesday Thursday Friday

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. get - paper - and - pens - **Let's** - your - .

....

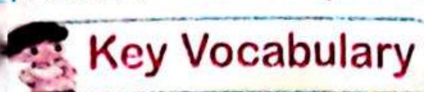
2. you - to - do - **What** - have - do - ?

....

Lessons (5&6) WRITING / PROJECT



and repeat.



Key Vocabulary كلمات أساسية

Statue of Amenhotep III	تمثال امنحوتب الثالث
Pharaoh Khufu's solar boat	مركب الشمس للفرعون خوفو
Tutankhamun's mask	قناع توت عنخ آمون
The Grand Egyptian Museum	المتحف المصري الكبير

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

person	شخص	statue	تمثال	death	الموت
desert	صحراء	interest	اهتمام	place	مكان
solar boat	قارب شمسي	wide	واسع - عريض	site	موقع
limestone	الحجر الجيري	poor	فقير	daughter	ابنة
wife	زوجة	map	خريطة	sand	رمل

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة — *Irregular verbs* أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
believe	يؤمن	believed	take	يأخذ	took
travel	يسافر	travelled	know	يعرف	knew
belong	ينتمي / يخص	belonged	write	يكتب	wrote



Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

gold mask	قناع ذهبي	an amazing site	موقع مذهل
Statue of Bastet	تمثال باستيت	famous for	مشهور بـ
belong to	ينتمي الى	made of	مصنوع من
look for	يبحث عن	wooden boat	مركب خشبي

Help your child Identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Read the fact files and learn.

1) Statue of Amenhotep III

What is it? ما هذا؟

the statue of Amenhotep III, his wife Tiye and their three daughters

تمثال أمنحوتب الثالث، وزوجته تي وبناتهم الثلاثة.

How old is it? كم عمره؟

about 3,400 years old — حوالي 3400 سنة

What is it made of? مما هو مصنوع؟

limestone — الحجر الجيري

How big is it? كم حجمه؟

7 metres tall, 4,4 meters wide — طوله 7 أمتار، وعرضه 4.4 متر

Where is it from? من أين هو؟

Luxor — الأقصر

2) Pharaoh Khufu's solar boat

What is it? ما هذا؟

a wooden boat found in Pharoah Khufu's tomb

وُجِدَ قارب خشبي في مقبرة الفرعون خوفو

How old is it? كم عمره؟

about 4,600 years old — حوالي 4600 سنة

What is it made of? مما هو مصنوع؟

wood — خشب

How big is it? كم حجمه؟

42 meters long — طوله 42 متر

Where is it from? من أين هو؟

Giza — الجيزة



Help your child write notes for an object in a museum. ساعد طفلك أن يكتب ملاحظات عن شيئ في متحف.

3) Tutankhamun's Mask

What is it? ما هذا؟

a gold mask قناع ذهبي

How old is it? كم عمره؟

over 3,000 years old أكثر من 3000 سنة

What is it made of? مما هو مصنوع؟

gold ذهب

How big is it? كم حجمه؟

54 cm tall طوله 54 سنتيمتر

Where is it from? من أين هو؟

The Valley of the Kings وادي الملوك



The Grand Egyptian Museum has more than 5,000 items that belonged to the Pharoah Tutankhamun.

يضم المتحف المصري الكبير أكثر من 5,000 قطعة كانت تخص الفرعون توت عنخ آمون.



1) When you give information, you often have to answer questions such as Who, What, When, Where, and How.

عند تقديم معلومات، يجب أن نجيب على أسئلة تبدأ بأدوات الاستفهام التالية (مَن - ماذا - متى - أين - كيف).

2) You give facts, not opinions. Facts can include names, dates, and places.

تقوم بتقديم حقائق وليس آراء، والحقائق يمكن أن تتضمن (أسماء - تواريخ - أماكن)

3) Then you can add more interest by giving extra information. This might not answer a Wh- question, but it is something that people might want to know.

ثم تضيف عنصر التشويق بمزيد من المعلومات. و ليس من الضروري أن يكون إجابة سؤال يبدأ بأداة استفهام ولكن ربما يكون شيء يريد أن يعرفه الناس.

Help your child write notes for an object in a museum. ساعد طفلك أن يكتب ملاحظات عن شيئ في متحف.



Model

The Statue of Bastet

The statue of Bastet is 30 centimetres tall. It's 2,500 years old. It's made of limestone. It was found in Alexandria. It looks like a nice cat. It's an amazing statue.

طول تمثال باستت 30 سم. عمره 2,500 سنة. إنه مصنوع من الحجر الجيري. تم العثور عليه في الإسكندرية. يبدو أنه قطة لطيفة. إنه تمثال مذهل.

- Write a short paragraph about:

Tutankhamun's mask

....

....

....

....

....

Read and learn.

A newspaper report about an archaeological site

عند كتابة تقرير صحفي عن موقع أثري يجب أن يتضمن وقت اكتشافه، ومكانه وماذا وجد علماء الآثار ومدى أهميته

Archaeologists were working in the desert when they found an amazing site in 2010. This is a very old city and nobody knew about it. They found a lot of old artifacts. It's a very important site because tourists can visit it.

كان علماء الآثار يعملون في الصحراء عندما عثروا على موقع مذهل في عام 2010. هذه مدينة قديمة جدا ولم يكن أحد يعلم عنها. لقد وجدوا الكثير من القطع الأثرية القديمة. إنه موقع مهم للغاية لأنه يمكن للسياح زيارته.

Help your child learn how to give written information.
ساعد طفلك أن يقدم معلومات مكتوبة.

General Activities

1 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

old - made - limestone - information

Aya : Do you know any 1).................. about the Statue of Amenhotep III?

Sara : Yes, I do.

Aya : How 2).. is it?

Sara : It's about 3,400 years old.

Aya : What's it made of?

Sara : It's made of 3)...

2 Read and match.

1.	Tutankhamun's mask	a.	found in a port city.
2.	Where is it from?	b.	has more than 5,000 items.
3.	This stone was	c.	is made of gold.
4.	The Grand Egyptian Museum	d.	It's from Giza.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. This statue is about 3,400 years ....

   a) old b) wide c) long d) high

2. This statue is .... of limestone.

   a) make b) made c) making d) makes

3. The solar boat is 42 meters ....

   a) long b) heavy c) deep d) far

4. Ancient Egyptians .... that they would come back after death (...

a) stayed b) wanted c) believed d) took

5. This gold mask belonged .... Tutankham...

a) to b) in c) with d) of

6. I was working in the .... when I saw something in the sa...

a) river b) desert c) sea d) pool

7. They used an old .... to look for an ancient ci...

a) book b) map c) pen d) ruler

8. We were looking .... old artifacts when we found a templ...

a) to b) of c) for d) up

9. Where is it ....? - Giza

a) on b) of c) after d) from

10. Khufu is famous .... building the Great Pyramid

a) in b) off c) for d) up

4 Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

Pharaoh Khufu's solar boat

Guiding elements:

(wooden boat - 4,600 years old - wood - 42 meters long)

....

....

....

....

Writing Corner

Your country's heritage

A country's heritage is an important part of its identity. Egypt's heritage comes from its history and traditions. Heritage includes art, buildings and objects from the past. People in ancient Egypt built temples. They developed agriculture and some of the first calendars. Egypt is full of historical sites. I enjoy learning about our heritage.

Farming in the past

Farming is very important in Egypt. It's an important part of its heritage. The Nile used to flood every year making the soil more fertile. There were three seasons of farming in ancient Egypt which were connected to the Nile. The flooding season when the field was full of water. The growing season when farmers planted crops then the harvesting season.

Tourism

Lots of people visit Egypt every year because of its amazing archaeological sites. Tourists want to see the large monuments, temples, and pyramids. Archaeologists have found lots of artifacts such as tools, pottery, vases and masks. Tourists can visit the Pyramids and the Sphinx at Giza. They can see the Step Pyramid at Saqqara. They can visit Qaitbay Citadel in Alexandria.

Artifacts in ancient Egypt

There are a lot of artifacts in ancient Egypt. For example the Pharaoh Khufu's solar boat. It's called a solar boat because ancient Egyptians believed that it would take the person across the skies after death. The statue of Amenhotep III is the largest statue of a family group. Tutankhamun's mask is very important, too.

Help your child learn how to write a paragraph.
ساعد طفلك أن يعرف كيف يكتب فقرة.

Dictation on Unit (9)

Lesson (1)

دولة	هوية ....
يتضمن	معبد ....
حقل	موقع أثري ....
الزراعة	حضارة ....
يؤدي إلى	عالم آثار ....

Lesson (2)

يطير	مصنوعات يدوية ....
مربعات	تل ....
صحراء	غني ....
على القمة	معلومات ....
يبدو سعيدًا	يلوّح ....

Lesson (3)

زهرية	أدوات ....
السياحة	قناع ....
يحمي	ينحت ....
يزين	أواني فخارية ....
في جميع أنحاء العالم	عطر ....

Lesson (4)

يصمم	معرض ....
بغرض	مشروع ....
يخطط	تمثيل بياني بالأعمدة ....
مشهور	أفقي ....
دعني أفكر	رأسي ....

Lessons (5 & 6)

الموت	شخصي ....
قارب شمسي	فقير ....
خريطة	يعرف ....
رمل	يؤمن ....
قناع ذهبي	صحراء ....

Help your child dictate these words.

ساعد طفلك في إملاء هذه الكلمات.

Review on Unit (9)

Vocabulary

cultural heritage	تراث ثقافي	agriculture	زراعة
identity	الهوية	ancient Egypt	مصر القديمة
horizontal	أفقي	archaeologist	عالم آثار
vertical	رأسي	site	موقع أثري
temple	معبد	calendar	تقويم
civilization	حضارة	cruise	جولة نيلية
artifacts	مصنوعات يدوية	board game	لعبة لوحية
engravings	نقوش	bury	يدفن
mask	قناع	carve	ينحت
perfume	عطر	clay	صلصال
pottery	أواني فخارية	counter	بيدق (قطعة شطرنج)
tool	أداة يدوية	vase	زهرية
tourism	سياحة	irrigation	ريّ
archaeology	علم الآثار	flooding season	موسم الفيضان
limestone	حجر جيري	harvesting season	موسم الحصاد
tomb	مقبرة	growing season	موسم الزراعة
bar chart	تمثيل بياني بالأعمدة	monuments	آثار



The Past Simple Tense

زمن الماضي البسيط

Form:

The second form of the verb

٭ يتكون من التصريف الثاني للفعل (أي بإضافة d, ed, ied للفعل المنتظم وغير المنتظم يحفظ)

e.g. I visited Luxor last week.

e.g. They saw the lion at the zoo.

Usage:

٭ يستخدم للتعبير عن فعل حدث و انتهي في الماضي.

e.g. I went to school late yesterday.

Negative:

Subject + didn't + inf. ...

e.g. We didn't watch TV yesterday.

Yes / No question:

Did + subject + inf. ...?

e.g. Did Dalia find her book? - Yes, she did. - No, she didn't.

Wh- question:

QW + did + subject + inf. .... ?

e.g. Where did you go yesterday? - I went to the zoo.

Keywords:

yesterday	أمس	last (week, month,.....)	الأسبوع، الشهر، ...) الماضي
ago	منذ	in the past	في الماضي

Verb to "be" in the past

Form:

I / He / She / It / Singular noun + was ....

e.g. Akil was happy.

We / You / They / Plural noun + were ....

e.g. Akil and Ottah were happy.

Negative:

I / He / She / It / Singular noun + was not ......

e.g. She wasn't at school yesterday.

We / You / They / Plural noun + were not ......

e.g. They weren't at the museum last week.

Yes / No question:

(Was / Were) + subject + باقي الجملة?

e.g. Was she happy in New York? - Yes, she was.

e.g. Were they at the park yesterday? - No, they weren't.

Wh- question:

Q.W + (was / were) + subject + باقي الجملة?

e.g. How was your trip? - It was nice.

e.g. Where were they yesterday? - They were at school.

The Past Continuous Tense

زمن الماضي المستمر

Form:

I / He / She / It / Singular noun + was + v + ing

e.g. He was sitting under a tree.

We / You / They / Plural noun + were + v + ing

e.g. Akil and Ottah were playing the senet game.

Usage:

✦ يستخدم زمن الماضي المستمر للتعبير عن حدث كان مستمرًا في وقت محدد في الماضي:

e.g. They were having dinner yesterday evening.

Negative:

I / He / She / It / Singular noun + was not + v + ing

e.g. Ali was not sleeping at 5 p.m yesterday.

We / You / They / Plural noun + were not + v + ing

e.g. We were not watching TV yesterday morning.

Yes / No question:

(Was / Were) + subject + v + ing ?

e.g. Were they playing tennis?

- Yes, they were. - No, they weren't.

Wh- question:

Q.W + (was / were) + subject + v + ing ?

e.g. What were you doing at 4 p.m yesterday?

- I was watching TV.

Exam on Unit (9)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. When do people visit Egypt?

....

2. Why do lots of people visit Egypt?

....

3. Who want to see large monuments, pyramids and temples?

....

4. How long ago did the ancient Egyptians build the amazing structures?

....

2 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

Luxor - see - interesting - were

Sara : Where were you last week?

Salma : I was on a cruise to 1) ....

Sara : What did you 2) ....?

Salma : I saw the Valley of the Kings.

Sara : Was it 3) ....?

Salma : Yes, it was very interesting.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Lots of people visit Egypt every year because of the amazing archaeological sites. Tourists want to see the **large** monuments, pyramids, and temples. Many tourists visit Luxor from a Nile River cruise. They can see the Temple of Karnak and the Valley of the Kings. Ancient Egyptians buried their kings and queens here for thousands of years. You can see lots of paintings and engravings in the temples. There are lots of other amazing things to see in Egypt.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Many tourists visit Luxor from a .... River cruise.

   a) Spring b) Lake c) Sea d) Nile

2. The underlined word "large" is opposite of ....

   a) small b) tall c) big d) huge

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What can tourists see in Luxor?

....

4. Where can you see engravings?

....

5. What is the general idea of the text?

....

6. Who want to see the large monuments in Egypt?

....

4 The Reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. The nature is beautiful. [ ]
2. There was a bottle round the seagull's leg. [ ]

B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

3. Amir has a .... on the table

   a) tablet b) computer c) laptop d) cell phone

4. Amir was .... about the seagull

   a) happy b) delighted c) sad d) grateful

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The ancient Egyptians .... the pyramids.
   a) build b) builds c) building d) built
2. Aya and Ali .... a museum.
   a) was visiting b) visits c) were visiting d) visiting
3. Sara .... a senet game yesterday.
   a) see b) saw c) is seeing d) sees
4. What .... you doing at 9 pm last Friday?
   a) is b) are c) was d) were

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. visiting - museum - the - were - We - .

....

2. are - monuments - Historians - interested - in - .

....

7 Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

A visit to Alexandria

Guiding elements:

(port - Qaitbay Citadel - capital - Library of Alexandria)

....

....

....

....

....

....

Exam On Review (3)

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. In what month are we having a meal in the evening at sunset?

....

2. Who made kunafa with sweet pastry?

....

3. Where were you helping your mother?

....

4. What did you drop?

....

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

River - buried - Temple - engravings

Many tourists visit Luxor from a Nile River cruise. They can see the 1) .... of Karnak and the Valley of the Kings. Ancient Egyptians 2) .... their kings and queens here for thousands of years. You can see lots of paintings and 3) .... in the temples.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Egypt is a fantastic country to visit! There is so much to see, such as the Pyramids of Giza, the old Luxor Temple, the Red Sea, and of course the River Nile. In all parts of the country, you can see amazing sights, eat delicious food, and meet friendly people. Visitors often like to learn about Egyptian traditions before they come. Egyptian people are famous for welcoming visitors with food and drink, and for inviting guests to their home. If you are invited to an Egyptian family's home, it's a good idea to bring a present, for example chocolates or sweets.

Exam On Review (3)

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. .... is a fantastic country to visit.

a) England b) France c) Egypt d) America

2. Visitors often like to learn about Egyptian .... before they come.

a) traditions b) cars c) books d) lands

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What are the Egyptian people famous for?

....

4. What places can tourists visit in Egypt?

....

5. What is the main idea of the text?

....

6. How is the Egyptian food?

....

4 The Reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Amir took a picture of the bird with his camera. ☐

2. Plastic bags harm the birds. ☐

B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

3. People are using too much .... every day.

a) metal b) gold c) plastic d) paper

4. Women were carrying .... bags.

a) plastic b) cloth c) metal d) paper

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Aya was happy today because she .... her a

   a) visited b) visits c) will visit d) visiting

2. What are the girls .... no

   a) wear b) wears c) wore d) wearing

3. The children .... a game yesterd

   a) play b) plays c) were playing d) played

4. Heba always .... kahk for Eid Al-F

   a) make b) makes c) made d) making

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. a fantastic - is - visit - Egypt - country - to - .

   ....

2. is - a machine - energy - make - A turbine - to - .

   ....

7 Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

Agriculture

Guiding elements:

(important - heritage - fertile - civilization - seasons)

....

....

....

....

....

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Non-fiction reader

SHIPWRECKS

Look and read.



In 2021, archaeologists were working at a site under the Mediterranean Sea, near the north coast of Egypt. This site was the ancient city of Thônis-Heracleion. The archaeologists' modern technology helped them to see what was on the bottom of the sea. Under five meters of clay and bricks, they found a wooden ship. It was over 2,200 years old.

في عام 2021، كان علماء الآثار يعملون في موقع تحت البحر الأبيض المتوسط، بالقرب من الساحل الشمالي لمصر. كان هذا الموقع مدينة تونيس هرقليون القديمة. وقد ساعدتهم التكنولوجيا الحديثة التي استخدمها علماء الآثار على رؤية ما يوجد في قاع البحر. وتحت خمسة أمتار من الطين والطوب، وجدوا سفينة خشبية. كان عمرها أكثر من 2200 سنة.

Thônis-Heracleion was a very old city. In the fifth century BCE, it was a very important place for sailors and for people who bought and sold things. It was the largest port in Egypt before Alexandria. However, there were lots of natural disasters such as earthquakes and tsunamis at the time. About 1,200 years ago, in the eighth century CE, the city fell into the sea at Abu Qir Bay and disappeared. In 2001, archaeologists discovered the city. When they dived under the water, they found lots of interesting artifacts at the underwater site, including statues, pottery, and coins.

كانت تونيس هرقليون مدينة قديمة جدًا. وفي القرن الخامس قبل الميلاد، كان مكانًا مهمًا جدًا للبحارة وللأشخاص الذين كانوا يشترون ويبيعون الأشياء. وكانت أكبر ميناء في مصر قبل الإسكندرية. ومع ذلك، كان هناك الكثير من الكوارث الطبيعية مثل الزلازل والتسونامي في ذلك الوقت. وقبل حوالي 1200 عام، في القرن الثامن الميلادي، سقطت المدينة في البحر عند خليج أبو قير واختفت، وفي عام 2001 اكتشف علماء الآثار المدينة. وعندما غاصوا تحت الماء، عثروا على الكثير من القطع الأثرية المثيرة للاهتمام في الموقع تحت الماء، بما في ذلك التماثيل والفخار والعملات المعدنية.

Help your child listen and read.
ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

The ship is the biggest and most exciting thing that they found there. Archaeologists often find things which are old and broken, but this ship was almost complete. Archaeologists think that the ship was waiting in the port next to the temple of Amun. An earthquake in about 140 BCE destroyed the temple. Bricks from the temple fell onto the boat, making it sink. The wooden ship was a very large rowing boat and it also had a large sail. It is about 25 meters long. It was a fast ship and it had a flat bottom, like ships that traveled on the Nile. It was similar to the style of some ships built in ancient Egypt, so archaeologists and historians are very excited by this discovery.

السفينة التي وُجدت هناك هي أكبر وأكثر الأشياء إثارة. غالبًا ما يعثر علماء الآثار على أشياء قديمة ومكسورة، لكن هذه السفينة كانت شبه مكتملة. ويعتقد علماء الآثار أن السفينة كانت تنتظر في الميناء المجاور لمعبد آمون. دمر زلزال المعبد حوالي عام 140 قبل الميلاد. وسقط الطوب من المعبد على القارب، مما أدى إلى غرقه. وكانت السفينة الخشبية عبارة عن قارب تجديف كبير جدًا، وكان لها أيضًا شراع كبير. ويبلغ طوله حوالي 25 مترا. وكانت سفينة سريعة، ولها قاع مسطح، مثل السفن التي تسير في النيل. وكان يشبه طراز بعض السفن التي بنيت في مصر القديمة، لذلك تحمس علماء الآثار والمؤرخون بشدة لهذا الاكتشاف.

Listen and read.

The shipwreck in Abu Qir Bay is buried under clay and bricks, but you can see many other shipwrecks. The Red Sea has lots of places where divers can go down to wreck sites and explore ships under the water.

حطام السفينة في خليج أبو قير مدفون تحت الطين والطوب، ولكن يمكنك رؤية العديد من حطام السفن الأخرى. يضم البحر الأحمر الكثير من الأماكن التي يمكن للغواصين النزول إليها لمواقع حطام السفن واستكشاف السفن تحت الماء.

Lots of ships use the Red Sea, because it lies between Asia and Africa. It also allows ships to travel to Europe through the Suez Canal. However, there are storms, reefs, and strong currents in the Red Sea, which can make it dangerous. Sometimes,ships hit the reefs and sink.

وتستخدم الكثير من السفن البحر الأحمر لأنه يقع بين آسيا وأفريقيا. كما يسمح للسفن بالسفر إلى أوروبا عبر قناة السويس. ومع ذلك، هناك عواصف وشعاب وتيارات قوية في البحر الأحمر، مما قد يزيد من خطورة الأمر. في بعض الأحيان، تصطدم السفن بالشعاب المرجانية وتغرق.

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

One of the oldest shipwrecks in the Red Sea is the Carnatic. It sank in 1869 when it hit the Abu Nuhas reef. It has been under water for over 150 years and divers can explore the ship and see lots of sea animals. Another famous shipwreck is the Dunraven, which sank in 1876. There are large holes in the boat so divers can swim inside it.

واحدة من أقدم حطام السفن في البحر الأحمر هي سفينة كارناتيك. وغرقت عام 1869 عندما اصطدمت بشعاب أبو نحاس المرجانية. لقد ظلت تحت الماء لأكثر من 150 عامًا ويمكن للغواصين استكشاف السفينة ورؤية الكثير من الحيوانات البحرية. ومن حطام السفن الشهيرة الأخرى سفينة دونرافين، التي غرقت عام 1876. وهناك ثقوب كبيرة في القارب لذلك تمكن الغواصون من السباحة بداخله.

Because these ships have been under the water for a long time, they have become artificial reefs. They are homes for fish, turtles, dolphins, and other sea animals. Corals live on the metal surface and there are also lots of different kinds of plants.

ولأن هذه السفن ظلت تحت الماء لفترة طويلة، فقد تحولت إلى شعاب مرجانية صناعية. وهي موطن للأسماك والسلاحف والدلافين وغيرها من الحيوانات البحرية. تعيش الشعاب المرجانية على الأسطح المعدنية، وهناك أيضًا الكثير من أنواع النباتات المختلفة.

You have to be good at diving to visit a shipwreck, and you should go in a group. People come from all over the world to go wreck diving in the Red Sea and see the amazing sights!

عليك أن تكون جيدًا في الغوص لتتمكن من زيارة حطام السفينة، ويجب عليك الذهاب ضمن مجموعة. يأتي الناس من جميع أنحاء العالم للذهاب للغوص في البحر الأحمر ومشاهدة المناظر المذهلة!

- Answer the following questions.

1. What can you see at shipwwreck sites?

....

2. Why is the Red Sea sometimes dangerous?

....

Unit 10 Connecting the world

تواصل العالم

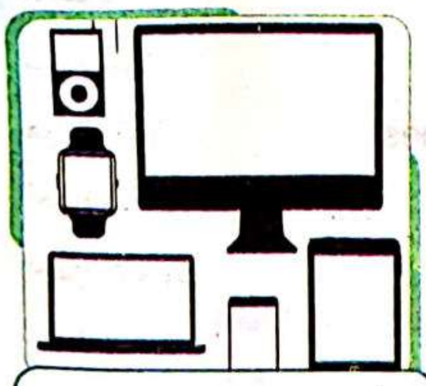
In this unit, the students will ...

- explore different means of communication. يستكشف وسائل الاتصال المختلفة.
- learn words connected to social media. يتعلم الكلمات المرتبطة بوسائل التواصل الاجتماعي.
- understand and use should and shouldn't in sentences. يفهم ويستخدم "ينبغي" و"لا ينبغي" في الجمل
- read a story about social media. يقرأ قصة عن وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي.
- write a letter to a school newspaper. يكتب رسالة إلى جريدة المدرسة.
- listen fo a podcast about technological solutions. يستمع إلى بودكاست حول الحلول التكنولوجية.
- plan a new social media platform only for kids. يخطط منصة جديدة لوسائل التواصل الاجتماعي خاصة بالأطفال.



Lesson (1) MEANS OF COMMUNICATION

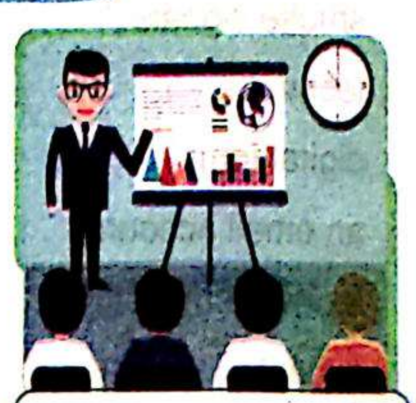
Means of Communication
وسائل الاتصال



electronic devices
أجهزة إلكترونية



an email
إيميل - بريد إلكتروني



a presentation
عرض - تقديم



a website
موقع على الإنترنت



watch a vlog
يشاهد مدونة عن طريق الفيديو



a blog
مدونة



an instant message
رسالة فورية (مستعجلة)

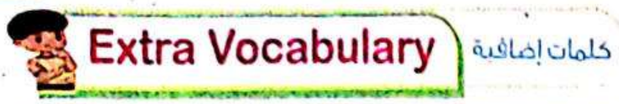


means of communication
وسائل الاتصال



a social media platform
منصة التواصل الاجتماعي

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.



Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

different	مختلف	home page	الصفحة الرئيسية
smoke signals	إشارات دخانية	topics	موضوعات
technology	تكنولوجيا	users	مستخدمون
digital form	شكل رقمي	smartphones	هواتف ذكية
an email account	حساب بريد إلكتروني	tables	أجهزة التابلت
a private message	رسالة خاصة	laptops	أجهزة لاب توب
except	ما عدا	regularly	بانتظام
a special kind	نوع خاص	sports	رياضات
cooking	الطهي	personal	شخصي
difference	اختلاف	texts	نصوص
reliability	مصداقية	carrier pigeons	حمام زاجل



Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
talk	يتكلم	talked
help	يساعد	helped
share	يشارك	shared
explain	يشرح	explained
access	يسجل دخول	accessed
belong	يخص	belonged
use	يستخدم	used
start	يبدأ	started
post	يرسل بالبريد	posted

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
know	يعرف	knew
say	يقول	said
send	يرسل	sent
have / has	يملك	had
see	يرى	saw
give	يعطي	gave
read	يقرأ	read
make	يصنع	made
choose	يختار	chose

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Lesson (1)



Important expressions and prepositions
تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

talk about	يتحدث عن	share information	يشارك معلومات
belong to	يخص / ينتمي إلى	send information	يرسل معلومات
kinds of	أنواع من	post information on	ينشر معلومات (في - على)
similar to	مشابه لـ	instead of	بدلًا من
help with	يساعد في	form of	شكل من

Did you know?

More than 4 billion people use different types of social media around the world. This number is increasing every year.

يستخدم أكثر من 4 مليارات شخص أنواعًا مختلفة من وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي حول العالم. وهذا العدد يتزايد كل عام.

Definitions
التعريفات

email	a digital form of a letter	بريد إلكتروني
presentation	a way to share information about something or explain something by talking about it	عرض/تقديم
blog	a personal website or social media account where someone regularly posts written information	مدونة
website	a home page on the World Wide Web	موقع على أنترنت
instant message	something that you write and send to someone on a social media platform	رسالة فورية
vlog	a personal website or social media account where someone regularly posts short videos	مدونة فيديو

Listen and read.

Do you know what we are talking about when we say means of communication? These are different ways to send messages from one place to another place. In the past, people used smoke signals or birds to send messages to each other. Today, we use technology like electronic devices to help us send messages.

هل تعلم ما الذي نتحدث عنه عندما نقول وسائل التواصل؟ أنها طرق مختلفة لإرسال الرسائل من مكان إلى مكان آخر. في الماضي، استخدم الناس إشارات الدخان أو الطيور لإرسال رسائل لبعضهم البعض. اليوم، نستخدم التكنولوجيا مثل الأجهزة الإلكترونية لمساعدتنا في إرسال الرسائل.

An email is a digital form of a letter. We send these electronic messages to people using electronic devices. You must have an email account to send these kinds of messages.

البريد الإلكتروني هو شكل رقمي للرسالة. نقوم بإرسال هذه الرسائل الإلكترونية إلى الأشخاص الذين يستخدمون الأجهزة الإلكترونية. يجب أن يكون لديك حساب بريد إلكتروني لإرسال هذا النوع من الرسائل.

An instant message (or IM) is a message that you can send on a social media platform. It is a private message so no one else can see it except the person you send it to.

الرسالة الفورية هي رسالة يمكنك إرسالها على إحدى منصات التواصل الاجتماعي. إنها رسالة خاصة فلا يمكن لأحد أن يراها إلا الشخص الذي أرسلتها إليه.

A presentation is a way to share information with others. When you give a presentation, you share information about something or explain something by talking about it.

العرض التقديمي هو وسيلة لمشاركة المعلومات مع الآخرين. عندما تقدم عرضًا تقديميًا، فإنك تشارك معلومات حول شيء ما أو تشرح شيئًا بالحديث عنه.

A website is a home page on the World Wide Web. Websites are usually about one topic. Users can access websites from different electronic devices like smartphones, tablets, and laptops.

موقع الويب هو صفحة رئيسية على شبكة الإنترنت العالمية. عادةً ما تكون مواقع الويب حول موضوع واحد. يمكن للمستخدمين الوصول إلى مواقع الويب من أجهزة إلكترونية مختلفة مثل الهواتف الذكية والأجهزة اللوحية وأجهزة الكمبيوتر المحمولة.

Help your child read about means of communication. ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ عن وسائل الاتصال.

A blog is a special kind of websites. It usually belongs to one person who posts information there regularly for others to read. There are blogs about many different topics like sports or cooking.

المدونة هي نوع خاص من المواقع الإلكترونية. عادةً تخص شخص واحد يقوم بنشر معلومات بانتظام ليقرأها الآخرون. توجد مدونات حول العديد من الموضوعات المختلفة مثل الرياضة أو الطبخ.

A vlog is similar to a blog because it's a personal website where people post information for others. The difference is that on a vlog, people post videos they make instead of written texts.

تشبه مدونة الفيديو المدونة لأنّها موقع ويب شخصي ينشر فيه الأشخاص معلومات للآخرين. الفرق هو أنه في مدونة الفيديو، ينشر الأشخاص مقاطع فيديو يصنعونها بدلاً من النصوص المكتوبة.

Listen and read.

When you read blogs, watch vlogs, or take information from websites. It's very important to decide how reliable the information is. First, look at the date of the material. You don't want to choose anything that is very old because the information may be different or even incorrect now.

عندما تقرأ المدونات، أو تشاهد مدونات الفيديو، أو تأخذ معلومات من المواقع. من المهم أن نقرر مدى مصداقية المعلومات. أولاً، انظر إلى تاريخ الشيء (المادة). ليس عليك أن تختار أي شيء قديم جدًا لأن المعلومات ربما أصبحت مختلفة أو غير صحيحة في الوقت الحالي.

Make sure you think about the person who created the material. Is she or he an expert or a professional, or just someone giving their opinion? Basically, you want to get facts from experts. So, if they are using phrases like "I guess" or "I feel," they are probably just giving their opinion.

تأكد من رأيك عن الشخص الذي نشر المادة. هل هي أو هو خبير أو محترف أم مجرد شخص يعطي رأيه؟ أساسًا، أنت بحاجة للحصول على الحقائق من الخبراء. لذا، إذا كانوا يستخدمون عبارات مثل "أخمن" أو "أشعر"، فمن المحتمل أن يكونوا يعبرون عن رأيهم فقط.

You can also use special websites that are used for checking facts. There are a lot of different ones online, and they can help you decide what true and what's not. Ask your teacher which ones you should use.

يمكنك أيضًا استخدام مواقع خاصة التي تُستخدم للتأكد من الحقائق. هناك الكثير من تلك المواقع على الإنترنت، وبإمكانهم مساعدتك للتحقق من الشيء الحقيقي والمزيف. اسأل معلمك أيهم يجب عليك أن تستخدمه.

Help your child read about means of communication. ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ عن وسائل الاتصال.

Listen and read.

Talking about the reliability of social media

التحدث عن مصداقية وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي

1 Checking dates.

فحص التواريـخ.

When was the material written?

متى كتبت المادة؟

Don't choose information that is too old. It might be incorrect now.

لا تختار معلومات قديمة جدًا قد تكون غير صحيحة الآن.

2 Choosing facts not opinions.

اختيار حقائق وليست آراء.

Who created the material?

من صنع المادة؟

Don't choose information that is someone's opinion.

لا تختار المعلومات التي هي رأي شخص ما.

Choose information written by an expert or a professional.

اختر المعلومات التي كتبها خبير أو محترف.

3 Fact checking websites.

مواقع فحص الحقائق.

How do I check the facts?

كيف أتحقق من الحقائق؟

Look at special websites to check the facts you have found.

انظر إلى مواقع الويب المتخصصة للتحقق من الحقائق التي وجدتها.

Did you know?

Ancient Egyptians used carrier pigeons to send messages to each other.

استخدم قدماء المصريون الحمام الزاجل لإرسال رسائل لبعضهم البعض.

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What's a blog?

....

2. How many persons does a blog belong to?

....

3. Why does a person regularly post information for others?

....

4. What topics are the blogs about?

....

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box:

laptops - access - devices - topic

A website is a home page on the World Wide Web. Websites are usually about one 1) .... Users can 2) .... from different electronic 3) .... like smartphones, tablets and laptops.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. There are many means of .... to send messages from one person to another.
   a) pollution b) solution c) station d) communication
2. In the past people used smoke .... to communicate.
   a) signals b) finals c) bags d) panels
3. We use technology like electronic ....
   a) prices b) devices c) advice d) prizes
4. A/An .... is a digital form of a letter.
   a) device b) email c) vlog d) presentation
5. You must have an email ....to send emails.
   a) count b) account c) carrier d) clown

6. You can send an instant message on a social media ....

a) frame b) firm c) platform d) form

7. A .... is a way to share information with others.

a) message b) presentation c) device d) preposition

8. A .... is a home page on the World Wide Web.

a) blog b) vlog c) device d) website

9. Users can .... websites from different electronic devices like smartphones.

a) access b) play c) plant d) enter

10. A ..... is a personal website where someone regularly posts written information.

a) log b) blog c) vlog d) dialog

11. A .... is similar to a blog.

a) log b) slog c) device d) vlog

12. Ancient Egyptians used carrier .... to send messages to each other.

a) butterflies b) parrots c) cats d) pigeons

13. I use my .... to access a website.

a) book b) smartphone c) box d) telephone

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. people - can - How - websites - access - ?

....

2. a digital - is - An email - of - a form - letter - .

....

3. of - means - What - you - do - communication - use - ?

....

Lesson (1)



5 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Do you know what we are talking about when we say means of communication? These are different ways to send messages from one place to another place.

In the past, people used smoke signals or birds to send messages to each other. Today, we use technology like electronic devices to help us send messages.

An email is a digital form of a letter. We send these electronic messages to people using electronic devices. You must have an email account to send these kinds of messages.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. You must have an email .... to send these kind of messages.
   a) account b) clown c) count d) topic
2. The underlined word "send" is the opposite of ....
   a) talk b) use c) help d) receive

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What's the general idea of the text? ....
4. What kind of technology do we use today? ....
5. What did people use to send messages to each other in the past? ....
6. What's an email? ....

6 Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

Means of communication

Guiding elements:

(smoke signals - email - a blog - a vlog - carrier pigeons)

....

....

....

....

....

Lesson (2) LANGUAGE: GIVING ADVICE



Key Vocabulary كلمات أساسية

backpack	حقيبة الظهر	adventure	مغامرة
incredible	لا يصدق - هائل	keyboard	لوحة مفاتيح
publish	ينشر	checklist	قائمة التدقيق والفحص

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

notebook	كراسة	local newspaper	جريدة محلية
eraser	أستيكه - ممحاة	honey	عسل
writer	كاتب	without	بدون
difficult	صعب	word processor	برنامج معالج النصوص (في الكمبيوتر)
mistakes	أخطاء	adult	شخص بالغ



Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
open	يفتح	opened
love	يحب	loved
work	يعمل	worked
hand	يسلم / يعطي	handed
prepare	يجهز	prepared
touch	يلمس	touched
practice	يمارس	practiced
correct	يصحح	corrected
change	يغير	changed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
get	يحصل على	got
sit	يجلس	sat
take	يأخذ	took
write	يكتب	wrote
tell	يخبر	told
hurt	يؤذي	hurt
let	يدع - يسمح	let
give	يعطي	gave
choose	يختار	chose

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Lesson (2)

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

make ... for	يعد .... لـ	share with	يتشارك مع
sit at	يجلس على	get better	يتحسن
on the floor	على الأرضية	take a break	يأخذ قسطاً من الراحة (يستريح)
a title for	عنوان لـ	hand to	يسلم لـ
by hand	باليد	without a break	بدون راحة

Listen and read.



Adam got home from school, and sat down at his desk. He took his pencil, notebook, and eraser out of his backpack, and opened up his notebook. Adam loved to write. He was working on a new story about a boy who goes on a great adventure around Africa. Adam's mom is a writer at the local newspaper. She got home at 6 o'clock.

"Hi Mom," Adam said. "Do you want to read my new story?"

"Of course I do, honey."

عاد آدم من المدرسة إلى المنزل وجلس على مكتبه. أخرج قلمه الرصاص والدفتر والممحاة من حقيبته وفتح كراسته. كان آدم يحب الكتابة. كان يكتب قصة جديدة عن صبي يذهب في مغامرة رائعة حول أفريقيا. والدة آدم كاتبة في إحدى الصحف المحلية. وصلت إلى المنزل في الساعة السادسة. قال آدم: "مرحباً أمي". "هل تريدين أن تقرئي قصتي الجديدة؟" قالت الأم "بالطبع يا عزيزي."

Adam handed his notebook to his mom. She sat down and started reading it. After a while, she said, "This is an incredible story, Adam. You should let more people read it."

"What do you mean?" Adam asked.

"You know, you should prepare it to share with others."

"OK, but how do I do that, Mom?"

اعطي آدم كراسته إلى والدته. جلست وبدأت في قراءتها. وبعد فترة قالت: «هذه قصة رائعة يا آدم. يجب أن تسمح لعدد أكبر من الناس بقراءتها."

قال آدم "ماذا تقصدي؟"

قالت الأم "كما تعلم، يجب عليك إعدادها لمشاركتها مع الآخرين."

قال آدم "حسنا، ولكن كيف أفعل ذلك يا أمي؟"

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

"First you should touch type it."

"OK, we're leaning how to type at school. Is that when you try to type without always looking at the keyboard?

"That's right. it might sound difficult, but if you practice, you'll get better and better at it. It's much quicker than writing with a pen, and it's easier to correct or change your work."

قالت الأم "أولاً يجب أن تكتبها باللمس على لوحة المفاتيح."

قال آدم "حسنًا، نحن نركز على كيفية الكتابة في المدرسة. هل هذا عندما نحاول الكتابة دون النظر دائمًا إلى لوحة المفاتيح؟

قالت الأم"صحيح. قد يبدو الأمر صعبًا، ولكن إذا تدربت، فسوف تتحسن فيه. إنها أسرع بكثير من الكتابة بالقلم، ومن الأسهل تصحيح عملك أو تغييره.

"I can do that, Mom."

"Just remember to sit up straight and keep your feet on the floor. You don't want to hurt your neck or back. And take a break every 10 or 15 minutes."

"Yes, that's what my teacher told us," said Adam.

"Then, you can ask the school to publish it in the school newspaper, or even publish it yourself online."

His mom handed the notebook back to him.

"Look at the last page. I made a checklist for you."

قال آدم "أستطيع أن أفعل ذلك يا أمي."

قالت الأم "فقط تذكر أن تجلس بشكل مستقيم وتبقي قدميك على الأرض. حتى لا تؤذي رقبتك أو ظهرك. وخذ قسطاً من الراحة كل 10 أو 15 دقيقة».

قال آدم: "نعم، هذا ما قاله لنا أستاذي".

قالت الأم "بعد ذلك، يمكنك أن تطلب من المدرسة نشرها في صحيفة المدرسة، أو حتى نشرها بنفسك عبر الإنترنت."

أعادت والدته كراسته إليه.

"انظر إلى الصفحة الأخيرة. لقد قمت بعمل قائمة مرجعية لك."

"Publishing Checklist"

✦ You shouldn't write your story by hand. You should use a word processor or writing program, and try to touch type.

لا ينبغي أن تكتب قصتك باليد. يجب عليك استخدام معالج النصوص أو برنامج الكتابة، ومحاولة الكتابة باللمس.

Lesson (2)

- You shouldn't have any spelling or grammar mistakes. You should checkyour spelling. Or you should ask an adult to check it for you.

يجب ألا يكون لديك أي أخطاء إملائية أو نحوية. يجب عليك التحقق من الإملاء الخاص بك. أو يجب عليك أن تطلب من شخص بالغ التحقق من ذلك نيابةً عنك.

- You shouldn't forget punctuation. You should check your work.

يجب أن لا تنسى علامات الترقيم. يجب عليك التحقق من عملك.

- You shouldn't work too long without a break. And you should sit up straight with your feet on the floor.

لا ينبغي أن تعمل لفترة طويلة دون استراحة. ويجب عليك الجلوس بشكل مستقيم مع وضع قدميك على الأرض.



Giving advice (should - shouldn't)

Form:

Subject + should + inf.

- You should choose a title for your story.

Usage:

We use "should + inf" to say that something is a good idea.

- You should check your work.

Negative:

Subject + shouldn't + inf.

- You shouldn't forget your homework.

We use "shouldn't + inf" to say that something is a bad idea.

- You shouldn't be afraid to ask your teacher for help.

NOTE **shouldn't = should not**



Practice

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. You .... use a capital letter at the beginning of each sentence.
   a) shouldn't b) should c) can't d) isn't
2. You should .... a title for your story.
   a) choose b) chooses c) chose d) chosen
3. You .... use handwriting if you want the school to publish your story in the newspaper.
   a) shouldn't b) isn't c) can't d) should
4. You .... ask a friend to read your story before you publish it.
   a) shouldn't b) can't c) should d) isn't
5. You shouldn't .... afraid to ask your teacher for help.
   a) is b) was c) be d) are
6. You .... hide your writing. Share it with your friends!
   a) shouldn't b) should c) can d) are

2 Give your friend advice. Complete the sentences.

1. Your friend: I'm thirsty
   Your advice: You should drink something.
2. Your friend: I work a lot.
   Your advice: You ....
3. Your friend: I have a difficult English test tomorrow.
   Your advice: You ....
4. Your friend: I want to learn something.
   Your advice: You ....
5. Your friend: I can't see very well.
   Your advice: You ....

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

General Activities

1 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box:

hungry - feel - should - eat

Ali : How do you feel?

Amr : I feel 1) .... What should I do?

Ali : You should 2) .... some fruit.

Amr : What else 3) .... I do?

Ali : You should have some rest.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Adam got home from school, and sat down .... his desk.
   a) on b) at c) for d) in
2. Adam took his pencil, notebook and eraser out of his ....
   a) back b) backpack c) packet d) pocket
3. Adam's mom is a writer at a local ....
   a) newspaper b) newsagent c) zoo d) bank
4. You should share your ideas .... others.
   a) at b) for c) with d) by
5. I sometimes type without looking at the ....
   a) mouse b) keyboard c) screen d) case
6. You can ask the school to .... your story in the school newspaper.
   a) publish b) print c) type d) touch
7. I made a checklist .... you.
   a) at b) by c) for d) with
8. You .... write your story by hand.
   a) should b) shouldn't c) can d) may
9. She .... check her work.
   a) should b) shouldn't c) can't d) isn't

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. for - I - made - a checklist - you - .

....

2. too - shouldn't - work - You - long - a break - without - .

....

3. check - should - You - work - your - .

....

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Adam got home from school, and sat down at his desk. He took his pencil, notebook, and eraser out of his backpack, and opened up his notebook. Adam loved to write. He was working on a new story about a boy who goes on a great adventure around Africa. Adam's mom is a writer at the local newspaper. She got home at 6 o'clock. Hi Mom, Adam said. 'Do you want to read my new story?' "Of course I do, honey. Adam handed his notebook to his mom. She sat down and started reading it. After a while, she said, This is an incredible story, Adam. You should let more people read it.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The underlined word "handed" means ....
   a) take   b) give   c) write   d) go
2. Adam's mom is a .... at the local newspaper.
   a) doctor   b) teacher   c) writer   d) mechanic

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Where does the boy go on a great adventure?

....

4. What was Adam's mom's advice to him?

....

5. What did Adam love to do?

....

6. What is the main idea of the text?

....

Lesson (3) READING

Key Vocabulary كلمات أساسية

best friends	أفضل الأصدقاء	cyberfriends	أصدقاء على الإنترنت
nasty comments	تعليقات بغيضة	settings	الإعدادات (على الجهاز)
a social media account	حساب على مواقع التواصل الاجتماعي	problem	مشكلة
		wildlife photographer	مصور الحياة البرية

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

bell	جرس	horrible	فظيع	kitchen	مطبخ
private	خاص	hobby	هواية	together	معًا - سويًا
project	مشروع	really	حقًا	idea	فكرة
sign	علامة - لافتة	important	هام - مهم	parents	الوالدان
group	مجموعة	photography	التصوير الفوتوغرافي		



Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
sign up	يسجل	signed up
walk	يمشي	walked
ask	يسأل	asked
use	يستخدم	used
need	يحتاج	needed
talk	يتكلم	talked
introduce	يُقدِّم	introduced
guess	يُخمِّن	guessed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
make	يصنع	made
feel	يشعر	felt
ring	يرن	rang
say	يقول	said
see	يرى	saw
get	يحصل على	got
know	يعرف	knew
tell	يخبر	told

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

sign in	يسجل دخول	talk about	يتحدث - يتكلم عن
sign up for	يسجل في	make fun of	يسخر من
think about	يفكر في	learn about	يتعلم عن
use .... for	يستخدم ..... لـ	turn off	يُغلق - يطفيء
need ..... for	يحتاج ..... لـ	turn back	يعود - يرجع
set up	يؤسس	say bad things about	يقول أشياء سيئة عن

Listen and read.

Youssef Goes Online



The 2 o'clock bell rang. Youssef and his best friend Wael started walking home from school together.
“You're thirteen now, aren't you?” asked Wael.
'Yeah. Why?'
'That means you can sign up for a social media account like me.'

رن جرس الساعة الثانية. بدأ يوسف وصديقه المقرب وائل بالعودة سيرًا إلى المنزل من المدرسة معًا.
قال وائل "أنت الآن في الثالثة عشرة، أليس كذلك؟"
'نعم. لماذا؟'
"هذا يعني أنك يمكنك التسجيل للحصول على حساب على وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي مثلي."

Youssef thought about this idea for a minute. 'I guess I'll have to ask my parents first. What do you use your account for?'
'I post videos. I also made some cyberfriends online,' said Wael.

فكر يوسف في هذه الفكرة لمدة دقيقة. "أعتقد أنني يجب أن أسأل والدي أولاً." فيم تستخدم حسابك؟
قال وائل: "أنا أنشر مقاطع فيديو." "لقد قمت أيضًا بتكوين صداقات عبر الإنترنت".

'But who are these cyberfriends? Do you really know them?” he asked. 'No, but I can watch their videos. Some of them are so cool!' 'I'll think about it. See you tomorrow!' said Youssef.
Youssef got home from school and his mom was in the kitchen.

قال يوسف: "ولكن من هم أصدقاء الإنترنت؟ هل تعرفهم حقًا؟" . "لا، ولكن يمكنني مشاهدة مقاطع الفيديو الخاصة بهم." وبعضها رائع جدًا!" قال يوسف: "سأفكر في الأمر." أراك غدًا!
عاد يوسف من المدرسة إلى البيت وكانت والدته في المطبخ.

Help your child listen and read.
ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

Lesson (3)

"Hi, honey. How was school today?"

"Good! Mom, can I get a social media account? Wael has one and he "says it's really cool."

"Do you think you're old enough, Youssef?"

Yes. And I need it for my group project."

Youssef's dad helped him set up his account after dinner. He went straight to his room and made his first video. He introduced himself and talked about his favorite hobby, photography. Then he posted it.

"أهلا يا حبيبي. كيف كان يومك الدراسي اليوم؟"

"جيدا يا أمي، هل يمكنني الحصول على حساب على وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي؟ لدى وائل حساب وهو "يقول إنه رائع حقًا".

"هل تعتقد أنك كبير بما فيه الكفاية يا يوسف؟"

نعم. وأنا بحاجة إليه لمشروع مجموعتي.

ساعده والده في إنشاء حسابه بعد العشاء. ذهب مباشرة إلى غرفته وقام بتصوير أول فيديو له. قدم نفسه وتحدث عن هوايته المفضلة وهي التصوير الفوتوغرافي. ثم نشره.

The next morning, he signed into his account. There were some comments from people he didn't even know, and some of the comments were nasty.

One person said horrible things about the way Youssef spoke English, and someone else made fun of Youssef's hair and clothes. He felt really sad.

وفي صباح اليوم التالي، قام بتسجيل الدخول إلى حسابه. كانت هناك بعض التعليقات من أشخاص لا يعرفهم ، وكانت بعض التعليقات بغيضة. قال أحد الأشخاص أشياء فظيعة عن الطريقة التي يتحدث بها يوسف باللغة الإنجليزية، وسخر شخص آخر من شعر يوسف وملابسه. لقد شعر بالحزن حقا.

Youssef told his mom about the bad comments.

"I think there are some things you need to learn about using social media," she said. "Sign into your account and go to the settings. First, we need to make your page private. That means only your friends can see your videos. Now, let's turn off the comments. That way people can't say bad things about you. If you want, you can turn them back on later." "Thanks, Mom. I'm going to make a new video now and see what happens."

أخبر يوسف والدته عن التعليقات السيئة.

قالت: "أعتقد أن هناك بعض الأشياء التي تحتاج إلى تعلمها حول استخدام وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي". "قم بتسجيل الدخول إلى حسابك وانتقل إلى الإعدادات. أولاً، نحتاج إلى جعل صفحتك خاصة. وهذا يعني أن أصدقائك فقط يمكنهم مشاهدة مقاطع الفيديو الخاصة بك. الآن، دعنا نغلق التعليقات. بهذه الطريقة لا يمكن للناس أن يقولوا أشياء سيئة عنك. إذا أردت، يمكنك تشغيلها مرة أخرى لاحقًا." قال يوسف"شكرا يا أمي. سأقوم بعمل فيديو جديد الآن وأرى ما سيحدث.

General Activities

1 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box:

shouldn't - long - for - bad

Adam : Does anyone in your family use social media?
Youssef : Yes, they do.
Adam : What do they use it 1) ....?
Youssef : For posting videos.
Adam : Is social media good or 2) ....?
Youssef : I think it maybe good or bad.
Adam : Should I sit 3) .... hours without a break?
Youssef : No, you shouldn't.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. You shouldn't write .... comments on social media.
   a) nasty b) good c) fine d) kind
2. I also made some .... online.
   a) bully b) cyberfriends c) enemies d) families
3. Every day I .... some videos on social media.
   a) say b) post c) write d) does
4. .... is my favorite hobby.
   a) Photographer b) Photograph c) Photography d) Picture
5. Someone made .... of Youssef on social media.
   a) funny b) fun c) fan d) fin
6. I sign up .... a social media account.
   a) in b) on c) at d) for
7. .... into your account and go to the settings to turn off the comments.
   a) Sign b) Play c) Go d) Come
8. You should make your page ....
   a) normal b) private c) general d) bad

9. .... media is very important.

a) Private b) General c) Social d) Online

10. You sometimes need to turn .... the comments if they are nasty.

a) at b) by c) off d) on

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Youssef's dad helped him set up his account after dinner. He went straight to his room and made his first video. He introduced himself and talked about his favorite hobby, photography. Then he posted it. The next morning, he signed into his account. There were some comments from people he didn't even know, and some of the comments were nasty.

One person said horrible things about the way Youssef spoke English, and someone else made fun of Youssef's hair and clothes. He felt really sad.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Youssef went straight to his .... and made his first video.

a) room b) class c) garden d) street

2. The underlined word "nasty" means very ....

a) good b) bad c) lovely d) nice

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What's Youssef's favorite hobby? ....
4. How did Youssef feel at the end? ....
5. When did Youssef's dad help him set up his account? ....
6. What is the general idea of the text? ....

4 Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

Social media

Guiding elements:

(important - account - cyberfriends - nasty - turn off)

....

....

....

Lesson (4) WRITING



Key Vocabulary كلمات أساسية

create	ينشئ	reports	تقارير	poetry	شِعر
global community	مجتمع عالمي	improve	يُحسن	grade	صف دراسي
currently	حاليًا	safely	بأمان	design	تصميم

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

because	لأن - بسبب	general	عام
interesting	شيق - ممتع	college	كلية
projects	مشروعات	weekend	نهاية الأسبوع
club	نادي	sincerely	بإخلاص
writing club	نادي الكتابة	editor	محرر
science club	نادي العلوم	fiction	خيال
games club	نادي الألعاب	free time	وقت فراغ
cooking club	نادي الطهي	perfect idea	فكرة رائعة



Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة — ***Irregular verbs*** أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
create	ينشئ	created	think	يعتقد	thought
improve	يحسن	improved	have	يملك - يمتلك	had
publish	ينشر	published	do	يفعل	did
share	يشارك	shared	read	يقرأ	read

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

report about	يقدم تقريرًا عن	write for	يكتب لـ
interested in	مهتم بـ	at school	في المدرسة
improve writing	يحسن الكتابة	at college	في الكلية
share ideas	يتشارك الأفكار	join the club	يلتحق بالنادي
create a club	ينشئ نادي	for fun	للمتعة

Read the letter.



Dear Editor,

I'm writing because I think that the school should create an after-school writers' club. Don't you think this is a good idea? As a fourth-grade student, I like to write short stories and reports about things that I think are interesting. I write for my projects and for fun. I don't have time to write in the morning, but I do have time to write after school. Some of my friends are also interested in writing after school. So, that's why I think that an after-school club is a perfect idea. There are lots of other clubs like the games club, the science club, and the cooking club. Currently, there is no story writing or poetry writing club at our school. First, we should create one general writing club. If we improve our writing skills now, it will help us in the future in high school and at college. It will also help us write, publish, and share our ideas with our global community. Don't you agree?

Yours sincerely,

Amira El-Sayyed

4th grade

عزيزي المحرر

أنا أكتب لأنني أعتقد أن المدرسة يجب أن تنشئ ناديًا للكتاب بعد المدرسة. ألا تعتقد أن هذه فكرة جيدة؟ كطالبة في الصف الرابع، أحب كتابة القصص القصيرة والتقارير حول الأشياء التي أعتقد أنها مثيرة للاهتمام. أنا أكتب لمشاريعي وللمتعة. ليس لدي وقت للكتابة في الصباح لكن لدي وقت للكتابة بعد المدرسة. بعض أصدقائي مهتمون أيضًا بالكتابة بعد المدرسة. ولهذا السبب أعتقد أن نادي ما بعد المدرسة هو فكرة مثالية. ويوجد الكثير من الأندية الأخرى مثل نادي الألعاب، ونادي العلوم، ونادي الطهي. لا يوجد حاليًا نادي لكتابة القصة أو كتابة الشعر في مدرستنا. أولاً، يجب علينا إنشاء نادي عام للكتابة. إذا قمنا بتحسين مهاراتنا في الكتابة الآن، فسوف يساعدنا ذلك في المستقبل في المدرسة الثانوية وفي الكلية. وسوف يساعدنا أيضًا في كتابة أفكارنا ونشرها ومشاركتها مع مجتمعنا العالمي. ألا توافق؟

المخلصة لك

أميرة السيد

الصف الرابع

Help your child read the letter.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ الخطاب.

Punctuation

Aperiod (.): نقطة (.)

- We put a period (.)at the end of a sentence.

نضع نقطة (.) في نهاية الجملة.

Comma (,): فاصلة سفلية (,)

- We put a comma (,) after "First / Dear Editor," and in lists.

نضع فاصلة سفلية (,) بعد "عزيزي المحرر / أولًا" وفي القوائم.

The question mark (?): علامة الاستفهام (؟)

We put a question mark (?) at the end of a question.

نضع علامة استفهام (؟) في نهاية السؤال.

Prepositions (in - at)

We use (in) before periods of the day and "the future"

نستخدم (في) قبل فترات اليوم و"المستقبل"

We use (at) before places like (school - zoo)

نستخدم (at) قبل الأماكن مثل (المدرسة - حديقة الحيوان)

- Write the missing prepositions.

1. .... the morning / afternoon.
2. .... school / college.
3. .... the future.

Conjunctions (and - or - but)

We use (and) to join similar ideas. نستخدم (و) لربط الأفكار المتشابهة.

e.g. I like English and Arabic.

We use (but) to join contrasting ideas. نستخدم (لكن) لربط الأفكار المتعارضة.

e.g. He is poor, but he is happy.

(or) is used instead of **(and)** in negative sentences.

(أو) تستخدم بدلا من (و) في الجمل المنفية.

e.g. She doesn't like maths or Arabic.

Lesson (4)



Use these tips when you write a letter to the editor of a newspaper. استخدم هذه النصائح عندما تكتب رسالة إلى محرر إحدى الصحف.

- Start your letter with "Dear Editor,".
  - ابدأ رسالتك بـ "عزيزي المحرر".
- Finish your letter with "Sincerely yours,".
  - أنهي رسالتك بعبارة "المخلص لك".
- Say why you are writing in the first sentence.
  - قل لماذا تكتب هذه الرسالة في الجملة الأولى.
- Give a couple of examples to support your idea.
  - أعط مثالين لدعم فكرتك.



Write a letter to the editor of your school newspaper.

Ask the school to create a new club that you want to join. Read the tips and use Amira's letter as a model.

The computer club

Dear Editor,

I'm writing because I think that the school should create an after - school computer club. Don't you think this is a good idea? As a fourth-grade student, I like to write about using computer that is interesting and useful for my classmates. I don't have time to write in the morning, but I have time to write after school. Some of my friends are interested in writing after school. If we improve our computer using skills now, it will help us in the future in high school and at college.

Yours sincerely,

Ali

4th grade

General Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. He wants to .... an after-school writer's club.
   a) play   b) create   c) cook   d) build
2. We should .... our writing skills.
   a) prove   b) protect   c) improve   d) protest
3. Mona is in .... four in our school.
   a) blade   b) grade   c) club   d) grape
4. I go home .... the afternoon.
   a) on   b) at   c) in   d) by
5. After school, I will join college .... the future.
   a) at   b) on   c) in   d) by
6. I like poetry .... fiction.
   a) but   b) and   c) or   d) so
7. She doesn't like reading .... writing.
   a) and   b) but   c) or   d) for
8. He is a student .... school.
   a) at   b) on   c) of   d) by
9. Some of my friends are interested .... writing after school.
   a) on   b) at   c) in   d) by
10. There's no story writing or .... writing club at our school.
    a) poetry   b) story   c) weekend   d) grade
11. We can share our ideas with our global ....
    a) report   b) fiction   c) game   d) community

Read and correct the words between brackets.

1. I like football .... (hut) handball.
2. He is poor, ... (and) he is happy.
3. I go to school .... (on) the morning.
4. I don't like meat .... (and) fish.

3 Write the missing punctuation marks in these sentences.

1. I like to write letters poetry and stories.
2. First I want to write a letter.
3. Dear Editor
4. Do you like writing stories

4 Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

Amira's school day

Guiding elements:

(gets - school - bus - Maths - home - homework - bed - clever - love)

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Lessons (5 & 6)



- SOLUTIONS TO PROBLEMS IN EGYPT
- PROJECT

Key Vocabulary كلمات أساسية

Listen and repeat.



a smog-free tower
برج تنقية الهواء



electric cars
سيارات كهربائية



scrubber
مدخنة تنقية الغازات والأبخرة

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

air pollution	تلوث الهواء	solution	حل
mostly	عمومًا / في الغالب	factories	مصانع
podcast	إذاعة صوتية	jewelry	حُلي
indoor	داخلي	inventor	مخترع
outdoor	خارجي	nervous	عصبي/متوتر
apartment	شقة	confident	واثق
buildings	مباني	rain	مطر
power plant	محطة توليد الطاقة	greening	التخضير (زراعة سياج من النباتات والأشجار)
nature	الطبيعة	insects	حشرات
problem	مشكلة	fossil fuels	وقود حفري

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.



Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
cause	يُسَبِّب	caused
talk	يتكلّم	talked
collect	يُجمِّع	collected
invent	يخترع	invented
contact	يتصل	contacted
move	يُحرِّك /ينقل	moved

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
make	يصنع	made
find	يجد	found
keep	يحفظ	kept
grow	ينمو	grew
build	يبني	built
get	يحصل على	got

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

talk about	يتكلّم عن	look at	ينظر إلى
listen to	يستمع إلى	eye contact with	تواصل بصري مع
collect with	يُجمّع بـ	work with	يعمل مع
start with	يبدأ بـ	think of	يفكر في
provide shade	يمدنا بالظل	keep the building warm	يحافظ على تدفئة المبنى
sum up	يُلخِّص	harmful to	ضار لـ

Did you know?

The first electric car was invented in the 1830s in Scotland by the inventor Robert Anderson.

اخترع المخترع روبرت أندرسون أول سيارة كهربائية في ثلاثينات القرن التاسع عشر في اسكتلندا.



Listen and read.



Presenter:

Welcome to the podcast Technology World . Today. Today in the studio with me is the environmental scientist Dr. Nesma Hegazy. We'll be talking about the problem of air pollution. Welcome to the show Dr. Hegazy.

مرحبًا بكم في برنامجنا الإذاعي عن عالم تكنولوجيا اليوم. اليوم معي في الاستوديو عالمة البيئة الدكتورة نسمة حجازي. سنتحدث عن مشكلة تلوث الهواء. مرحبًا بكِ في برنامجنا يا دكتورة.

Dr. Nesma Hegazy:

Thank you for inviting me.

شكرًا لك لدعوتي.

Presenter:

So, how big of a problem is air pollution in Egypt today?

إذن، ما حجم مشكلة تلوث الهواء في مصر اليوم؟

Dr. Nesma Hegazy:

Well, it is quite serious, especially in the biggest cities. That is what we call outdoor pollution. But most people don't realize that there is also indoor pollution - that is the pollution that is inside of our homes, schools, and offices. But let's just talk about outdoor air pollution today. This is produced by our cars, buses, airplanes, factories, and power plants. We must also remember that there is some dust from the desert in the air. But when we burn fossil fuels, we make air pollution worse. And since it doesn't rain very much in Cairo or other areas of the country, the air doesn't get cleaned.

حسنًا، الأمر خطير جدًا، خاصة في المدن الكبرى. وهذا ما نسميه التلوث الخارجي. لكن معظم الناس لا يدركون أن هناك أيضًا تلوثًا داخليًا - وهو التلوث الموجود داخل منازلنا ومدارسنا ومكاتبنا. ولكن دعونا نتحدث فقط عن تلوث الهواء الخارجي اليوم. ينتج هذا التلوث بواسطة سياراتنا وحافلاتنا وطائراتنا ومصانعنا ومحطات الطاقة. يجب أن نتذكر أيضًا أن هناك بعض الغبار من الصحراء في الهواء. ولكن عندما نحرق الوقود الحفري، فإننا نجعل تلوث الهواء أسوأ. وبما أن الأمطار لا تهطل كثيرًا في القاهرة أو في مناطق أخرى من البلاد، فلا يتم تنظيف الهواء.

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

Presenter:

So, how can technology help us deal with this problem?

إذاً، كيف يمكن للتكنولوجيا أن تساعدنا في التعامل مع هذه المشكلة؟

Dr. Nesma Hegazy:

Fortunately, there are a couple of ways. First of all, there are electric cars. There aren't many on the streets now, but you will definitely see more and more of these in the future - the government has already started helping car companies start producing electric cars.

لحسن الحظ، هناك طريقتان. أولاً وقبل كل شيء، هناك السيارات الكهربائية. لا يوجد منها الكثير في الشوارع الآن، ولكنك بالتأكيد ستشاهد المزيد والمزيد منها في المستقبل - وقد بدأت الحكومة بالفعل في مساعدة شركات السيارات على البدء في إنتاج السيارات الكهربائية.

Presenter: That's good news. إنه خبر سار

Dr. Nesma Hegazy:

Then there are devices called scrubbers. You can find them on the smokestacks of some factories or power plants. These devices are used to clean some of the gases coming from the factories. They remove the dangerous parts of the gases and make it safe to store or use them in some other way.

ثم هناك أجهزة تسمى أجهزة تنقية الغازات. يمكنك أن تجدها في مداخن بعض المصانع أو محطات توليد الطاقة. تستخدم هذه الأجهزة في تنظيف بعض الغازات المنبعثة من المصانع. فهي تزيل الأجزاء الخطرة من الغازات وتجعلها آمنة للتخزين أو لاستخدامها بطريقة أخرى.

Presenter: That's fascinating! هذا مذهل!

Dr. Nesma Hegazy:

Yes, it is. We also have smog free towers. These are like giant vacuum cleaners that take polluted air in, clean it, and then send it back out for us to breathe. These 7-meter towers can only clean air in a small area like a park. So, we would need a lot of them to clean an entire city. However, some are already being used in China, Mexico, and the Netherlands.

نعم إنه كذلك. لدينا أيضًا أبراج خالية من الضباب الدخاني. إنها مثل المكانس الكهربائية العملاقة التي تأخذ الهواء الملوث وتنظفه ثم ترسله مرة أخرى للتنفسه. لا يمكن لهذه الأبراج التي يبلغ ارتفاعها ٧ أمتار تنظيف الهواء إلا في منطقة صغيرة مثل الحديقة. لذا، سنحتاج إلى الكثير منها لتنظيف مدينة بأكملها. ومع ذلك، يتم بالفعل استخدام بعضها في الصين والمكسيك وهولندا.

Presenter:

That's really interesting. What do they do with the pollution they collect?

هذا مثير للاهتمام حقًا. ماذا يفعلون بالتلوث الذي يجمعونه؟

Dr. Nesma Hegazy:

You might be surprised to hear this, but they use it to make fashionable jewelry.

ربما تتفاجأ بسماع ذلك، لكنهم يستخدمونه لصنع مجوهرات عصرية.

Presenter:

Really? Wow. I am impressed. Thank you so much for talking with us today, Dr. Hegazy.

حقًا؟ رائع. أنا منبهر بذلك. شكرًا جزيلاً لك على التحدث معنا اليوم يا دكتورة.

To make a good presentation, you can use these presentation phrases.

لعمل عرض جيد يمكنك استخدام هذه العبارات.

- Good morning / afternoon, everyone. صباح الخير / مساء الخير للجميع.
- Today I'm going to talk about .... اليوم سوف أتحدث عن ......
- Let's start with .... هيا نبدأ بـ ......
- Now, let's look at .... الآن، هيا ننظر إلى ......
- To finish / To sum up, ... لتنهي / لنلخص .....
- Are there any questions? هل يوجد أي أسئلة؟
- Thank you very much. شكرًا جزيلًا.

Tips for a good presentation: إرشادات لعرض جيد:



- Be confident. كن واثقًا.
- Smile. ابتسم.
- Make eye contact with the class. قم بالتواصل البصري مع فصلك.
- If you are nervous,look at a friend first. إذا كنت متوترًا، انظر إلى صديقك أولًا.
- Speak slowly. Don't talk too loudly or too softly.
  تحدث ببطء، لا تتكلم بصوت مرتفع جدًا ولا هادئ جدًا.
- Don't move around a lot. Keep your feet in the same place.
  لا تتحرك كثيرًا. واجعل قدميك ثابتتين في نفس المكان.
- Use some of the phrases above. استخدم بعض العبارات بالأعلى.

Help your child how to make a good presentation. ساعد طفلك كيف يقدم عرضا جيدًا.

Listen and read.



Air pollution is one of the biggest problems for people's health. Air pollution is created by airplanes, traffic, factories and power plants. When we burn fossil and use strong cleaning chemicals to clean our houses, we create pollution. However, there are some new and exciting ways to solve the problem of air pollution. We have learned about scrubbers and smog-free towers that help to clean gases and pollution produced by factories and industry. Another method which is becoming popular is called greening. Greening is growing a wall of plants on the side of a building.

يعد تلوث الهواء أحد أكبر المشكلات التي تهدد صحة الإنسان. يحدث تلوث الهواء بسبب الطائرات وحركة المرور و المصانع ومحطات الطاقة. عندما نحرق الحفريات ونستخدم مواد تنظيف كيميائية قوية لتنظيف منازلنا، فإننا نتسبب في التلوث ومع ذلك، هناك بعض الطرق الجديدة والمثيرة لحل مشكلة تلوث الهواء. لقد علمنا عن أجهزة تنقية الغازات وأبراج التنقية من الضباب الدخاني التي تساعد على تنظيف الغازات والتلوث الناتج عن المصانع والصناعة. هناك طريقة أخرى والتي أصبحت مشهورة تسمى التخضير. التخضير هو زراعة جدار من النباتات على جوانب المبنى.

Why is this helpful? The plants help to clean the air because they absorb carbon dioxide and they produce oxygen. The plants also catch dust and other harmful pollution. In hot countries, the green walls provide shade and help to cool the air. The cool air stops the buildings from getting too hot in summer. The plants keep the buildings warm in winter. The cooler temperatures are also easier for people to live in. The plants also provide homes for bees, insects,and birds, so greening helps nature, too.

لماذا هذا مفيد؟ تساعد النباتات على تنقية الهواء لأنها تمتص ثاني أكسيد الكربون وتنتج الأكسجين. ثم تلتقط النباتات أيضًا الغبار والتلوث الضار. وفي البلدان الحارة، توفر الجدران الخضراء الظل وتساعد على تبريد الهواء. يمنع الهواء البارد المباني من أن تصبح شديدة الحرارة في الصيف. تحافظ النباتات على دفء المباني في الشتاء. كما أن درجات الحرارة الباردة تسهل على الناس العيش فيها. وتوفر النباتات أيضًا منازل للنحل والحشرات والطيور، لذا فإن التخضير يساعد الطبيعة أيضًا.

Help your child listen and read.
ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

General Activities

1 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box:

solutions - causes - Air pollution - factories

Omar : What is the most dangercus problem?

Baraā : 1)..is the most dangerous problem.

Omar : What 2)...air pollution?

Baraā : Smoke from 3)..and cars.

Omar : What should we do?

Baraā : We should find solutions to these problems.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Dr Nesma Hegazy talks mostly about .... air pollution.
   a) outdoor b) door c) window d) home
2. The .... make air pollution worse.
   a) fossil fuels b) rain c) tsunami d) trees
3. A/An .... free towers help to clean gases and pollution from factories.
   a) smog b) smoke c) flu d) tree
4. When you give a presentation, make .... contact with the class.
   a) ear b) mouth c) eye d) hand
5. Don't move around a lot. Keep your .... in the same place.
   a) hands b) feet c) legs d) eyes

3 Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

Air pollution

Guiding elements:

(smoke - factories - cause - solution - trees)

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Writing Corner

Means of communication

There are a lot of means of communication. They help us send messages. An email is a digital form of a letter. You must have an account to send emails. A website is a home page on the World Wide Web. A blog is a special kind of website. A vlog is a personal website where people post videos for others.

Air pollution

Air pollution is one of the most dangerous problems we face these days. It is caused by smoke from cars or factories which lead to unhealthy and polluted air. Pollution is harmful, so we should find solutions to this problem.

Social media

Social media is very important. You can send messages and post videos. You also make some cyberfriends online. You should use it in a useful way. You shouldn't write nasty comments. If you find this, you can turn off the comments. Never bully your friends on social media.


Write a letter to your manager. Ask him to create a new games club.

Dear manager

I'm writing because I think that the school should create an after-school games club. As a fourth-grade student, I'd like to practise sports after school. It's fun and interesting.

Some of my friends are also interested in games after school. So I think it's a perfect idea.

Yours sincerely,

Ali Ahmed

4th grade

Dictation on Unit (10)

Lesson (1)

يشارك	....	عرض تقديم	....
يعرف	....	موقع على الإنترنت	....
أنواع من	....	مدوّنة	....
يتحدث عن	....	وسائل الاتصال	....
بريد إلكتروني	....	مختلف	....

Lesson (2)

ينشر	....	حقيبة الظهر	....
قائمة التدقيق والفحص	....	مغامرة	....
صعب	....	يجهز	....
عمل	....	شخص بالغ	....
يجلس على	....	يتحسن	....

Lesson (3)

يسجل	....	أصدقاء على الإنترنت	....
يشعر	....	مشكلة	....
هواية	....	الإعدادات "على الجهاز"	....
يفكرني	....	جرس	....
يُغلق - يطفئ	....	مجموعة	....

Lesson (4)

ينشئ	....	تصميم	....
بأمان	....	نادي	....
يكتب لـ	....	يشعر	....
ينشر	....	خيال	....
يحسن	....	فكرة	....

Lessons (5 & 6)

يستمع إلى	....	سيارات كهربائية	....
يجد	....	تلوث الهواء	....
يُسبب	....	إذاعة صوتية	....
يتصل	....	مصانع	....
مخترع	....	حل	....

Help your child dictate these words.
ساعد طفلك في إملاء هذه الكلمات

Review on Unit (10)

Vocabulary

blog	مدونة	checklist	قائمة التدقيق والفحص
email	إيميل / البريد الإلكتروني	nasty	كريه / بغيض
vlog	مدونة فيديو	cyberfriends	أصدقاء على الإنترنت
website	موقع على الإنترنت	comments	تعليقات
access	دخول - مدخل	technology	تكنولوجيا
adventure	مُغامرة	electric car	سيارة كهربية
incredible	لا يُصدَّق - هائل	scrubber	مدخنة تنقية الغازات والأبخرة
keyboard	لوحة مفاتيح	improve	يُحسّن
create	ينشئ	reports	تقارير
currently	حاليًا	jewelry	حُلي
fossil fuels	وقود حفري	presentation	عرض / تقديم
means of communication			وسائل الاتصال
instant message			رسالة فورية
electronic device			جهاز إلكتروني
social media account			حساب علي موقع التواصل الاجتماعي
social media platform			منصة وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
smog-free tower			برج تنقية الهواء
global community			مجتمع عالمي



Giving advice (should - shouldn't)



Form:

Subject + should + inf.

- You should choose a title for your story.

Usage:

We use "should + inf" to say that something is a good idea.

- You should check your work.

Negative:

Subject + shouldn't + inf.

- You shouldn't forget your homework.

We use "shouldn't + inf" to say that something is a bad idea.

- You shouldn't be afraid to ask your teacher for help.

NOTE **shouldn't = should not**

Remember

- We put a period (.) at the end of a sentence.
- We put a comma (,) after "First / Dear Editor," and in lists.
- We put a question mark (?) at the end of the question.
- We use (and) to join similar ideas.

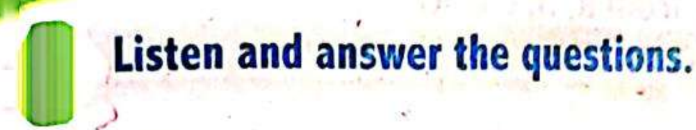
e.g. I like English and Arabic.

- We use (but) to join contrasting ideas.

e.g. He is poor, but he is happy.

- (or) is used instead of (and) in negative sentences.

e.g. She doesn't like maths or Arabic.



Exam On Unit (10)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. How are you today?

....

2. Who did you play board games with?

....

3. What did you do after playing board games?

....

4. When did you go to school?

....

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box:

topic - access - devices - website

A website is a home page on the World Wide Web. Websites are usually about one 1).......................... . Users can 2).......................... websites from different electronic 3).......................... like smartphones, tablets, and laptops.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

There are many means of communication. A website is a home page on the World Wide Web. Websites are usually about one topic. Users can access websites from different electronic devices like smartphones, tablets, and laptops.

A blog is a special kind of website. It usually belongs to one person who posts information there regularly for others to read. There are blogs about many different topics like sports or cooking.

A vlog is similar to a blog because **it** is a personal website where people post information for others. The difference is that on a vlog, people post videos they make instead of written texts.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Websites are usually about .... topic.

   a) one   b) two   c) three   d) four

2. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to a/an ....

   a) website   b) blog   c) vlog   d) app

B) Answer the following questions.

3. How can users access websites?

....

4. What is the general idea of the text?

....

5. What is a blog?

....

6. What is the difference between blog and vlog?

....

4 The Reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Amir sent the picture of the seagull to his friends. ( )
2. People use billions of plastic bags in Egypt. ( )

B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

3. The friends meet at Amir's ....

   a) park   b) garden   c) school   d) house

4. The friends were .... about the bird.

   a) happy   b) worried   c) delighted   d) excited

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. You should .... a title for your story.
   a) choose b) choses c) choosing d) chose
2. You .... forget punctuation while writing.
   a) should b) shouldn't c) can d) must
3. You .... make eye contact with the class.
   a) should b) shouldn't c) can't d) may
4. She is really tired. She .... have a rest.
   a) should b) shouldn't c) hasn't d) mustn't

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. need - do - What - you - an email - send - to - ?

....

2. story - by hand - You - your - write - shouldn't - .

....

7 Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

Pros and cons of social media

Guiding elements:

(important - send - chat - waste - too long - break - eye)

....

....

....

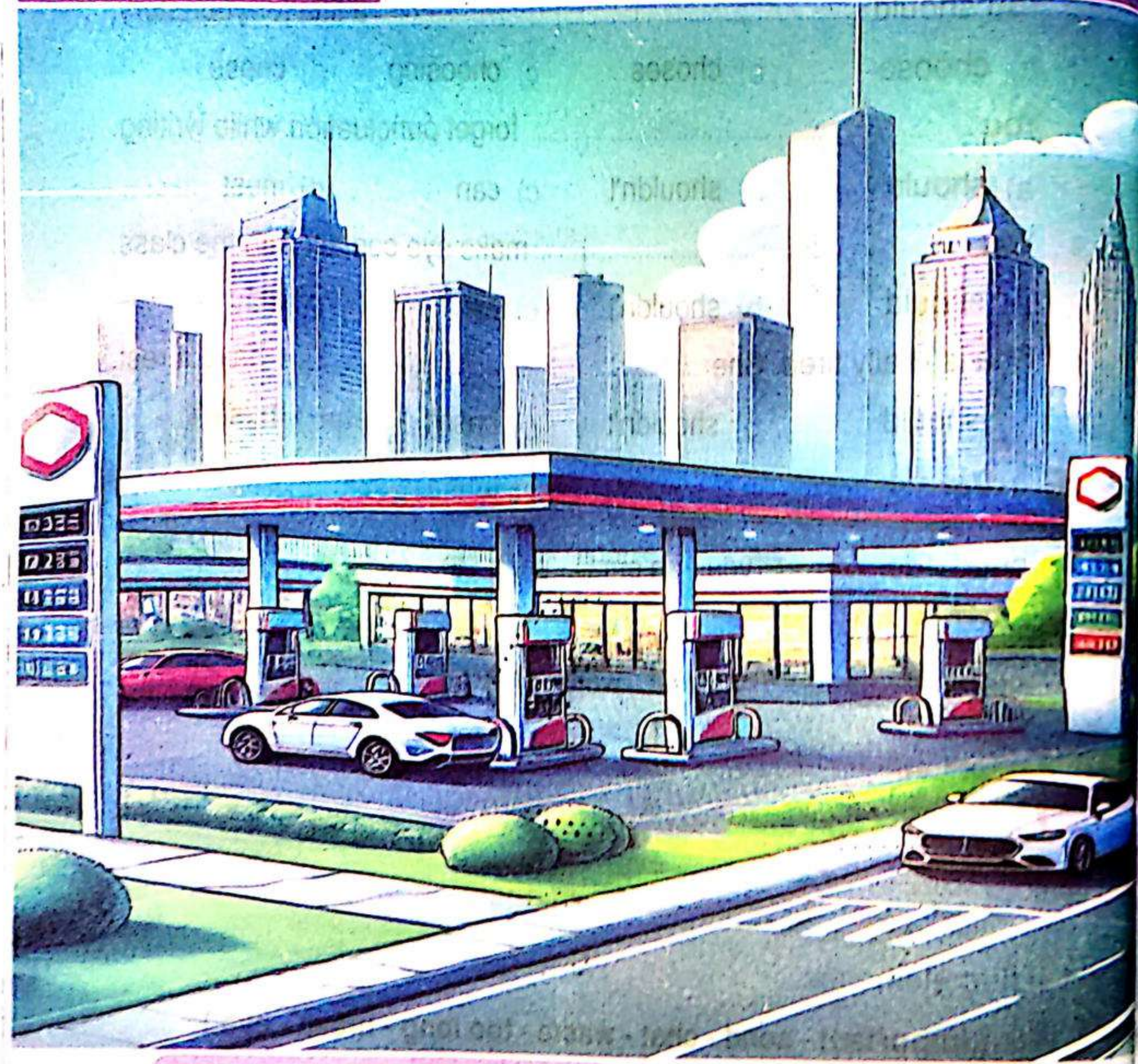
....

....

....

Unit 11 On the road!

على الطريق!



In this unit, the students will ...

- explore different types of transportation. يستكشف أنواع مختلفة من وسائل النقل.
- contrast urban and rural lifestyles. يقارن بين أنماط الحياة في المناطق الحضرية والريفية.
- learn words connected to transportation. يتعلم الكلمات المتعلقة بوسائل النقل.
- review comparative and superlative adjectives. يراجع صفات المقارنة والتفضيلية.
- read a text about the history of transportation. يقرأ نص عن تاريخ وسائل النقل.
- read and write a plan for an ideal city and transportation network. يقرأ ويكتب خطة لمدينة مثالية وشبكة نقل مثالية.
- listen to a radio show about transportation around the world. يستمع إلى برنامج إذاعي عن وسائل النقل حول العالم.
- talk about different transportation around the world. يتحدث عن وسائل النقل المختلفة حول العالم.
- create a radio show about transportation in Egypt. ينشأ برنامج إذاعي عن وسائل النقل في مصر.

Lesson (1) NATURAL RESOURCES



Key Vocabulary كلمات أساسية

Listen and say.



Stop
قف



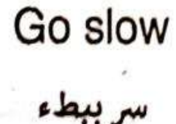
Don't turn left
لا تتجه لليسار



wear a seat belt
ارتدي حزام أمان



animals on the road
حيوانات على الطريق



Go slow
سر ببطء

Did you know?

There are more than 1.4 billion vehicles on the Earth. There are about 7.2 million electric cars.

هنالك أكثر من 1.4 مليار مركبة على الأرض، يوجد حوالي 7.2 مليون سيارة كهربائية.

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

transportation	نقل / مواصلات	traffic jam	ازدحام المرور
destination	وجهة الوصول	nowadays	في هذه الأيام
exciting	مُثير	public transportation	مواصلات عامة
traffic lights	إشارات المرور	activities	أنشطة
problem	مشكلة	pollution	تلوث

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
cause	يسبب	caused
love	يحب	loved
stop	يتوقف	stopped
move	يتحرك	moved
reach	يصل	reached
continue	يستمر	continued

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
meet	يقابل	met
sit	يجلس	sat
take	يأخذ / يستغرق (وقتًا)	took
make	يجعل / يصنع	made
wear	يرتدي	wore
leave	يغادر	left

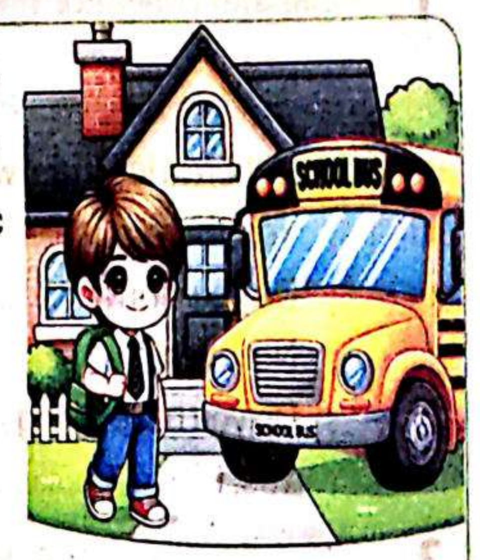
Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

take an hour	يستغرق ساعة	sit in	يجلس في
on my way to	في طريقي إلى	reach in...	يصل في خلال
make the traffic worse	يجعل المرور أسوأ	Be careful	كن حذرًا
exciting places to live	أماكن مثيرة للمعيشة	in front of	أمام
on time	في الوقت المحدد	set of	مجموعة من

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Lesson (1)

Look and read.



Cities are exciting places to live. There are a lot of activities and people to meet. There are also good hospitals, schools, and public transportation. However, many cities nowadays have a big problem: traffic.

I love my city but every morning we have to sit in a traffic jam on my way to school. The cars and buses stop, and we can't move. The trip to school sometimes takes us an hour! The traffic lights are often red and that makes the traffic even worse. We leave home very early so I can make it to school on time. I can't make the trip on foot because my school is too far to walk to. We have good public transportation. The problem is that buses don't always go to the destination you want.

المدن هي أماكن مثيرة للعيش فيها. هناك الكثير من الأنشطة والأشخاص الذين يمكنك مقابلتهم. هناك أيضًا مستشفيات ومدارس جيدة ووسائل نقل عام. ومع ذلك، تواجه العديد من المدن في الوقت الحاضر مشكلة كبيرة: حركة المرور.
أنا أحب مدينتي ولكن علينا الوقوف كل صباح وسط ازدحام مروري في طريقي إلى المدرسة. تتوقف السيارات والحافلات ولا نستطيع التحرك. تستغرق الرحلة إلى المدرسة أحيانًا ساعة! غالبًا ما تكون إشارات المرور حمراء مما يجعل حركة المرور أسوأ. نغادر المنزل مبكرًا جدًا حتى أتمكن من الوصول إلى المدرسة في الوقت المحدد. لا أستطيع القيام بالرحلة سيرًا على الأقدام لأن مدرستي بعيدة جدًا بحيث لا يمكن الوصول إليها سيرًا على الأقدام. لدينا وسائل نقل عام جيدة. المشكلة هي أن الحافلات لا تذهب دائمًا إلى الوجهة التي تريدها.

Did you know?



In 1868, the first traffic light was in London in front of the Houses of Parliament.

في عام 1868 كانت أول إشارة مرور في لندن أمام البرلمان.

Help your child look and read.
ساعد طفلك أن ينظر ويقرأ.

General Activities

1 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box:

trip - jam - always - traffic

Anas : Is there a lot of jam where you live?
Seif : Yes, there is.
Anas : Do you sit in a 1) .... on your way to school?
Seif : Not often.
Anas : Do you have a long 2) .... to school?
Seif : Yes, I 3) .... have a long trip to school.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Do you go to school .... foot?
   a) in   b) on   c) at   d) by
2. Cities are .... places to live.
   a) boring   b) bad   c) exciting   d) ugly
3. Are there traffic .... where you live?
   a) lights   b) lamps   c) candles   d) bags
4. You must wear your seat ....
   a) cap   b) jacket   c) belt   d) hat
5. Go .... There are children playing.
   a) fast   b) slowly   c) quickly   d) quick
6. Be .... There are animals on the road.
   a) careful   b) careless   c) polite   d) rude
7. The train will reach its .... in about an hour.
   a) destination   b) transportation   c) place   d) seat
8. All the cars and trucks in the city cause a lot of ....
   a) revolution   b) station   c) pollution   d) solution
9. Malak is never on .... She's always late.
   a) place   b) time   c) hour   d) minute
10. Cars, buses and trains are good means of ....
    a) transportation   b) evaporation   c) destination   d) station

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lesson (1)

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

My name is Reem. I live in a big city. It's a very exciting to live there. I do a lot of activities and meet a lot of friends. I love my city very much but I have a big problem. Every day, I have to sit in a traffic jam on my way to school. The trip to school takes one hour. I leave home very early to get to school on time. My school is very far so I can't go on foot. Buses are good but they don't always go to the destination I want.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The underlined word "far" is opposite to ....
   a) big   b) small   c) near   d) early
2. Reem sits in a traffic ....
   a) juice   b) jam   c) bread   d) bottle

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What's the general idea of the text? ....
4. Do buses go to Reem's destination? ....
5. Where does Reem live? ....
6. How long does the trip to school take? ....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. your - must - belt - You - wear - seat - .
   ....
2. places - live - Cities - exciting - to - are - .
   ....
3. get - school - Do - to - time - you - on - ?
   ....



5 Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:

Traffic

Guiding elements:

1. Is there a lot of traffic in your neighbourhood?
2. How long is your trip to school?
3. How often do you get into a traffic jam?

General Activities

1 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box:

trip - jam - always - traffic

Anas : Is there a lot of jam where you live?
Seif : Yes, there is.
Anas : Do you sit in a 1) .... on your way to school?
Seif : Not often.
Anas : Do you have a long 2) .... to school?
Seif : Yes, I 3) .... have a long trip to school.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Do you go to school .... foot?
   a) in b) on c) at d) by
2. Cities are .... places to live.
   a) boring b) bad c) exciting d) ugly
3. Are there traffic .... where you live?
   a) lights b) lamps c) candles d) bags
4. You must wear your seat ....
   a) cap b) jacket c) belt d) hat
5. Go .... There are children playing.
   a) fast b) slowly c) quickly d) quick
6. Be .... There are animals on the road.
   a) careful b) careless c) polite d) rude
7. The train will reach its .... in about an hour.
   a) destination b) transportation c) place d) seat
8. All the cars and trucks in the city cause a lot of ....
   a) revolution b) station c) pollution d) solution
9. Malak is never on .... She's always late.
   a) place b) time c) hour d) minute
10. Cars, buses and trains are good means of ....
   a) transportation b) evaporation c) destination d) station

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lesson (1)

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

My name is Reem. I live in a big city. It's a very exciting to live there. I do a lot of activities and meet a lot of friends. I love my city very much but I have a big problem. Every day, I have to sit in a traffic jam on my way to school. The trip to school takes one hour. I leave home very early to get to school on time. My school is very <u>far</u> so I can't go on foot. Buses are good but they don't always go to the destination I want.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The underlined word "far" is opposite to ....
   a) big b) small c) near d) early
2. Reem sits in a traffic ....
   a) juice b) jam c) bread d) bottle

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What's the general idea of the text? ....
4. Do buses go to Reem's destination? ....
5. Where does Reem live? ....
6. How long does the trip to school take? ....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. your - must - belt - You - wear - seat - .

....

2. places - live - Cities - exciting - to - are - .

....

3. get - school - Do - to - time - you - on - ?

....



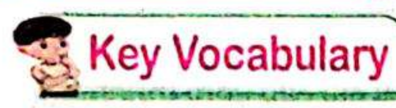
5 Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:

Traffic

Guiding elements:

1. Is there a lot of traffic in your neighbourhood?
2. How long is your trip to school?
3. How often do you get into a traffic jam?

Lesson (2) LANGUAGE



Key Vocabulary كلمات أساسية

Listen and say.

Cleaner Urban environment
بيئة حضرية أكثر نظافة



green spaces
مساحات خضراء



recycle
يعيد تدوير

bike paths
حارات - ممرات للدراجات



recycling bins
صناديق إعادة التدوير



Definitions تعريفات

green spaces	empty green areas.	مساحات خضراء
recycle	to treat waste materials so that they can be used again.	يعيد تدوير
bike paths	a road for bikes only.	حارات / مسارات للدراجات
residents	people who live in a particular place.	سكان
recycling bins	bins for things which will be treated again and be used.	صناديق إعادة التدوير
volunteer	someone who offers to do something for free .	متطوع
reduce	to make something smaller or less.	يقلل
reuse	to use something again.	يعيد استخدام

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

science museum	متحف العلوم	garbage	قمامة
important	مهم	angry	غاضب
glass	زجاج	neighborhood	حي سكني
paper	ورق	waste	نفايات
plastic	بلاستيك	ecological	بيئي
metal	معدن	friendly	ودود
famous	مشهور	messy	فوضوي
desert	صحراء	expensive	غالي الثمن

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
create	يبتكر	created
recycle	يعيد تدوير	recycled
reduce	يقلل	reduced
reuse	يعيد استخدام	reused
disconnect	يقطع الإتصال	disconnected

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
mean	يعني - يقصد	meant
ride	يركب	rode
throw	يلقي - يرمي	threw
learn	يتعلم	learnt (ed)
think	يعتقد	thought

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

reduce the waste	يقلل النفايات	learn a lot about	يتعلم الكثير عن
be the best	يكون الأفضل	It's important to	من المهم أن
need to	يحتاج أن	as much as possible	قدر الإمكان - قدر المستطاع
use for	يستخدم لـ	pick up garbage	يلتقط (يجمع) القمامة
make me angry	يغضبني		
That sounds like a good idea to me	هذه تبدو فكرة جيدة لي		

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Listen and read.

Dina : Hey, Talia. Did you go to the science museum with your class yesterday?

أهلًا، تاليا. هل ذهبتِ إلى متحف العلوم مع فصلك بالأمس؟

Talia : Yes, we did. I learned a lot about creating a cleaner urban environment.

نعم. لقد تعلمت الكثير عن إنشاء بيئة حضرية أكثر نظافة.

Dina : Oh, really? What did you learn?

أوه حقًا؟ ماذا تعلمتِ؟

Talia : Well, it's important to have green spaces in a city. The air is cleaner there. And people are happier when they have green spaces too. So, that means we need more parks and trees in our cities. If we need to water these green spaces, we can recycle water.

حسنًا، من المهم وجود مساحات خضراء في المدينة. فالهواء أنظف هناك. ويكون الناس أكثر سعادة عندما تكون لديهم مساحات خضراء أيضًا. وهذا يعني أننا بحاجة إلى المزيد من الحدائق والأشجار في مدننا. إذا كنا بحاجة إلى ري هذه المساحات الخضراء، فيمكننا إعادة تدوير المياه.

Dina : That sounds like a good idea to me. We need fewer cars too, don't we?

هذه تبدو فكرة جيدة بالنسبة لي. نحن بحاجة إلى عدد أقل من السيارات أيضًا، أليس كذلك؟

Talia : Yes, and we need bike paths for people to ride their bikes on.

نعم، ونحن بحاجة إلى مسارات للدراجات ليتمكن الناس من ركوب دراجاتهم عليها.

Dina : I agree. What can residents do to help?

أنا اتفق معك. ما الذي يمكن أن يفعله السكان للمساعدة؟

Talia : One of the best things we can do is to use recycling bins for our glass, paper, plastic, and metal. And I learned that in some places, people volunteer to pick up garbage in parks.

أحد أفضل الأشياء التي يمكننا القيام بها هو استخدام صناديق إعادة التدوير للزجاج والورق والبلاستيك والمعادن. وعلمت أنه في بعض الأماكن، يتطوع الناس لجمع القمامة في الحدائق.

Dina : People who throw garbage really make me angry! I'd like to be the best volunteer in my neighbourhood!

الناس الذين يرمون القمامة يجعلونني غاضبًا حقًا! أود أن أكون أفضل متطوع في حيي!

Talia : And do you know about the 3 Rs?

وهل تعرفي الـ 3Rs؟

Dina : I don't think so.

لا أعتقد ذلك.

Talia : Reduce, Reuse, and Recycle. Reduce the waste you create. Reuse things as much as possible before buying new ones. And recycle everything you can.

تقليل وإعادة الاستخدام وإعادة التدوير. قلل النفايات التي تتسبب فيها. أعد استخدام الأشياء قدر الإمكان قبل شراء أشياء جديدة. وأعد تدوير كل ما تستطيع.

Dina : I hope we can all be more ecological in the future.

أتمنى أن يكون لدينا اهتمام أكثر بالبيئة في المستقبل.

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

Comparative & Superlative

Comparative Adjectives

Usage

We use comparative adjectives to compare two people or two things.

نستخدم صيغة المقارنة لنقارن بين شخصين أو شيئين.

Short adjectives

have one or two syllables.

الصفات القصيرة تتكون من مقطع أو مقطعين.

Form

Short adjective (صفة قصيرة) + er + than

clean ⟶ cleaner than

Spelling rules

1. Adjectives ending in (-e), only add (r) to the adjective.

مع الصفات المنتهية بـ (e)، فقط نضيف (r) للصفة.

nice ⟶ nicer than

2. Adjectives ending in one vowel and one consonant, double the last consonant.

مع الصفات المنتهية بحرف متحرك واحد ثم حرف ساكن واحد، نضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير.

fat ⟶ fatter than

3. Adjectives ending in (a consonant + y), change the (y) into (i) and add (-er).

مع الصفات المنتهية بحرف y مسبوقًا بحرف ساكن، فإننا نحول حرف y إلى i ونضيف er.

heavy ⟶ heavier than

e.g An elephant is heavier than a horse.

Long adjectives

more / less + long adjective (صفة طويلة) + than

expensive ⟶ more expensive than / less expensive than

e.g A car is more expensive than a bike.

Superlative Adjectives

Usage

We use superlative adjectives to compare someone or something with a group. نستخدم صيغة التفضيل لمقارنة شخصٍ ما أو شيءٍ ما مع مجموعة أخرى.

Form

the + short adjective (صفة قصيرة) + est

small → the smallest

Spelling rules

1. Adjectives ending in (-e), only add (-st).
الصفات التي تنتهي بحرف (e) نضيف لها (st-) فقط.

large → the largest

2. Adjectives ending in one vowel and one consonant, double the last consonant.
الصفات التي تنتهي بحرف متحرك واحد ثم حرف ساكن واحد، نضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير.

big → the biggest

3. Adjectives anding in (-y), change the (y) into (i) then add (est).
الصفات التي تنتهي بحرف (y) مسبوقًا بحرف ساكن. نحول حرف (y) إلى (i) ثم نضيف (est).

heavy → the heaviest

e.g The elephant is the heaviest animal on land.

Long adjectives

the most / the least + long adj. (صفة طويلة)

expensive → the most expensive / the least expensive

e.g My car is the most expensive one.

هناك صفات غير منتظمة:

Adjective	Comparative adjective	Superlative adjective
good جيد	better than أفضل من	the best الأفضل
bad سيء	worse than أسوء من	the worst الأسوء

Help your child review comparative and superlative adjectives.
ساعد طفلك في مراجعة صفات المقارنة وصوغ التفضيل.

Practice

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Trees are .... than flowers.
   a) large b) larger c) largest d) small
2. The film is .... than the book.
   a) the most interesting b) interesting
   a) boring d) more interesting
3. The bike is .... than the car.
   a) smaller b) small c) smallest d) the smallest
4. An electric car is .... expensive than a bike.
   a) more b) most c) less d) many
5. Cairo is the .... city in Egypt.
   a) large b) larger c) largest d) small

2 Write the comparative and superlative adjectives in the table.

Adjective	Comparative adjective	Superlative adjective
green	....	....
big	....	....
interesting	....	....
large	....	....
expensive	....	....
small	....	....

The Prefix البادئات (dis - re - un)

The prefix "re-" means "again" as in:

- reuse : to use again
- replay : to play again
- recycle : to make again
- rewrite : to write again

e.g. I reuse plastic bottles.

The prefixes "un-" and "dis-" mean "not" as in:

- unhappy : not happy
- unhealthy : not healthy
- unfriendly : not friendly
- unpolpular : not popular
- dislike : don't / doesn't like
- disconnect: not connect
- dishonest : not honest
- disagree : don't / doesn't agree

e.g. Sweets are unhealthy. **e.g.** I dislike playing tennis but I like football.

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. To use something again means to .... it.
   a) dislike b) unhealthy c) reuse d) rewrite
2. Kareem is crying. He is ....
   a) happy b) glad c) delighted d) unhappy
3. I .... playing tennis but I like football.
   a) like b) love c) likes d) dislike
4. The teacher told me to .... the lesson again.
   a) reuse b) replay c) rewrite d) recycle
5. When we make something again, we .... it.
   a) reuse b) recycle c) use d) disconnect
6. .... the computer after using it.
   a) Disconnect b) Disagree c) Disadvantage d) Connect
7. My father asked us to .... the shopping bags.
   a) recycle b) break c) reply d) rewrite

Help your child identify the prefixes.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على معاني المقاطع البادئة.

General Activities

1 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box:

recycle - spaces - paths - urban

Amira : How do we create a cleaner urban environment?

Heba : We should have green 1) .... in a city.

Amira : How can we water them?

Heba : We can 2) .... water.

Amira : What else do we need?

Heba : We need bike 3) ....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. You should .... the waste you create.
   a) reduce b) reuse c) recycle d) use
2. Residents should use .... bins.
   a) cycling b) recycling c) circle d) cycle
3. It's important to have .... spaces in a city.
   a) red b) yellow c) green d) black
4. A .... is someone who does something for free.
   a) volunteer b) teacher c) doctor d) dentist
5. I went to the science .... yesterday.
   a) park b) bank c) hotel d) museum
6. The Nile is the .... river in the world.
   a) longest b) longer c) long d) small
7. Cats are .... than tigers.
   a) friendlier b) friendly c) friendliest d) friend
8. The baby is the .... one in the family.
   a) young b) younger c) youngest d) small
9. Parks are greener .... the desert.
   a) the b) than c) then d) now
10. Reading is .... interesting than watching TV.
    a) more b) most c) least d) little

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Yesterday I went on a school trip to the science museum. There, I learned a lot about creating a cleaner urban environment. I learned that it's important to have green spaces in a city to have cleaner air. Green spaces make people happier. To do this, we need more parks and trees in our cities. We can recycle water to water them. I learned that we should reduce cars in our city. We should use bikes more. So, we need bike paths for people to ride their bikes on. Residents should help also by using recycling bins.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. We should .... water to water the plants.
   a) recycle b) reduce c) reuse d) use
2. The underlined word "them" refers to the ....
   a) bikes b) parks and trees c) cars d) bins

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What is the general idea of the text? ....
4. Why do we need bike paths? ....
5. Where did you go yesterday? ....
6. What did you learn there? ....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. busier - Cairo - Damietta - than - is - .
   ....
2. is - world - Nile - The - longest - the - river - in the - .
   ....
3. are - Cats - than - friendlier - tigers - .
   ....

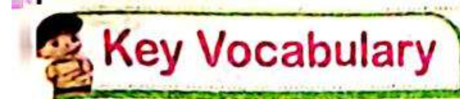
5 Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:

A cleaner urban environment

Guiding elements:

(green spaces - recycle - bike paths - recycling bins)

Lesson (3) TRANSPORTATION IN THE PAST



Key Vocabulary كلمات أساسية

Listen and say.

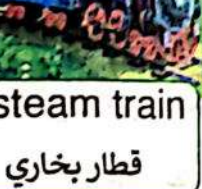
Kinds of transportation
أنواع وسائل النقل والمواصلات


walking
المشي


a mule
بغل

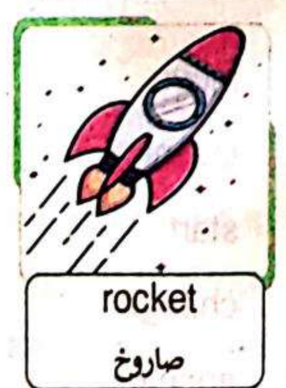

a canoe
زورق


a wagon
عربة (نقل)



a steam train
قطار بخاري


an airplane
طائرة


a subway
مترو


rocket
صاروخ



Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

highway	طريق سريع	goods	بضائع
types	أنواع	rural areas	مناطق ريفية
humans	بشر	steam engine	محرك (قاطرة) بخارية
rope	حبل	gasoline	بنزين - غازولين
wheel	عجلة	distance	مسافة

cart	عربة كارو	continent	قارة
forms	اشكال	fossil fuels	وقود حفري
skiff	قارب بدائي مصنوع من نبات البردي	direction	اتجاه
wind	رياح	high-speed trains	قطارات فائقة السرعة
the country	الريف	solar panels	الألواح الشمسية
papyrus	ورق بردي	oars	مجاديف
sail	شراع	roofs	أسطح
invention	اختراع	streetcar	ترام

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
move	ينتقل	moved
invent	يخترع	invented
start	يبدأ	started
change	يغير	changed
appear	يظهر	appeared
transport	ينقل	transported
design	يصمم	designed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
begin	يبدأ	began
come	يأتي	came
run	يجري	ran
buy	يشتري	bought
fly	يطير	flew
send	يرسل	sent
make	يصنع	made

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

move from ... to ...	ينتقل من ... إلى...	run on	يدار بـ
transport...to ...	ينقل...إلى...	fly through	يطير عبر (خلال)
along the river	على طول النهر	bad for	ضار بـ

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Listen and read.

Transportation Then and Now

Transportation is the way that people move from one place to another. It is also the way that people move things from one place to another.
A long time ago, the only types of transportation for humans were walking, running, and swimming.

النقل هو الطريقة التي ينتقل بها الناس من مكان إلى آخر. إنها أيضًا الطريقة التي ينقل بها الأشخاص الأشياء من مكان إلى آخر.
منذ زمن طويل، كانت وسائل التنقل الوحيدة للإنسان هي المشي والجري والسباحة.

After that, humans began to use animals like mules, donkeys, and horses. Then came small boats like canoes and other types of water transportation. Once they invented the wheel, people started to use small wagons and carts. Farmers in the country could transport their goods to markets in cities more easily. In rural areas, many people still use these means of transportation today.

وبعد ذلك بدأ الإنسان في استخدام الحيوانات مثل البغال والحمير والخيول. ثم جاءت القوارب الصغيرة مثل الزوارق وغيرها من وسائل النقل المائي. بمجرد اختراع العجلة، بدأ الناس في استخدام العربات الصغيرة. تمكن المزارعون في الريف من نقل بضائعهم إلى الأسواق في المدن بسهولة أكبر. وفي المناطق الريفية، لا يزال الكثير من الناس يستخدمون وسائل النقل هذه اليوم.

The invention of the steam engine changed transportation. Ships with steam engines could travel much faster than using people or the wind to move boats. The first steam train was in Wales in the 1800s. The train made trips between rural and urban areas faster and safer. The first car that ran on gasoline also appeared in the 1800s. People bought cars to make their lives easier. Cities like London and Boston had some of the first streetcars and subway systems. The subway in London opened in 1863. Soon, high-speed trains made traveling between rural and urban areas very fast.

أدى اختراع المحرك البخاري إلى تغيير وسائل النقل. يمكن للسفن ذات المحركات البخارية أن تسافر بسرعة أكبر بكثير من استخدام البشر أو الرياح لتحريك القوارب. أول قطار بخاري كان في ويلز في القرن التاسع عشر. قام القطار برحلات بين المناطق الريفية والحضرية بشكل أسرع وأكثر أمانًا. ظهرت أيضًا أول سيارة تعمل بالبنزين في القرن التاسع عشر. اشترى الناس السيارات لتسهيل حياتهم. كان لدى مدن مثل لندن وبوسطن بعض من أولى عربات الترام وأنظمة مترو الأنفاق. تم افتتاح مترو الأنفاق في لندن عام 1863. وسرعان ما جعلت القطارات عالية السرعة السفر بين المناطق الريفية والحضرية سريعًا للغاية.

Help your child listen and read.
ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

From the beginning of time, humans watched birds and wanted to fly through the skies. Today, we fly from one continent to another in no more than one day. We are even able to send people to the Moon in rockets. The problem with transportation that uses gasoline is that it burns fossil fuels, and these are bad for the environment. So today, people are developing cleaner forms of transportation like electric cars. There are even electric buses that use some solar energy from solar panels on their roofs. Engineers are designing greener airplanes and ships, too.

منذ بداية الزمن، كان البشر يراقبون الطيور ويريدون التحليق في السماء. واليوم، نسافر من قارة إلى أخرى في مدة لا تزيد عن يوم واحد. بل إننا قادرون على إرسال البشر إلى القمر بالصواريخ. مشكلة وسائل النقل التي تستخدم البنزين هي أنه يحرق الوقود الحفري، وهو مضر بالبيئة. لذلك، اليوم، يقوم الناس بتطوير أشكال أنظف من وسائل النقل مثل السيارات الكهربائية. حتى أن هناك حافلات كهربائية تستخدم بعض الطاقة الشمسية من الألواح الشمسية الموجودة على أسطحها. ويقوم المهندسون بتصميم طائرات وسفن صديقة للبيئة أيضًا.

Listen and read.

In ancient Egypt, the most important highway was the River Nile. The Egyptians traveled mostly along the river because all the major cities were along the River Nile. So boats and ships were the most important form of transportation.

في مصر القديمة، كان الطريق السريع الأكثر أهمية هو نهر النيل. سافر المصريون في الغالب على طول النهر بسبب أن جميع المدن الكبرى كانت على طول نهر النيل. لذلك كانت القوارب والسفن هي أهم وسائل النقل.

Most Egyptians used a small boat called a skiff. They made this simple boat from papyrus and rope. People could travel short distances in these boats, or they could use it for fishing. They used oars to make the boats move. They made larger boats and ships from wood. These ships had a large sail to catch the wind and they used oars to move and control the direction. The Egyptians built many different kinds of boats for traveling, fishing, and transporting goods.

استخدم معظم المصريين قاربًا صغيرًا يسمى المركب الشراعي الصغير. لقد صنعوا هذا القارب البسيط من ورق البردي والحبال. كان بإمكان الناس السفر لمسافات قصيرة بهذه القوارب، أو يمكنهم استخدامها لصيد الأسماك. لقد استخدموا المجاديف لتحريك القوارب. لقد صنعوا قوارب وسفنًا أكبر من الخشب. وكان لهذه السفن شراع كبير لالتقاط الريح، وكانت تستخدم المجاديف للتحرك والتحكم في الاتجاه. بنى المصريون العديد من أنواع القوارب المختلفة للسفر وصيد الأسماك ونقل البضائع.

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What is the invention that changed transportation?

....

2. What did people use to move boats?

....

3. Where was the first steam train?

....

4. How were the trips that the train made?

....

2 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box:

cheap - like - transportation - faster

Adel : What's your favorite means of transportation?

Amr : The subway.

Adel : Why do you 1)..it?

Amr : Because it is 2)..

Adel : Is it 3)..than the bus?

Amr : Yes, it is.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. We are able to .... people to the Moon in rockets.
   a) send   b) receive   c) come   d) go
2. The invention of the .... engine changed transportation.
   a) boiled   b) steam   c) heated   d) grilled
3. .... are designing greener airplanes and ships, too.
   a) Teachers   b) Engineers   c) Doctors   d) Bakers
4. In .... areas, many people still use old means of transportation.
   a) urban   b) modern   c) rural   d) new
5. There are electric buses that use .... energy.
   a) sun   b) solar   c) moon   d) sky



4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Long time ago, the only types of transportation for humans were walking, running, and swimming. After that, they used animals like mules, donkeys, and horses. Then, they used small boats. Once the wheel was invented, people started to use wagons and carts. The steam engine made a big change in transportation. Ships and trains could travel faster.

Then, the car was invented and people started to buy **it**. The problem with transportation that uses gasoline is that it burns fossil fuels, and these are bad for the environment.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. People started to use wagons and carts when the .... was invented.
   a) bike b) car c) wheel d) rocket
2. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to the ....
   a) ship b) train c) car d) cart

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What animals did humans use for transportation? ....
4. Mention three kinds of transportation in the text. ....
5. What is the problem with transportation that uses gasoline? ....
6. How did people travel long time ago? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. steam - The - train - was - first - Wales - in - .
   ....
2. developing - forms - new - People - are - transportation - of - .
   ....
3. could - markets - Farmers - goods - transport - to - their - .
   ....



6 Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:

Kinds of transportation

Guiding elements:

(mules - canoe - steam train - faster - subway)



Lesson (4)

WRITING

Definitions تعريفات

roof	the top part of a building.	سطح
canal	a long area of water, made for boats to travel on.	قناة
water vapor	water in the form of gas.	بخار الماء
Waterway	the different routes people use for traveling by water like a river, canal or lake.	ممر مائي

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

electricity	كهرباء	hydrogen gas	غاز الهيدروجين
palm trees	أشجار النخيل	nuclear	نووي
ferry	عبّاره (معدية)	system	نظام
electric energy	طاقة كهربية	dangerous	خطير
electric cab	سيارة أجرة كهربية	warm air	هواء دافئ
wind power	طاقة الرياح	driverless	بدون سائق
electric vehicles	مركبات كهربية	routes	طرق
dangerous gases	غازات خطيرة	personally	بصفة شخصية
historic	تاريخي	environment	البيئة
ecological	بيئي		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Present		Past	Present		Past
generate	يولد	generated	provide	يمد / يزود	provided
believe	يعتقد	believed	protect	يحمي	protected
produce	ينتج	produced	burn	يحرق/يحترق	burned /burnt
locate	يقع (للمكان)	located			



Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

better for the environment	أفضل للبيئة	come from	يأتي من
solar energy farm	محطة طاقة شمسية	up and down	ذهابًا وإيابًا
is located on	تقع على	get around	يدور حول
a plan for	خطة لـ	important for	مهم لـ
provide shade	يمد بالظل	along the river	بطول النهر
generate electricity	يولد كهرباء	go for walks	يذهب للتمشية

Listen and read.

My Ideal City: مدينتي النموذجية:

My city is located on the Nile River. There are new homes, schools, and a hospital. There is also a large park where people can go for walks and play sports. I believe that parks are important for everyone. All the electricity in my city comes from a solar energy farm in the desert. The new homes have solar panels on their roofs too. There are palm trees around the houses to help them stay cooler. In my opinion, solar energy is better than burning fossil fuels because it is better for the environment.

مدينتي تقع على نهر النيل. هناك منازل جديدة ومدارس ومستشفى. يوجد أيضًا حديقة كبيرة حيث يمكن للناس الذهاب إليها للتنزه وممارسة الرياضة. أعتقد أن الحدائق مهمة للجميع. كل الكهرباء في مدينتي تأتي من محطة للطاقة الشمسية في الصحراء. تحتوي المنازل الجديدة على ألواح شمسية على أسطحها أيضًا. توجد أشجار النخيل حول المنازل لمساعدتهم على البقاء أكثر برودة. في رأيي الطاقة الشمسية أفضل من حرق الوقود الحفري لأنها أفضل للبيئة.

Water Transportation: النقل البحري:

There is a great new ferry system that moves people up and down the river. The new ecological boats use both wind power and electric energy. The ferry can also use the new canals. The residents can use the ferry system to get around the town. Personally, I think it is very important to protect our waterways. If we use greener boats, we can do that. These ecological boats are quieter than other boats too.

هناك نظام عبّارات جديد رائع ينقل الأشخاص إلى أعلى وأسفل النهر. تستخدم القوارب البيئية الجديدة طاقة الرياح والطاقة الكهربائية. يمكن للعبّارة أيضًا استخدام القنوات الجديدة. يمكن للمقيمين استخدام نظام العبّارات للتجول في جميع أنحاء المدينة. أنا شخصياً أعتقد أنه من المهم جدًا حماية ممراتنا المائية. إذا استخدمنا قوارب صديقة للبيئة، يمكننا أن نفعل ذلك. هذه القوارب البيئية أكثر هدوءًا من القوارب الأخرى أيضًا.

Help your child listen and read about an ideal city. ساعد طفلك أن يستمع و يقرأ عن مدينة نموذجية.

Land Transportation: **النقل البري:**

All this transportation is now more ecological. There are electric cabs, but they don't have any drivers because they are driverless. I am sure that the air will be cleaner if we use electric vehicles. We also have buses that use power from hydrogen gas. From what I know, hydrogen vehicles don't produce any dangerous gases. They only produce warm air and water vapor. You can ride your bike all around the city on the bike paths. They go along the river and everywhere else in my city.

كل وسائل النقل هذه أصبحت الآن أكثر مراعاة للبيئة. هناك سيارات أجرة كهربائية، ولكن ليس بها أي سائقين لأنها بدون سائق. أنا متأكد من أن الهواء سيكون أنظف إذا استخدمنا السيارات الكهربائية. لدينا أيضًا حافلات تستخدم الطاقة من غاز الهيدروجين. حسب ما أعرفه، فإن مركبات الهيدروجين لا تنتج أي غازات خطيرة. أنها تنتج فقط الهواء الدافئ وبخار الماء. يمكنك ركوب دراجتك في جميع أنحاء المدينة على مسارات الدراجات. تمتد هذه المسارات على طول النهر وفي كل مكان آخر في مدينتي.

1 Answer the following questions.

1. Where is your city located?

....

2. Where does electricity in your city come from?

....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The city mostly uses .... energy.

a) unclear b) solar c) wind d) un

2. All transportation is now more ....

a) logical b) illegal c) ecological d) biological



Listen and read.

My Green City

by Hana

My ideal city is located on the Red Sea coast. There are houses and apartments, schools, two museums, and a hospital. There are a lot of green spaces where people can go for walks, ride their bikes, and enjoy being in nature. Personally, I think that green spaces are the most important part of a city. There are also large trees in all the streets to provide shade.

مدينتي المثالية تقع على ساحل البحر الأحمر. هناك منازل وشقق ومدارس ومتحفين ومستشفى. هناك الكثير من المساحات الخضراء حيث يمكن للناس الذهاب للتنزه وركوب دراجاتهم والاستمتاع بالطبيعة. أنا شخصياً أعتقد أن المساحات الخضراء هي الجزء الأكثر أهمية في المدينة. كما توجد أشجار كبيرة في جميع الشوارع لتوفير الظل.

Clean Energy

Most of the electricity for the city comes from a wind farm on the coast. The wind farm has 12 wind turbines that generate electricity. Many buildings have solar panels. In my opinion, all buildings should have solar panels on their roofs. I am sure that people will stop using fossil fuels soon because renewable energy is cleaner.

الطاقة النظيفة: تأتي معظم الكهرباء للمدينة من محطة الرياح على الساحل. تحتوي محطة الرياح على ١٢ من توربينات الرياح التي تولد الكهرباء. تحتوي العديد من المباني على ألواح شمسية. في رأيي، يجب أن تحتوي جميع المباني على ألواح شمسية على أسطحها وأنا متأكد من أن الناس سوف يتوقفون عن استخدام الوقود الحفري قريبًا لأن الطاقة المتجددة أنظف.

Transportation for Goods and People

There is a system of canals in my city with bike paths next to them. I believe that more people will ride their bikes if there are more bike paths. The canals provide more outdoor spaces for people to enjoy, but they also provide transportation.

يوجد نظام من القنوات في مدينتي وبجانبها مسارات للدرجات. أعتقد أن المزيد من الناس سوف يركبون دراجاتهم إذا كان هناك المزيد من مسارات الدراجات. توفر القنوات المزيد من المساحات الخارجية ليستمتع بها الناس، ولكنها توفر أيضًا وسائل النقل.

Electric canal boats carry goods across the city, so there are fewer trucks on the road. The residents travel around the city on electric buses, streetcars, and cabs. All the transportation is electric so there is less pollution and the streets are quieter and cleaner.

تنقل قوارب القناة الكهربائية البضائع عبر المدينة، لذلك يوجد عدد أقل من الشاحنات على الطريق. يتنقل السكان حول المدينة بالحافلات الكهربائية وعربات الترام وسيارات الأجرة. جميع وسائل النقل كهربائية، لذلك يكون التلوث أقل والشوارع أكثر هدوءًا ونظافة.

Help your child listen and read about an ideal city.
ساعد طفلك أن يستمع و يقرأ عن مدينة نموذجية.

"Expressions for giving your opinion"

- I believe that... - In my opinion... - Personally, I think....
- I am sure that... - From what I know....



When you write a heading, you use capital letters for the important words. You don't have to use capital letters for conjunctions (and, so, but), articles (the, a, an), or prepositions (to, on, in, into, for).

Write a plan for your ideal city

You may cover the following.

- Describe your ideal city صف مدينتك المثالية.
- Explain the transportation and how it is better for the environment. اشرح وسائل النقل وكيف أنها أفضل للبيئة.
- Use expressions for giving your opinion. استخدم التعبيرات لأبداء رأيك.
- Write a heading for each paragraph. اكتب عنوانا لكل فقرة.

Model

My Ideal City

My ideal city is located on the Red Sea coast. There are houses and apartments, schools, a museum and a hospital.

Transportation

I am sure that all transportation here is ecological, ferries, canals and bikes. From what I know electric canal boats carry goods across the city. Personally I think it's an exciting place to live......

Help your child write about an ideal city.
ساعد طفلك أن يكتب عن مدينة نموذجية.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. Where is your city located?

....

2. Are there universities in your city?

....

3. Where can people go for walks?

....

4. When do you go to the parks?

....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. My city is located .... the Nile River.
   a) in b) on c) at d) with
2. I believe .... parks are important for everyone.
   a) that b) the c) then d) now
3. ...., I think it is very important to protect our waterways.
   a) Person b) Personal c) Personally d) Mainly
4. Some vehicles don't have any drivers because they are ....
   a) careless b) driverless c) useless d) hopeless
5. Buses that use hydrogen produce .... air.
   a) cool b) cold c) warm d) hot
6. Solar energy is .... than burning fossil fuels.
   a) good b) better c) best d) bad
7. The wind farm has 12 wind turbines that .... electricity.
   a) build b) play c) waste d) generate
8. The city mostly uses .... energy from the sun.
   a) nuclear b) solar c) dirty d) moon

9. The electric buses produce ....

a) hydrogen b) warm air c) fossil fuels d) oxygen

10. Boats that use gasoline are .... than boats that use electricity.

a) louder b) quieter c) calmer d) slower

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. city - The - energy - green - uses - .

....

2. buses - vapor - The - produce - water - new - .

....

3. important - everyone - Parks - for - are - .

....

4. the - do - What - canals - provide - ?

....

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

My city is located on the Nile River. There are new homes, schools, and a hospital. There is also a large park where people can go for walks and play sports. I believe that parks are important for everyone. All the electricity in my city comes from a solar energy farm in the desert. The new homes have solar panels on their roofs, too. There are palm trees around the houses to help them stay cooler. In my opinion, solar energy is better than burning fossil fuels because it is better for the environment.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The underlined word "believe" means ....

a) move b) think c) write d) live

2. Fossil fuels are .... for the environment.

a) good b) bad c) better d) nice

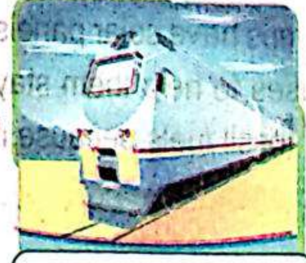
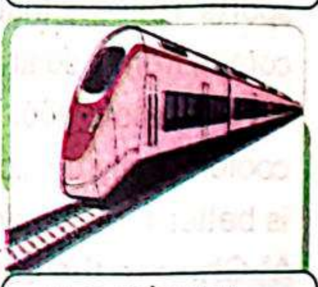
B) Answer the following questions.

3. What is the main idea of the text? ....
4. Why are the palm trees around the houses? ....
5. Where is your city? ....
6. Where do the new homes have solar panels? ....



Lessons (5 & 6) - TRANSPORTATION AROUND THE W[...]
- PROJECT

Key Vocabulary كلمات أساسية

 a cab سيارة أجرة (تاكسي)	 a car سيارة	 an airplane طائرة
 a boat قارب	 a bike دراجة	 a ferry عبّارة
 a train قطار	 a streetcar ترام	 a subway مترو
 The Netherlands هولندا	 The United States الولايات المتحدة	 Bangladesh بنجلاديش

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف علي هذه الكلمات.



Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

advantages	مزايا	playground	ملعب
disadvantages	عيوب	mountains	جبال
countries	دول	host	مضيف
classmates	زملاء الفصل	guest	ضيف
task	مهمة	snow	جليد / تمطر ثلجًا



Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

get to	يصل إلي	plan for	يخطط لـ
get wet	يبتل	on the way to	في الطريق إلي
stay warm	يظل دافئا	a radio show about	عرض إذاعي عن

Read and learn

streetcar ترام	This travels around a town or city. ينتقل حول البلدة أو المدينة. It can carry about 40 people. يحمل حوالي 40 شخص. It doesn't use gasoline. لا يستخدم البنزين. It's electric. إنه كهربي.
ferry عَبّارة	.This takes people or goods across rivers, lakes, or the sea تنقل الناس أو البضائع عبر الأنهار ، البحيرات و البحار. It can be quite small or very big ممكن أن تكون صغيرة قليلا أو كبيرة جداً
subway مترو الانفاق	This travels underground. People use it to travel around cities. هذا يسافر تحت الأرض. يستخدمه الناس للسفر حول المدن. It's fast and it isn't expensive. إنه سريع و ليس باهظ الثمن.
cab سيارة أجرة (تاكسي)	This transports people on roads around cities or towns. هذه تنقل الناس عبر الطرقات حول المدن الكبيرة والمدن الصغيرة. Only three or four people can travel in this. يمكن لثلاثة أو أربعة أشخاص فقط الانتقال بها. It can be expensive. ممكن أن تكون باهظة الثمن.

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف علي هذه الكلمات.

Listen and read.

Host : Welcome back, everyone. Now we are going to take calls from some of our listeners. We want to know how children get to school where you live. Are there any advantages or disadvantages? Hello, you're our first caller.

مرحبًا بكم من جديد. الآن سنتلقى مكالمات من بعض مستمعينا. نريد أن نعرف كيف يصل الأطفال إلى المدرسة حيث يعيشون. هل هناك أي مزايا أو عيوب؟ مرحبًا، أنت المتصل الأول معنا.

Astrid : Hi, this is Astrid from the Netherlands. A lot of children ride their bikes to school in my country. I think something like 75% of children actually. As you might know, the Netherlands is a very flat country, so it is easy to ride a bike - you don't have to go up any big hills or mountains. There are also a lot of bike paths. An advantage is that you exercise on the way to school. Another advantage is that it is good for the environment. A disadvantage is the weather -the Netherlands is a very rainy country so sometimes we get wet. My cousins live in Belgium, and they ride bikes to school too.

مرحبًا، أنا أستريد من هولندا. يركب الكثير من الأطفال دراجاتهم إلى المدرسة في بلدي. أعتقد أن ما يقرب من 75٪ من الأطفال في الواقع. كما تعلم، فإن هولندا بلد خالية من التضاريس، لذا فمن السهل أن تركب دراجة هوائية - ولا يتعين عليك صعود أي تلال أو جبال كبيرة. هناك أيضًا الكثير من مسارات الدراجات. الميزة هي أنك تمارس الرياضة في طريقك إلى المدرسة. ميزة أخرى هي أنها جيدة للبيئة. العيب هو الطقس - هولندا بلد ممطر جدًا لذا نبتل أحيانًا. يعيش أبناء عمي في بلجيكا، ويركبون الدراجات إلى المدرسة أيضًا.

Host : Thank you, Astrid. Now for our next caller. شكرا لك، أستريد. الآن المتصل التالي.

Ethan : Hi there. I'm Ethan and I'm calling from Vermont in the United States. Children here usually take a school bus. We live in the mountains, and in the winter there's a lot of snow. It's too far to walk to school if you live in the country. School buses are good because they can travel long distances and keep children safe and warm. An advantage is that the school buses can carry a lot of children at the same time. A disadvantage is that they can't drive when there is a big snowstorm. So, sometimes school is closed on those days. Another disadvantage is that the buses use gasoline. I hope we get electric buses soon.

أهلاً. أنا إيثان وأتصل من ولاية فيرمونت في الولايات المتحدة. عادة ما يستقل الأطفال هنا حافلة مدرسية. نحن نعيش في الجبال، وفي الشتاء يتساقط الكثير من الثلج. يعد الذهاب إلى المدرسة بعيدًا جدًا إذا كنت تعيش في الريف. تعتبر الحافلات المدرسية جيدة لأنها تستطيع السفر لمسافات طويلة والحفاظ على سلامة الأطفال ودفئهم. والميزة هي أن الحافلات المدرسية يمكن أن تحمل الكثير من الأطفال في نفس الوقت. العيب هو أنهم لا يستطيعون القيادة عندما تكون هناك عاصفة ثلجية كبيرة. لذلك، في بعض الأحيان تكون المدرسة مغلقة في تلك الأيام. عيب آخر هو أن الحافلات تستخدم البنزين. آمل أن نحصل على حافلات كهربائية قريبًا.

 Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

Host : Thanks, Ethan. Next caller, please. شكرًا، إيثان، المتصل التالي، من فضلك.

Malti : Good afternoon. My name's Multi and I'm from Bangladesh. In Bangladesh, children use different kinds of transportation to get to school, like buses. But a lot of people also use boats. This may surprise you, but my school is on a boat. In the morning, the children wait for boat to arrive. We all get on and then pick up more children. Finally, we stop the boat on the side of the river and have our classes. Boats are good here because there is a lot of water. When there are the heavy rains, called monsoons, the roads are even underwater and you have to use a boat. One advantage of my school boat is that every child can go to it - even if their parents don't have a boat. One disadvantage is that we don't have a playground, so we play on the boat.

مساء الخير. اسمي مالتي وأنا من بنجلاديش. في بنجلاديش، يستخدم الأطفال أنواعًا مختلفة من وسائل النقل للوصول إلى المدرسة، مثل الحافلات. لكن الكثير من الأشخاص يستخدمون القوارب أيضًا. قد يفاجئك هذا، لكن مدرستي على متن قارب. في الصباح، ينتظر الأطفال وصول القارب. نتقدم جميعًا ثم نلتقط المزيد من الأطفال. وأخيرًا، يقف القارب على ضفة النهر ونبدأ دروسنا. القوارب جيدة هنا لأن هناك الكثير من المياه، وعندما تهطل الأمطار الغزيرة، والتي تسمى بالأمطار الموسمية، تكون الطرق تحت الماء ويجب عليك استخدام قارب. إحدى ميزات القارب المدرسي الخاص بي هي أن كل طفل يمكنه الذهاب إليه - حتى لو لم يكن لدى والديه قارب. أحد العيوب هو أنه ليس لدينا ملعب، لذلك نلعب على متن القارب.

Amy : Hi. My name's Amy and I live in Mackinac island. It's a very small island in Lake Michigan in the US. It's a popular tourist destination. People like to take canoe trips on the lake in the summer, or they ride bikes around the island. The island is unusual because there are no cars and no buses. In winter it's very cold for 5 or 6 months and it snows heavily, so we can't ride our bikes to school like we do in summer. So, in winter we travel to school by snowmobile. My dad drives the snowmobile and I sit behind him. It's fun, and it's more exciting than riding a bike.

أهلاً. اسمي إيمي وأنا أعيش في جزيرة ماكيناك. إنها جزيرة صغيرة جدًا في بحيرة ميتشيجان في الولايات المتحدة. إنها مقصد سياحي شهير. يحب الناس القيام برحلات الزورق في البحيرة في فصل الصيف، أو ركوب الدراجات حول الجزيرة. الجزيرة غير عادية لأنه لا توجد بها سيارات ولا حافلات. في الشتاء يكون الجو باردًا جدًا لمدة ٥ أو ٦ أشهر وتتساقط الثلوج بغزارة، لذلك لا يمكننا ركوب دراجاتنا إلى المدرسة كما نفعل في الصيف. لذلك، في فصل الشتاء، نسافر إلى المدرسة بعربة الثلج. والدي يقود عربة الثلج وأنا أجلس خلفه. إنها ممتعة، وأكثر إثارة من ركوب الدراجة.

General Activities

1 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box:

leave - play - by - subway

Talia : Hi, Ahmed! How do you get to school?

Ahmed : Hello, Talia! I get to school 1) .... bus.

Talia : When do you 2) .... home?

Ahmed : At 7 o'clock. What about you?

Talia : I take the 3) ....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. In Egypt, most people take the .... to work.
   a) metro b) rocket c) ship d) bike
2. In Netherlands most people ride ....
   a) mules b) bikes c) elephants d) monkeys
3. When it rains, I get ....
   a) dry b) clean c) wet d) hot
4. He gets exercise .... the way to school.
   a) in b) on c) at d) by
5. You can use a .... to travel on water.
   a) car b) rocket c) ferry d) bus
6. Airplanes are the .... means of transportation.
   a) fast b) fastest c) faster d) good

3 Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:

How to get to school

Guiding elements:

(subway - fast - takes - safe - greener)

....

....

Writing Corner

Cities nowadays

I love my city very much, but traffic became a big problem. Every morning I have to sit in a traffic jam on my way to school. The cars and buses stop, and we can't move. The trip to school sometimes takes us an hour. We have good public transportation, but the buses don't always go to the destination you want.

A cleaner urban environment

To have a cleaner urban environment, you should have many things. You should have green spaces to have clean air. You should have bike paths to reduce pollution. The residents should help by using recycling bins. We should recycle water to water the green spaces.

Transportation in the past

A long time ago, the only types of transportation for humans were walking, running, and swimming. After that, humans began to use animals like mules, donkeys and horses. Then came small boats like canoes. When people invented the wheel, they started to use wagons and carts. The invention of the steam engine changed transportation. It became easier and faster.

Ideal city

My city is located on the Red Sea. There are beautiful homes, schools, and a hospital. There is a clean park. I believe that parks are very important for us. We get electricity from a solar energy farm in the desert. In my opinion, solar energy is better for the environment. I go to school by bike. It is a good way to protect the environment.

Help your child learn how to write a paragraph.
ساعد طفلك أن يعرف كيف يكتب فقرة.

Dictation on Unit (11)

Lesson (1)

يقابل	قف ....
ازدحام المرور	يسير ببطء ....
أنشطة	ارتدي حزام الأمان ....
يصل في خلال	يستغرق ساعة ....
أمام	يتحرك ....

Lesson (2)

يبتكر	مساحات خضراء ....
يحتاج إلى	يعيد تدوير ....
معدن	متطوع ....
ورق	سكان ....
زجاج	يقلل ....

Lesson (3)

بضائع	المشي ....
يبدأ	صاروخ ....
يدار ب	زورق ....
خيل	بغل ....
عربة كارو	قطار بحري ....

Lesson (4)

يولد (كهرباء)	سطح ....
يزود	قناه ....
مهتم	بخار الماء ....
نظام	مسار مائي ....
طاقة الرياح	كهرباء ....

Lessons (5 & 6)

مزايا	طائرة ....
يبتل	قطار ....
يخطط لـ	مترو ....
جبال	عبّارة ....
زملاء فصل	سيارة أجرة ....

Help your child dictate these words.
ساعد طفلك في إملاء هذه الكلمات.

Review on Unit (11)

Vocabulary

transportation	النقل و المواصلات	destination	وجهة الوصول
airplane	طائرة	ferry	عبّارة / معدية
cab	سيارة أجرة	mule	بغل
canal	قناة	on foot	سيرًا على الأقدام
canoe	زورق	on time	في الوقت المحدد
rocket	صاروخ	steam train	قطار بخاري
streetcar	ترام	subway	مترو الأنفاق
traffic	المرور	traffic lights	إشارات المرور
traffic jam	ازدحام مروري	trip	رحلة
wagon	عربة نقل	walking	المشي
waterway	ممر مائي	bike path	مسار للدراجات
green spaces	مساحات خضراء	garbage	قمامة
recycle	يعيد تدوير	recycling bins	صناديق إعادة التدوير
reduce	يقلل	residents	السكان
reuse	يعيد استخدام	roof	سطح
trash	قمامة	volunteer	متطوع - يتطوع
water vapor	بخار الماء	highway	طريق سريع
Stop	قف	car	سيارة
Go slow	سر ببطء	wear a seat belt	ارتدي حزان أمان
Don't turn left	لا تتجه لليسار	boat	قارب
animals on the road	حيوانات على الطريق	bike	دراجة

Comparative & Superlative

Comparative Adjectives

Short adjectives

adj. الصفة + er + than

➡ The coast is greener than the desert.

Long adjectives

more / less + adj صفة طويلة + than

➡ Gold is more expensive than silver.

Superlative Adjectives

Short adjectives

the + adj. صفة طويلة + est

➡ The Nile is the longest river in the world.

Long adjectives

the most / the least + adj. صفة

➡ This is the most interesting film.

The Prefix البادئات (dis - re - un)

- **un = not:** ➡ Kareem is unhappy.
- **dis = not:** ➡ I dislike playing tennis, but I like football.
- **re = again:** ➡ You can recycle old things.

Exam On Unit (11)

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. How long does the trip to school take?

....

2. How often do you get into traffic jam?

....

3. What color is the traffic light for "Go"?

....

4. When do you get up?

....

2 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box:

walks - located - spaces - coast

Heba : Do you live in a village or a city, Nermeen?

Nermeen : I live in a city.

Heba : Where is your city located?

Nermeen : It's located on the Red Sea 1) ....?

Heba : Do you have green 2) ....?

Nermeen : Yes, we do.

Heba : What can people do there?

Nermeen : They can go for 3) ...., ride their bikes, and enjoy being in the nature.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

The River Nile was the most important highway in <u>ancient</u> Egypt. All the major cities were along the River Nile. That's why the Egyptians traveled mostly along the river.

The Egyptians built boats and ships to use them to travel on the Nile. They built small, simple boats from papyrus and rope. People used these boats for fishing or traveling short distances. They used oars to make the boats move.

The Egyptians built larger boats for traveling, fishing, and transporting goods.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The underlined word "ancient" means very ....

a) small b) new c) old d) big

2. They built boats and ships to travel on the ....

a) Lake b) Canal c) Nile d) Sea

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Why did the Egyptians travel along the Nile?

....

4. What did the Egyptians use to make the boats move?

....

5. What is the general idea of the text?

....

6. What did they build for transporting goods?

....

4 The Reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Grandma volunteered to help. ( )

2. Grandma sew some clothes for the boys. ( )

B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

3. Waleed went to his .... grocery store.

a) mum's b) dad's c) grandma's d) grandpa's

4. Anissa's dad works at the ....

a) market b) school c) beach d) shop

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. What is the .... form of renewable energy?
   a) cheap b) cheaper c) cheapest d) more cheap
2. A gold medal is .... than a silver medal.
   a) good b) better c) worst d) best
3. Solar energy is .... ecological than fossil fuels.
   a) more b) most c) much d) least
4. Benban Solar Park in Egypt is the .... park in Africa.
   a) large b) larger c) largest d) most

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. cities - Which - a subway - have - Egypt - in - ?

   ....

2. oars - move - the boats - They - to - used - make - .

   ....

7 Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:

A plan for your ideal city

Guiding elements:

1. Where is it located?
2. What places are there?
3. How do you get electricity?
4. What kinds of transportation are there?

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

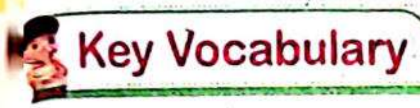
Unit 12 A global challenge

تحدي عالمي



In this unit, the students will ...

• understand environments around the world.	يفهم البيئات حول العالم.
• learn about renewable and non-renewable energy.	يتعلم عن الطاقة المتجددة وغير المتجددة.
• form and use the present continuous.	يكون ويستخدم زمن المضارع المستمر.
• read about different energy sources.	يقرأ عن مصادر الطاقة المختلفة.
• understand the meaning of words in context.	يفهم معاني الكلمات في السياق.
• compare and order high numbers.	يقارن ويرتب الأرقام الكبيرة.
• talk about how to help the environment.	يتحدث عن كيفية مساعدة البيئة.
• make a competition entry to improve their environment.	إعداد مشاركة في مسابقة لتحسين بيئتهم.



Lesson (1) ROCKS AND STONES

Key Vocabulary كلمات أساسية Listen and repeat.

Geology
علم الجيولوجيا



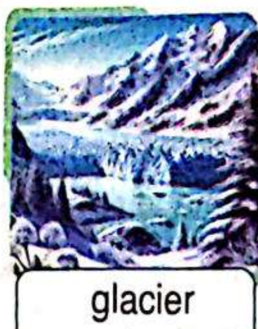
flood
فيضان



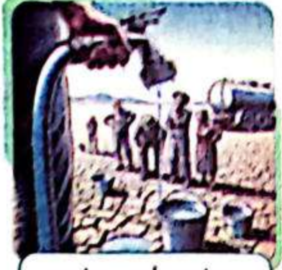
erosion
تآكل التربة



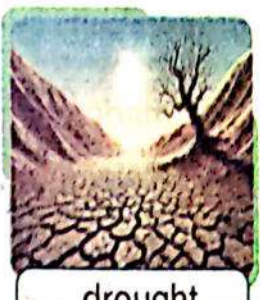
landslide
انهيار - انزلاق التربة



glacier
نهر جليدي



water shortage
نقص المياه



drought
جفاف



tsunami
تسونامي (موجة البحر الهائلة)

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

natural process	عملية طبيعية	heavy rains	أمطار غزيرة
limestone	حجر جيري	humans	البشر
flow	تدفق - جريان	agriculture	الزراعة
currents	التيارات المائية	fossil fuels	الوقود الحفري
riverbank	ضفة النهر	climate change	تغير المناخ
sea level	مستوى سطح البحر	marble	رخام
geological	جيولوجي	chemicals	مواد كيميائية
atmosphere	الغلاف الجوي	mountains	جبال
acid rain	مطر حمضي	soil	تربة (زراعية)

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
erode	يتفتت/ يتآكل	eroded
cause	يسبب	caused
burn	يحرق	burned/burnt
explode	ينفجر	exploded
damage	يدمر	damaged
mix	يخلط	mixed
affect	يؤثر على	affected

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
make	يجعل / يصنع	made
become	يصبح	became
rise	يرتفع	rose
hold	يمسك	held
feed	يطعم	fed
grow	يزرع	grew

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

move from... to ...	ينتقل من ... إلى...	made of	مصنوع من
result in	يؤدى إلى	a piece of	قطعة من
for a long time	لفترة طويلة	mix with	يختلط بـ
slow down	يُبطئ	in danger	في خطر

Did you know?

Nearly 71% of the surface of the earth is water. About 95% of all the water is salt water.

ما يقرب من ٧١٪ من سطح الأرض عبارة عن ماء. حوالي ٩٥٪ من الماء مياه مالحه.

Did you know?



The Sphinx is made of a large piece of a type of stone called limestone (حجر الجير). Acid rain damages limestone and another stone called marble (رخام). So, acid rain can also damage the Sphinx.

تمثال أبو الهول مصنوع من قطعة كبيرة من نوع من الحجر تسمى الجيري. تتسبب الأمطار الحمضية في إتلاف الحجر الجيري و حجر آخر يسمى الرخام. لذلك، يمكن للأمطار الحمضية أن تلحق الضرر بأبي الهول.

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك ان يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Lesson (1)

Listen, look and read.

Erosion is a natural process. It happens when rock and soil is moved from one place to another by water, wind, or flows. The waves and currents in the sea can erode beaches, and rivers can erode riverbanks. Heavy rains or winds can also cause the land to erode. Different types of flows- floods, landslides, tsunamis, or glaciers-also erode the land. Humans can cause erosion too. Heavy agriculture is one way that people do this. Burning fossil fuels is another way because it results in climate change. Climate change causes sea levels to rise and this results in more erosion.



التعرية عملية طبيعية. ويحدث ذلك عندما يتم نقل الصخور والتربة من مكان إلى آخر عن طريق الماء أو الرياح أو التدفقات. يمكن أن تؤدى الأمواج والتيارات في البحر إلى تآكل الشواطئ، و يمكن أن تؤدي الأنهار إلى تآكل ضفاف الأنهار. كما يمكن أن تسبب الأمطار الغزيرة أو الرياح في تآكل الأرض. أنواع مختلفة من التدفقات - الفيضانات، والانهيارات الأرضية، وأمواج تسونامي، أو الأنهار الجليدية تؤدي أيضا إلي تآكل الأرض. يمكن أن يتسبب البشر أيضا في التآكل. الزراعة الكثيفة هي إحدى الطرق التي يقوم بها الناس. يعد حرق الوقود الحفري طريقة أخرى لأنه يؤدي إلى تغير المناخ. يتسبب تغير المناخ إلى ارتفاع مستوى سطح البحر، مما يؤدي إلى المزيد من التعرية.

Drought happens where there is not enough rain for a long time. When this happens, rivers and lakes become dry. Farmers cannot grow food and nature is in danger. When people do not have all the water that they need, we say that there is a water shortage.



الجفاف يحدث في حالة عدم وجود أمطار كافية لفترة طويلة. عندما يحدث هذا تجف الأنهار و البحيرات. لا يستطيع المزارعون زراعة الغذاء و الطبيعة تكون في خطر. عندما لا يتوفر لدي الناس كل المياه التي يحتاجون إليها، نقول إن هناك نقصاً في المياه.

Help your child learn about geology and climate change.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن الجيولوجيا وتغير المناخ .

Listen and read.



When heavy rain or strong winds move soil and rocks from one place to another, it creates erosion. Human activity such as heavy agriculture can also create this. During a drought, there isn't enough rain, and rivers and lakes become dry. There isn't enough water and there is a water shortage. This affects the environment and farmers can't grow food or feed their animals. Too much rain in one area can cause a flood. When too much rain falls on hills and mountains and there aren't enough trees to hold the water, there can also be a landslide. This is when the soil and rocks move and fall away.

عندما تنقل الأمطار الغزيرة أو الرياح القوية التربة والصخور من مكان إلى آخر، فإنها تسبب التآكل. النشاط البشري مثل الزراعة المكثفة يمكن أن تسبب هذا أيضًا. أثناء الجفاف، لا يكون هناك ما يكفي من الأمطار، وتصبح الأنهار والبحيرات جافة. ليس هناك ما يكفي من الماء، وهناك نقص في المياه. وهذا يؤثر على البيئة ولا يستطيع المزارعون زراعة الغذاء أو إطعام حيواناتهم. هطول الأمطار الغزيرة في منطقة واحدة يمكن أن يسبب فيضانًا. عندما تهطل أمطار غزيرة على التلال والجبال ولا يكون هناك ما يكفي من الأشجار لامتصاص هذه المياه، يمكن أن يحدث أيضًا انهيارًا أرضيًا. وذلك عندما تتحرك التربة والصخور وتسقط.

Read and match.

1. When it doesn't rain for a long time,
2. When rock or soil is moved,
3. Heavy rains or winds
4. There's a water shortage

a. can cause erosion.
b. when people don't have enough water.
c. there is sometimes a drought.
d. we call it erosion.

Help your child learn about geology and climate change. ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن الجيولوجيا وتغير المناخ.

General Activities

1 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

rain - farmers - drought - dry

Omar : We are going to learn about drought.

Mazen : What does it mean?

Omar : It means there isn't 1) .... for a long time.

Mazen : What happens to rivers and lakes?

Omar : They become 2) ....

Mazen : So, 3) .... can't grow food!

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

shortage - nature - dry - water

Drought happens where there is not enough rain for a long time. When this happens, rivers and lakes become 1) .... Farmers cannot grow food and 2) .... is in danger. When people do not have all the water that they need, we say that there is a water 3) ....

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Erosion is a/an .... process.
   a) good   b) natural   c) artificial   d) important
2. Drought happens when we don't have .... for a long time.
   a) rain   b) rocks   c) stones   d) sand
3. The waves and currents in the sea can .... beaches.
   a) burn   b) erode   c) grow   d) draw
4. Heavy .... can cause erosion.
   a) culture   b) agriculture   c) nature   d) future

5. Climate change causes sea levels to ....

a) rise b) need c) burn d) hide

6. There's a water.............................. when people don't have enough water.

a) age b) shortage c) page d) edge

7. The Sphinx is made of ....

a) wood b) glass c) limestone d) leather

8. We should slow .... erosion.

a) up b) down c) in d) at

9. When a volcano explodes under the sea, this creates a huge wave called ....

a) flood b) drought c) tsunami d) landslide

10. A .... is a huge ice flow that moves very slowly across the land.

a) glacier b) drought c) flood d) erosion

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. can - erosion - Humans - cause - .

....

2. causes - change - Burning - fossil fuels - climate - .

....

3. don't - We - water - enough - have - .

....

4. Sphinx - made - The - is - limestone - of - .

....

5 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Drought happens where there is not enough rain for a long time. When this happens, rivers and lakes become dry. Farmers cannot grow food and nature is in danger. When people do not have all the water that they need, we say that there's a water shortage.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. During a drought, rivers and lakes become ....

   a) hot b) dry c) cold d) cool

2. The underlined word "danger" is opposite of ....

   a) safety b) harm c) risk d) threat

B) Answer the following questions.

3. When does drought happen?

....

4. What happens to farmers during a drought?

....

5. What is the main idea of the text?

....

6. Can farmers grow food when nature is in danger?

....

6 Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:

Erosion

Guiding elements:

(natural - rock - soil - move - waves - humans)

....

....

....

LANGUAGE

Vocabulary كلمات

solar energy	الطاقة الشمسية	polar bear	الدب القطبي
newspaper	جريدة	rules	قواعد / قوانين
habitat	موطن	electric car	سيارة كهربائية
ice cap	غطاء جليدي	ecofriendly	صديق للبيئة
ocean	محيط	shade	ظل

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
save	ينقذ/يوفر/يدخر	saved
rain	تمطر	rained
care	يهتم	cared

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
burn	يحرق	burned / burnt
buy	يشتري	bought
go	يذهب	went

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

for example	على سبيل المثال	save the plant	يحفظ النباتات
care about	يهتم بـ	save money	يدخر مال

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

and read.

What will an electric car do?

Tarek wants to make his house more ecofriendly. If Tarek uses electricity from solar energy, for example, he will save money. What will he do with all that extra money ? Tarek will buy an electric car if he saves enough money. If he buys an electric car, Tarek will help the environment.

يريد طارق أن يجعل منزله أكثر صداقة للبيئة. فإذا استخدم طارق الكهرباء من الطاقة الشمسية، على سبيل المثال، فإنه سيوفر المال. ماذا سيفعل بكل تلك الأموال الإضافية؟ سوف يشتري طارق سيارة كهربائية إذا وفر ما يكفي من المال. إذا اشترى سيارة كهربائية، فإن طارق سيساعد البيئة.

Listening

Noha : Hi, Mona. How are you and the family?

مرحبا منى. كيف حالك أنت وعائلتك؟

Mona : We're fine thanks, but there's a water shortage here.

نحن بخير شكرا، ولكن هناك نقص في المياه هنا.

Noha : Oh, dear. What will you do?

أوه، يا عزيزتي. ماذا ستفعلين؟

Mona : Well, we'll have to find ways to save water. Dad will stop washing his car.

حسنًا، سيتعين علينا إيجاد طرق لتوفير المياه. سيتوقف أبي عن غسل سيارته.

Noha : That's a good idea. What about your mom?

هذه فكرة جيدة. وماذا عن والدتك؟

Mona : Mom will reuse water from the kitchen for the garden.

ستعيد أمي استخدام المياه من المطبخ من أجل الحديقة.

Noha : That will help the plants. Will you have fewer showers?

وهذا سوف يساعد النباتات. هل ستستخدمين الدش عدد مرات أقل؟

Mona : No, I won't. But I'll have shorter showers. That will save a lot of water

لا، لن أفعل. لكن سأستخدمه فترات أقل. سيوفر ذلك الكثير من الماء.



The Future Simple Tense زمن المستقبل البسيط

Form: **Subject (الفاعل) + will + inf. (مصدر الفعل)**

e.g. The drought will cause a water shortage. e.g. It will rain tomorrow.

Usage:

We use the future simple to talk about "future predictions"

يستخدم زمن المستقبل البسيط للتحدث عن التنبؤات المستقبلية.

Keywords:

tomorrow	غدًا	soon	قريباً
in the future	في المستقبل	next (week-Friday-summer-year)	القادم
in + (a future period) (2030 - 2050)			

Negative: **Subject (الفاعل) + will + not + inf. (مصدر الفعل)**

e.g. We will not burn fossil fuels. e.g. It won't rain tomorrow.

Yes / No question:

Will + subject (الفاعل) + inf. (مصدر الفعل) ...?

e.g. Will you go shopping tomorrow? Yes, I will. No, I won't.

Note 'll = will / won't = will not

- **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.**

1. .... you go shopping tomorrow?
   a) Did b) Is c) Will d) Are
2. Malak .... her aunt next week.
   a) visit b) visits c) visiting d) will visit
3. We .... burn fossil fuels.
   a) are b) have c) won't d) is

Help your child learn the future simple.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم زمن المستقبل البسيط.

Lesson (2)

"If"(First conditional) (إذا-لو) الحالة الشرطية الأولى



If + sub. + present simple, sub. + will + inf.

✦ **Note: The use of comma**

e.g. If we use electric vehicles, we will help the environment.

Sub. + will + inf. + if + sub. + present simple

✦ **Note: No comma here**

e.g. We will help the environment if we use electric cars.

We use the first conditional to talk about something that is possible in the future. ✦ تستخدم الحالة الشرطية الأولى لتدل على شئ محتمل الحدوث في المستقبل

e.g. If it rains, there will be a flood.

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I will .... an electric car.
   a) buys b) buy c) buying d) bought
2. If she .... fossil fuels, she won't help the environment.
   a) use b) uses c) used d) using
3. .... our cities have more bike paths, people will exercise more.
   a) While b) Will c) Can d) If
4. I .... the environment if I use solar panels on my roof.
   a) help b) will help c) helps d) helping
5. Tarek will buy an electric car if he .... enough money.
   a) save b) saves c) will save d) saved
6. If I run, I .... the bus.
   a) catch b) catches c) will catch d) catching
7. If Mona has shorter showers, she .... a lot of water.
   a) save b) will save c) saves d) saved

General Activities

1 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

won't - if - will - electricity

Asmaa : What will you do if you want to help the environment?

Jana : I 1) .... burn fossil fuels.

Asmaa : What else will you do?

Jana : I 2) .... put solar panels on my roof.

Asmaa : Why?

Jana : To make my own 3) .... and help the environment.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. He .... his sister if she needs help.
   a) help b) helps c) will help d) helping
2. I .... go to school tomorrow.
   a) don't b) won't c) haven't d) am not
3. Adel will .... football next Friday.
   a) play b) plays c) playing d) played
4. .... Malak visit the desert next holiday?
   a) Does b) Is c) Will d) Has
5. If the polar ice caps melt, sea levels ....
   a) rise b) rises c) will rise d) rising
6. They will travel ....
   a) yesterday b) tomorrow c) last week d) always
7. If it ...., there will be a flood.
   a) rain b) rains c) raining d) rained

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

8. If we .... ecofriendly energies, our cities will be cleaner.
   a) use   b) uses   c) used   d) using
9. We .... the planet if we recycle old things.
   a) save   b) saves   c) will save   d) saved
10. I won't .... fossil fuels.
   a) use   b) uses   c) using   d) used
11. If Mazen studies hard, he .... succeed.
   a) will   b) do   c) has   d) would
12. If you plant trees, you will .... the environment.
   a) helps   b) help   c) helping   d) helped
13. We will .... to the park next week.
   a) goes   b) go   c) going   d) went

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. rain - tomorrow - It - will - .

....

2. will - the - Malak - visit - desert - .

....

3. you - Will - newspapers - these - recycle - old - ?

....

4. will - environment - I - the - help - .

....

5. a water - will - The drought - shortage - cause - .

....



Vocabulary كلمات

document	وثيقة	several	عديد - كثير
planet	كوكب	goals	اهداف
nations	أمم	headline	عنوان رئيسي
newspaper	جريدة	leaders	زعماء - قادة
agreement	اتفاقية	meeting	اجتماع
international	عالمي / دولي	global	عالمي
topic	موضوع	caption	تعليق على الصورة
coal	الفحم	report	تقرير
greenhouse gases	غازات مسببة للاحتباس الحراري	complicated	مُعقّد
reporter	صحفي	companies	شركات
serious effort	جهد كبير	together	معا
global warming	الاحتباس الحراري	immediately	في الحال

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Present		Past	Present		Past
summarize	يلخص	summarized	reduce	يقلل	reduced
define	يحدد - يُعَرِّف	defined	meet	يقابل	met
create	يخلق - يكوّن	created	become	يصبح	became

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Lesson (3)



Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

at home	بالمنزل	one way	طريق ذو اتجاه واحد
agree to	يوافق أن	in fact	في الواقع (الحقيقة)
decide to	يقرر أن	make a plan	يخطط

Definitions تعريفات

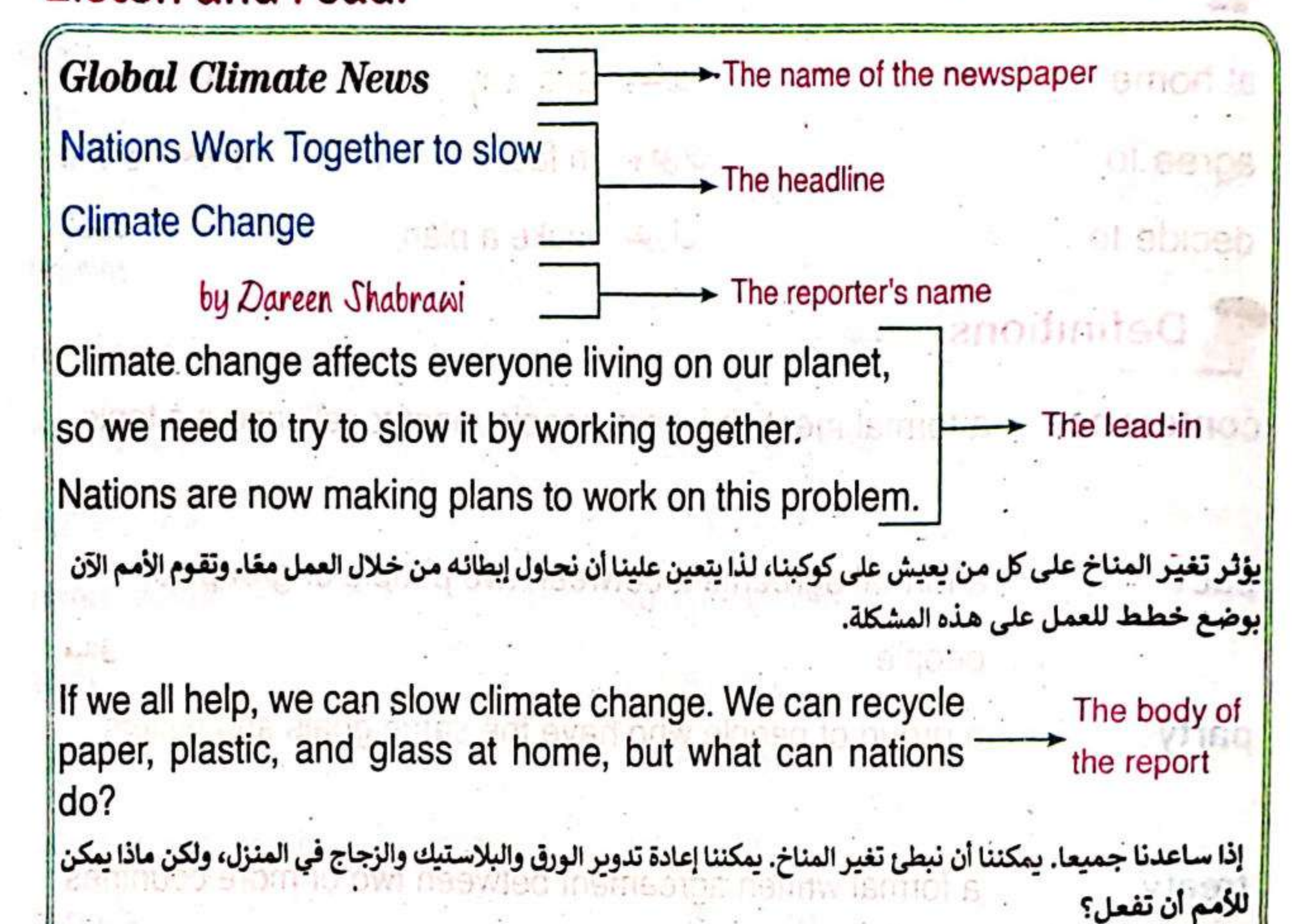
conference	a formal meeting where people meet to talk about a topic مؤتمر
pact	a formal agreement between two people or groups of people ميثاق
party	a group of people who have the same goals and beliefs حزب
treaty	a formal written agreement between two or more countries معاهدة
the lead-in	this is one or two sentences that summarize the report افتتاحية (جملة أو اثنين تلخص المقال).
the headline	this is the title of the report العنوان الرئيسي
the body of the report	this is the long part you read موضوع التقرير
a caption	this is a description of a picture تعليق على صورة

Did you know?

The foundation Youth Love Egypt (YLE) has planted thousands of trees along the Nile and canals.

قامت مؤسسة (شباب يحب مصر) بزراعة الآف الأشجار على طول نهر النيل والقنوات.

Listen and read.



Global Climate News → The name of the newspaper

Nations Work Together to slow Climate Change → The headline

by *Dareen Shabrawi* → The reporter's name

Climate change affects everyone living on our planet, so we need to try to slow it by working together. Nations are now making plans to work on this problem. → The lead-in

يؤثر تغير المناخ على كل من يعيش على كوكبنا، لذا يتعين علينا أن نحاول إبطائه من خلال العمل معًا. وتقوم الأمم الآن بوضع خطط للعمل على هذه المشكلة.

If we all help, we can slow climate change. We can recycle paper, plastic, and glass at home, but what can nations do? → The body of the report

إذا ساعدنا جميعا، يمكننا أن نبطئ تغير المناخ. يمكننا إعادة تدوير الورق والبلاستيك والزجاج في المنزل، ولكن ماذا يمكن للأمم أن تفعل؟

A picture

Last week, leaders from every country in the world met for the United Nations Climate Change Conference (called COP26) in Glasgow, Scotland. They talked about what they can do to slow climate change, but this was not the first time they met. In fact, it was their 26th meeting.

في الأسبوع الماضي، اجتمع زعماء من كل دول العالم لحضور مؤتمر الأمم المتحدة لتغير المناخ (المسمى COP26) في جلاسكو، اسكتلندا. وتحدثوا عما يمكنهم فعله لإبطاء تغير المناخ، لكن هذه لم تكن المرة الأولى التي التقت الدول فيها. في الواقع، كان هذا هو اجتماعهم السادس والعشرون.

TOGETHER FOR OUR PLANET

WELCOME TO GLASGOW

Leaders from all over the world met in Glasgow, Scotland.

A caption

On December 12th, 1995, world leaders had a very important meeting. 196 parties signed the Paris Agreement. The parties agreed to reduce global warming to less than 2 degrees Celsius. To do this, countries agreed to start reducing greenhouse gases immediately. This was the first time that so many nations made a serious effort to slow global warming.

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

في الثاني عشر من ديسمبر عام 1995، كان لزعماء العالم اجتماع مهم للغاية. 196 عضوًا وقعوا على اتفاق باريس. واتفقت جميع الأطراف على خفض ظاهرة الاحتباس الحراري إلى أقل من درجتين مئويتين. وللقيام بذلك، اتفقت البلدان على البدء في الحد من الغازات المسببة للاحتباس الحراري على الكوكب على الفور. وكانت هذه هي المرة الأولى التي تبذل فيها العديد من الدول جهودًا جادة لإبطاء ظاهرة الاحتباس الحراري.

Another important meeting was COP25 in Madrid, Spain in 2019. Greta Thunberg, a teenager from Sweden, asked leaders to do more to slow climate change. After that, Thunberg became famous all over the world.

وكان الاجتماع المهم الآخر هو مؤتمر الأمم المتحدة المعني بتغير المناخ (COP25) في مدريد بإسبانيا في عام 2019. حيث طلبت غريتا ثونبرج، وهي مراهقة من السويد، من القادة بذل المزيد من الجهد لإبطاء تغير المناخ. بعد ذلك، أصبحت ثونبرج مشهورة في جميع أنحاء العالم.

This year at COP26, leaders signed a new document: the Glasgow Climate Pact. In this new pact, countries agreed to do several things. First, they decided to continue with the Paris Agreement. They also decided to stop using coal, a fossil fuel. Burning coal creates 40% of carbon dioxide emissions every year, so people must stop using it.

هذا العام، في مؤتمر الأمم المتحدة المعني بتغير المناخ (COP26)، وقع القادة على وثيقة جديدة: وثيقة جلاسكو للمناخ. وفي هذا الميثاق الجديد، اتفقت الدول على القيام بعدة أشياء. أولاً، قرروا الاستمرار في اتفاق باريس. كما قرروا التوقف عن استخدام الفحم، وهو وقود أحفوري. ويؤدي حرق الفحم إلى توليد ٪40 من انبعاثات ثاني أكسيد الكربون كل عام، لذا يتعين على الناس التوقف عن استخدامه.

Another important topic at the meeting was transportation. Car companies agreed to stop making vehicles that use fossil fuels by 2040 so they will make more electric vehicles. We must all slow climate change. Treaties like the Paris Agreement are one way for nations to work together to do this.

وكان النقل موضوع آخر مهم في الاجتماع. اتفقت شركات السيارات على التوقف عن تصنيع المركبات التي تستخدم الوقود الأحفوري بحلول عام 2040 حتى تتمكن من تصنيع المزيد من السيارات الكهربائية. يجب علينا جميعاً أن نعمل على إبطاء تغير المناخ. تعد المعاهدات مثل اتفاقية باريس إحدى الطرق التي تعمل بها الدول معًا للقيام بذلك.

Conjunctions الروابط

A conjunctions: is a word that joins words and sentences.

أداة الربط هي كلمة تربط الكلمات والجمل ببعض.

and و

- To connect two similar ideas: تستخدم (and) لربط فكرتين متشابهين.

- My family recycles paper and glass.

but لكن

- To connect two different or contrasting ideas:

تستخدم (but) لربط فكرتين مختلفين أو متناقضين.

- The leaders went to a conference, but they didn't sign a treaty.

or أو

- To express choices: تستخدم (or) للتعبير عن الاختيارات.

- Do they use solar energy or do they burn coal?

so لذلك

- To connect cause / reason and results: تستخدم (so) لربط السبب والنتائج.

- My dad was at the conference so he is really tired.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The parties agreed to reduce air pollution .... plastic waste.
   a) so b) or c) but d) and
2. We need to stop pollution now .... it will be late.
   a) or b) so c) and d) but
3. All countries must reduce air pollution .... water pollution.
   a) and b) but c) or d) so
4. I went to the meeting, ... I didn't find anyone.
   a) so b) or c) but d) and

Help your child identify conjunctions.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. When did world leaders have a very important meeting?

....

2. How many parties signed the Paris Agreement?

....

3. What did the parties agree to?

....

4. What did countries start doing?

....

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

coal - problem - parties - fossil

Climate change affects everyone living on our planet. Nations are now making plans to work on this 1) .... 196 parties signed the Paris Agreement. The 2) .... agreed to reduce global warming to less than 2 degrees Celsius. At COP26, leaders decided to stop using 3) ...., and fossil fuels. Burning coal creates 40% of carbon dioxide emissions every year, so people must stop it.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. When we burn fossil fuels, it is .... for the environment.
   a) good b) bad c) important d) helpful
2. All countries must reduce air pollution .... water pollution.
   a) but b) so c) and d) or
3. The leaders had a conference, ... they couldn't agree to anything.
   a) or b) so c) but d) and
4. The .... is a short description of a picture.
   a) reporter's name b) lead-in c) caption d) headline

5. Do you use solar energy .... coal?

a) but b) because c) or d) so

6. Sara was ill .... she didn't go to school.

a) but b) so c) and d) or

7. The long part you read in a newspaper report is called the ....

a) body b) headline c) caption d) picture

8. One or two sentences that summarize the report are called the ....

a) picture b) lead-in c) body d) caption

9. The leaders went to the conference .... they didn't sign a treaty.

a) and b) or c) but d) so

10. The .... means the person who wrote the report.

a) reporter's name b) headline

c) body of the report d) picture

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. change - is - Climate - problem - a dangerous - .

....

2. very - It's - to - important - recycle - .

....

3. agreement - is - a formal - A pact - .

....

4. must - People - stop - fossil - using - fuels - .

....

5. change - What - causes - climate - ?

....

5 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Nations work together to slow climate change. If we all help, we can slow climate change. We can recycle paper, plastic, and glass at home, but what can nations do? Last week, leaders from every country in the world met in Glasgow, Scotland. They decided to stop using coal. Burning coal creates 40% of carbon dioxide emissions every year, so people must stop using it. Another important topic was transportation. Car companies agreed to stop making vehicles that use fossil fuels by 2040 so they will make more electric cars. We must all slow climate change.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Climate .... is a dangerous problem.
   a) change b) chance c) chase d) charger
2. We must .... climate change.
   a) show b) share c) slow d) draw

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What is the main idea of the text? ....
5. How much carbon dioxide can burning coal create? ....
5. Where did the leaders meet? ....
6. What can we do at home to slow climate change? ....

6 Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:

Climate change

Guiding elements:

(affects - slow - recycle)

....

....

....

....

....

Lesson (4) WRITING

A newspaper report

Vocabulary كلمات

emergency	الطوارئ	replace	يستبدل
keep...clean	يحافظ على نظافة	imagine	يتخيل
for example	على سبيل المثال	daily	يومي
international	عالمي	discuss	يناقش
deforestation	إزالة الغابات	opinion	رأي
in fact	في الواقع	gasoline	بنزين - غازولين
useful	مفيد - نافع	news	أخبار

Writing skill

Newspaper report تقرير صحفي

- **When we write a newspaper report, we use facts and not opinions.** عندما نكتب تقريرًا في إحدى الصحف فإننا نستخدم الحقائق وليس الآراء.

Fact حقيقة	Opinion رأي
When we burn fossil fuels, we make global warming worse.	It isn't very important to recycle.
عندما نحرق الوقود الحفري، فإننا نجعل الاحتباس الحراري أسوأ.	ليس من المهم جدًا إعادة التدوير.

- **You can use these useful phrases when you write a newspaper report.** يمكنك استخدام هذه العبارات المفيدة عند كتابة تقرير صحيفة إخبارية

  - In fact, it was their 26th meeting.
  - For example, the parties agreed to reduce global warming to less than 2 degrees Celsius.

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات

A newspaper report model

name of newspaper:

GLOBAL NEWS

headline: WORLD LEADERS MEET IN CAIRO FOR CONFERENCE

by: Allam El-Saeed

lead-in: Deforestation is a global emergency. The world's leaders must act quickly to replace the world's forests.

picture:



caption: Deforestation in the Amazon

body: The world's leaders met today at a conference in Cairo to discuss the growing problem of deforestation. More than 25 leaders signed a treaty agreeing to plant billions of trees over the next five years.

General Activities

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What does the Suez Canal link?

....

2. Is the Suez Canal important?

....

3. Where do the ships travel to?

....

4. How many ships cross the Suez Canal every year?

....

2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. a global - Deforestation - is - emergency - .

....

2. newspaper - the - report - Who - wrote - ?

....

3. must - the - We - clean - keep - air - .

....

4. need - we - Why - do - trees - more - ?

....

3 Write a newspaper report about (what causes climate change and how people work together to stop climate change).

name of newspaper:

headline:

by:

lead-in:

picture:

caption:

body:

Lessons (5 & 6)

- THE FOOD WE EAT
- PROJECT

Look, listen and read.




lentils
عدس


beef
لحم بقري


rice
أرز


koshari
كشري


ketchup
كاتشب


falafel
فلافل (طعمية)


burger
برجر


cheese
جبن

wheat
قمح

chickpeas / hummus
حمص

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

favorite	مفضل / محبوب	food supplies	مؤن الطعام
conversation	محادثة	shopping list	قائمة تسوق
dishes	أطباق - آلات	ingredients	مكونات
an appetizer	طبق فاتح للشهية (مقبلات)	main course	الطبق الرئيسي
dessert	الحلو (بعد الأكل)	menu	قائمة طعام
plant-based meal	وجبة نباتية	drinks	مشروبات

Study the following.

Foods from plants

spaghetti	إسباجتي	rice	أرز	crisps	مقرمشات
French fries	بطاطس مقلية	pasta	مكرونة	lentils	عدس
ketchup	كاتشب	falafel	فلافل	spices	توابل
oat milk	شوفان بالحليب	bread	خبز	chickpeas / hummus	حمص
popcorn	فشار	garlic	ثوم	olive oil	زيت زيتون

Foods from animals

yogurt	زبادي	meat balls	كرات اللحم	cheese	جبن
milk	لبن	honey	عسل النحل	meat	لحم
beef	لحم بقري	butter	زبدة	burger	برجر
omelette	الأومليت / عجة البيض	eggs	بيض	chicken	لحم دجاج

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات

Listen and read.

Nagwa : I'm hungry. Can we have a burger this evening, please, Mom?

أنا جائعة. هل يمكننا تناول البرجر هذا المساء من فضلك يا أمي؟

Mom : No, Nagwa. I'm making some koshari. It's healthier than a burger, and also better for the environment.

لا يا نجوى. أنا أعد بعض الكشري. إنه صحي أكثر من البرجر، كما أنه أفضل للبيئة

Nagwa : Why is it better for the environment?

لماذا هو أفضل للبيئة؟

Mom : Well, some of the food that you can buy comes from different countries. The bread in a burger is made from wheat. Egypt gets most of its wheat from Russia, and that is a long way from Egypt! And a lot of the meat in a burger comes from South America. That is a very long way!

حسنًا، بعض الأطعمة التي يمكنك شراؤها تأتي من بلدان مختلفة. الخبز الموجود في البرجر مصنوع من القمح. تحصل مصر على معظم احتياجاتها من القمح من روسيا، وهذا بعيد عن مصر! والكثير من اللحوم الموجودة في البرجر تأتي من أمريكا الجنوبية. وهذا طريق طويل جدًا

Nagwa : How does it get here?

كيف يصل إلى هنا؟

Mom : Usually by ship or by plane.

عادة عن طريق السفن أو بالطائرة

Nagwa : Ah yes, and that is bad for the environment.

أه نعم، وهذا مضر للبيئة.

Mom : That's right. But koshari is different. Do you remember what is in koshari?

صحيح. لكن الكشري مختلف. هل تتذكرين ما في الكشري؟

Nagwa : Yes! It's made with rice, lentils, chickpeas, pasta and er ... tomatoes and onions.

نعم! إنه يتكون من الأرز والعدس والحمص والمكرونة و ... والطماطم والبصل.

Mom : That's right. I can buy most of these things from the local market. And the market gets all the vegetables and plant-based food from local farmers. So everything comes from Egypt.

صحيح. يمكنني شراء معظم هذه الأشياء من السوق المحلية. ويحصل السوق على جميع الخضروات والأغذية النباتية من المزارعين المحليين. لذلك كل شيء يأتي من مصر.

Nagwa : I understand now. I'm happy that we're having koshari this evening! And I'll remember that it is healthier and better for the environment than a burger.

فهمت الآن. أنا سعيدة لأننا سنتناول الكشري هذا المساء وسأتذكر أنه صحي وأفضل للبيئة من البرجر

Help your child listen and read.
ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ



General Activities

1 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

ingredients - meal - koshari - chickpeas

Anas : What's your favorite dish?

Seif : I like 1) .... very much.

Anas : What are the 2) .... of koshari?

Seif : Rice, pasta, lentils, onions and 3) ....

Anas : Is it a useful dish?

Seif : Yes, it is.

Anas : What kind of food is it?

Seif : It is a plant-based meal.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. There is no meat in ....
   a) beef b) burger c) koshari d) steak
2. A/An .... is a small dish that you eat at the beginning of a meal.
   a) drink b) dessert c) appetizer d) main course
3. What's your favorite .... ? - Koshari.
   a) spoon b) dish c) fork d) knife
4. My mom bought the .... for koshari from the supermarket.
   a) cheese b) ingredients c) form d) recipe
5. Umm Ali is my favorite ....
   a) dessert b) desert c) book d) food

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. has - Nada - money - some - shopping - and - bag - a - .

....

2. make - to - My mom - wants - koshari - .

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة



4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Last week I went to a famous restaurant with my friends. We all wanted to eat our favorite meals. I like koshari because it is a plant-based meal. The ingredients of koshari are rice, macaroni, lentils and chickpeas. My friend Anas likes burger very much because it comes from meat. My friend Seif likes pizza because it comes from wheat. My friend Safia likes fish because it is healthy. After the meal we had a dessert and drank juice. We had a wonderful time there.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Anas likes burger because it comes from ....
   a) wheat   b) beans   c) meat   d) milk
2. The underlined word "healthy" is the opposite of ....
   a) nice good   b) unhealthy   c) delicious   d) useful

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Where did you go last week? ....
4. Why does Safia like fish? ....
5. What are the ingredients of koshari? ....
6. What is the main idea of the text? ....

5 Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:

Your favorite meal

Guiding elements:

1- What is it?   2- What are the ingredients?

3- Who cooks it?   4- Where do you have it? With whom?

....

....

....

....

....

Writing Corner

Erosion

Erosion is a natural process. It happens when rock and soil is moved from one place to another by water, wind or flows. The waves and currents in the sea can erode beaches and rivers can erode riverbanks. Humans can cause erosion too. Heavy agriculture is one way that people do.

Drought

Drought happens where there isn't enough rain for a long time. When this happens, rivers and lakes become dry. Farmers cannot grow food and nature is in danger. When people don't have all the water that they need, we say that there is a water shortage.

Climate Change

Climate change affects everyone living on our planet, so we need to try to slow it by working together . If we all help, we can slow climate change. We can recycle paper, plastic and glass at home, but what can nations do? Leaders from different countries from all over the world meet every year. They are trying to find solutions to this dangerous problem. In their last conference, they decided to stop using fossil fuels. In addition, car companies agreed to stop making cars that use fossil fuels by 2040.

Help your child learn how to write a paragraph.
ساعد طفلك ان يعرف كيف يكتب فقرة.

Dictation on Unit (12)

Lesson (1)

نقص المياه	....	فيضان	....
ضفة النهر	....	تآكل التربة	....
البشر	....	جفاف	....
الغلاف الجوي	....	انزلاق التربة	....
يؤثر على	....	نهر جليدي	....

Lesson (2)

الدب القطبي	....	الطاقة الشمسية	....
جريدة	....	ينقذ - يوفر	....
يحرق	....	ظل	....
يهتم	....	موطن	....
محيط	....	قواعد	....

Lesson (3)

يقلل	....	وثيقة	....
اتفاقية	....	كوكب	....
أمم	....	اجتماع	....
زعماء - قادة	....	الاحتباس الحراري	....
عالمي	....	الفحم	....

Lesson (4)

إزالة الغابات	....	الطوارئ	....
رأي	....	يستبدل	....
يتخيل	....	يومي	....
يناقش	....	مفيد - نافع	....
أخبار	....	في الواقع	....

Lessons (5 & 6)

لحم بقري	....	عدس	....
مفضل	....	أرز	....
محادثة	....	كشري	....
قائمة طعام	....	جبن	....
مشروبات	....	قمح	....

Help your child dictate these words.
ساعد طفلك في إملاء هذه الكلمات.

Review on Unit (12)

Vocabulary

water shortage	نقص المياه	ingredients	مكونات الطعام	weather	الطقس
climate change	تغير المناخ	main course	الطبق الرئيسي	conference	مؤتمر
fossil fuels	الوقود الحفري	dessert	الحلو(بعد الأكل)	leader	قائد / زعيم
tsunami	تسونامي (موجة البحر الهائلة)	food waste	مخلفات الطعام	stones	أحجار
drought	جفاف	appetizer	طبق فاتح للشهية	limestone	حجر جيري
geology	علم الجيولوجيا	chickpeas	حمص	pact	ميثاق
flood	فيضان	dish	طبق / أكلة	marble	رخام
acid rain	مطر حمضي	lentils	عدس	habitat	موطن
erosion	تآكل التربة / انجراف	wheat	قمح	body	موضوع (التقرير)
global	عالمي	headline	عنوان رئيسي	in fact	في الواقع
glacier	نهر جليدي	complicated	معقد	youth	الشباب
for example	على سبيل المثال	diversity	تنوع - اختلاف	news	أخبار
eco-friendly	صديق للبيئة	caption	تعليق على صورة	rocks	صخور
newspaper report	تقرير صحفي	newspaper	جريدة	treaty	معاهدة
agreement	اتفاقية	lead-in	افتتاحية / تقديم	nations	الأمم
agriculture	الزراعة	landslide	انزلاق التربة	process	عملية
foundation	مؤسسة	document	وثيقة	party	حزب

Help your child revise unit (12).
ساعد طفلك على مراجعة الوحدة الثانية عشر.



The Future Simple Tense زمن المستقبل البسيط

Form:

Subject (الفاعل) + will + inf. (مصدر الفعل)

e.g. The drought will cause a water shortage. e.g. It will rain tomorrow.

Usage:

We use the future simple to talk about "future predictions"

يستخدم زمن المستقبل البسيط للتحدث عن التنبؤات المستقبلية.

Keywords:

tomorrow	غدًا	soon	قريباً
in the future	في المستقبل	next (week-Friday-summer-year)	القادم
in + (a future period) (2030 - 2050)			

Negative:

Subject (الفاعل) + will + not + inf. (مصدر الفعل)

e.g. We will not burn fossil fuels. e.g. It won't rain tomorrow.

Yes / No question:

Will + subject (الفاعل) + inf. (مصدر الفعل) ...?

e.g. Will you go shopping tomorrow? Yes, I will. No, I won't.

Note 'll= will / won't= will not

Exam On Unit (12)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. Where does a drought happen?

....

2. What happens to rivers and lakes during a drought?

....

3. Who can't grow food during a drought?

....

4. When do we say that "there's a water shortage"?

....

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

shade - environment - be - plant

We can help the environment by planting more trees. If we 1).............. more trees in our cities, the air will be cleaner. The streets will have 2)...................... and the buildings will be cooler. They will 3)...................... prettier, too.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Climate change affects everyone living on our planet, so we need to try to slow **it** by working together. Nations are now making plans to work on this problem. If we all help, we can slow climate change. We can recycle paper, plastic, and glass at home, but what can nations do? On December 12th, 1995, world leaders had a very important meeting. 196 parties signed the Paris Agreement. The parties agreed to reduce global warming to less than 2 degrees Celsius. To do this, countries agreed to start reducing greenhouse gases immediately. This was the first time that so many nations made a serious effort to slow global warming.

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Exam On Unit (12)

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Paper and plastic can be .... at home.

a) burnt   b) recycled   c) eaten   d) thrown

2. The underlined pronoun "It" refers to ....

a) plastic   b) glass   c) climate change   d) paper

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What will happen if we all help?

....

4. How could countries reduce global warming?

....

5. What is the general idea of the text?

....

6. When did world leaders have a very important meeting?

....

4 The Reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Grandma volunteered to help Amir. [ ]
2. Grandma sew some clothes for helping. [ ]

B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

3. The seagull had two ....

a) babies   b) adults   c) cousins   d) dads

4. The friends are .... to help in the village.

a) sad   b) happy   c) worried   d) sorry

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. If it doesn't rain soon, we .... a water shortage.
   a) have b) will have c) has d) are having
2. They can recycle paper .... glass.
   a) and b) but c) as d) so
3. If the climate .... hotter, there will be more droughts.
   a) get b) got c) gets d) getting
4. We need to stop pollution .... it will be too late.
   a) or b) and c) so d) but

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. cars - help - Electric - will - the environment - .

....

2. environment - How - do - affect - the - humans - ?

....

7 Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:

How to help the environment

Guiding elements:

(coal - fossil fuels - electric cars - recycle - plant trees)

....

....

....

....

....

....

Listening Texts

Unit (7)

Lesson (1)

- Listen and answer the questions.

There are lots of trees, plants, and flowers in the rainforest. Lots of animals live in these places. For example, there are insects, birds, reptiles, and mammals. It always rains there and the weather is hot.

Lesson (4)

- Listen and answer the questions.

Iceland is a cold country, but it has more than 600 hot springs and 200 volcanoes. There is a lot of hot water underground, and this is used to heat homes and to make electricity.

Exam on unit (7)

- Listen and answer the questions.

What can our country do to help the environment? I think our country can help by using more renewable energy. We should use less fossil fuel. Our country should plant more trees so we can protect the forests we have.

Unit (8)

Lesson (2)

- Listen and answer the questions.

Aya was visiting her grandma. Grandma was making a meal, and Aya was sitting in the kitchen looking carefully at grandma's books. Grandma cooked very well and she had her own cook book.

Lesson (4)

- Listen and answer the questions.

Egypt is a fantastic country to visit. In all parts of the country, you can see amazing sights, eat delicious food and meet friendly people. Egyptians are very hospitable and generous. Some Egyptian festivals have traditional food, too.

Exam on unit (8)

- Listen and answer the questions.

The spring festival of Sham El-Nessim is my favorite festival. We have picnics in the park with our families and we eat special food. We paint and decorate eggs. It's fun! My favorite Egyptian dishes are the ones we eat at festivals! We eat a delicious meal called fatta at Eid Al-Adha and special cookies called kahk at Eid Al-Fitr!

Unit (9)

Lesson (2)

- Listen and answer the questions.

Khufu is famous for building the Great Pyramid at Giza. The statue shows the pharaoh sitting on a throne. It is the smallest piece of Egyptian royal sculpture ever discovered. It was found in 1903. He built the solar boat. It was a wooden boat. It is about 4600 years old. It's 42 meters long. It is found in Giza.

Lesson (3)

- Listen and answer the questions.

Saqqara is one of the biggest sites in Egypt. It has many tombs, including one of the oldest pyramids in Egypt. Builders made this for King Djoser in about 2630 BCE. It is the Step Pyramid,and it is one of the oldest stone monuments. It's in Giza.

Exam on unit (9)

- Listen and answer the questions.

Lots of people visit Egypt every year because of its amazing archaeological sites. Tourists want to see large monuments,pyramids, and temples. It is incredible to think that ancient Egyptians were building these amazing structures over 4000 years ago, when civilizations in other countries were much simpler. Archaeologists have found lots of artifacts such as tools, pottery, vases, masks.

Exam on Review (3)

- Listen and answer the questions.

In Ramadan we are having a meal in the evening at sunset. There's always lots of delicious food! Last week my mom made kunafa, with sweet pastry. We had it with soft cheese. I was helping her in the kitchen when I dropped the sugar!

Unit (10)

Lesson (1)

- Listen and answer the questions.

A blog is a special kind of website. It usually belongs to one person who posts information there regularly for others to read. There are blogs about many different topics like sports or cooking.

Exam on unit (10)

- Listen and answer the questions.

I'm very tired today. Last night I played board games with my sister for an hour. Then I had dinner and watched TV. Then I did my homework and I went to bed late. I went to school late.

Unit (11)

Lesson (3)

- Listen and answer the questions.

The invention of the steam engine changed transportation. Ships with steam engines could travel much faster than using people or the wind to move boats. The first steam train was in Wales in the 1800s.The train made trips between rural and urban areas faster and safer.

Lesson (4)

- Listen and answer the questions.

My city is located on the Nile River. There are new homes, schools, and a hospital. There is also a large park where people can go for walks and play sports. I believe that parks are important for everyone. We go there on Fridays.

Exam on unit (11)

- Listen and answer the questions.

There is a lot of traffic in my neighborhood. The trip to my school takes an hour. I always get into a traffic jam. The traffic light color for "Go" is green and " Stop" is red. I get up early so I am always on time for school.

Unit (12)

Lesson (3)

- Listen and answer the questions.

On December 12th, 1995, world leaders had a very important meeting. 196 parties signed the Paris Agreement. The parties agreed to reduce global warming to less than 2 degrees Celsius. To do this, countries agreed to start reducing greenhouse gases immediately.

Lesson (4)

- Listen and answer the questions.

The Suez Canal links the Red Sea and the Mediterranean Sea. It's the most important canal in the world. Many ships go through the Suez Canal. The ships travel to many countries all over the world. Thousands of ships cross it every year.

Exam on unit (12)

- Listen and answer the questions.

Drought happens where there is not enough rain for a long time. When this happens, rivers and lakes become dry. Farmers cannot grow food and nature is in danger. When people do not have all the water that they need, we say that there is a water shortage.

AL-BAHER

CONNECT PLUS

Final Revision

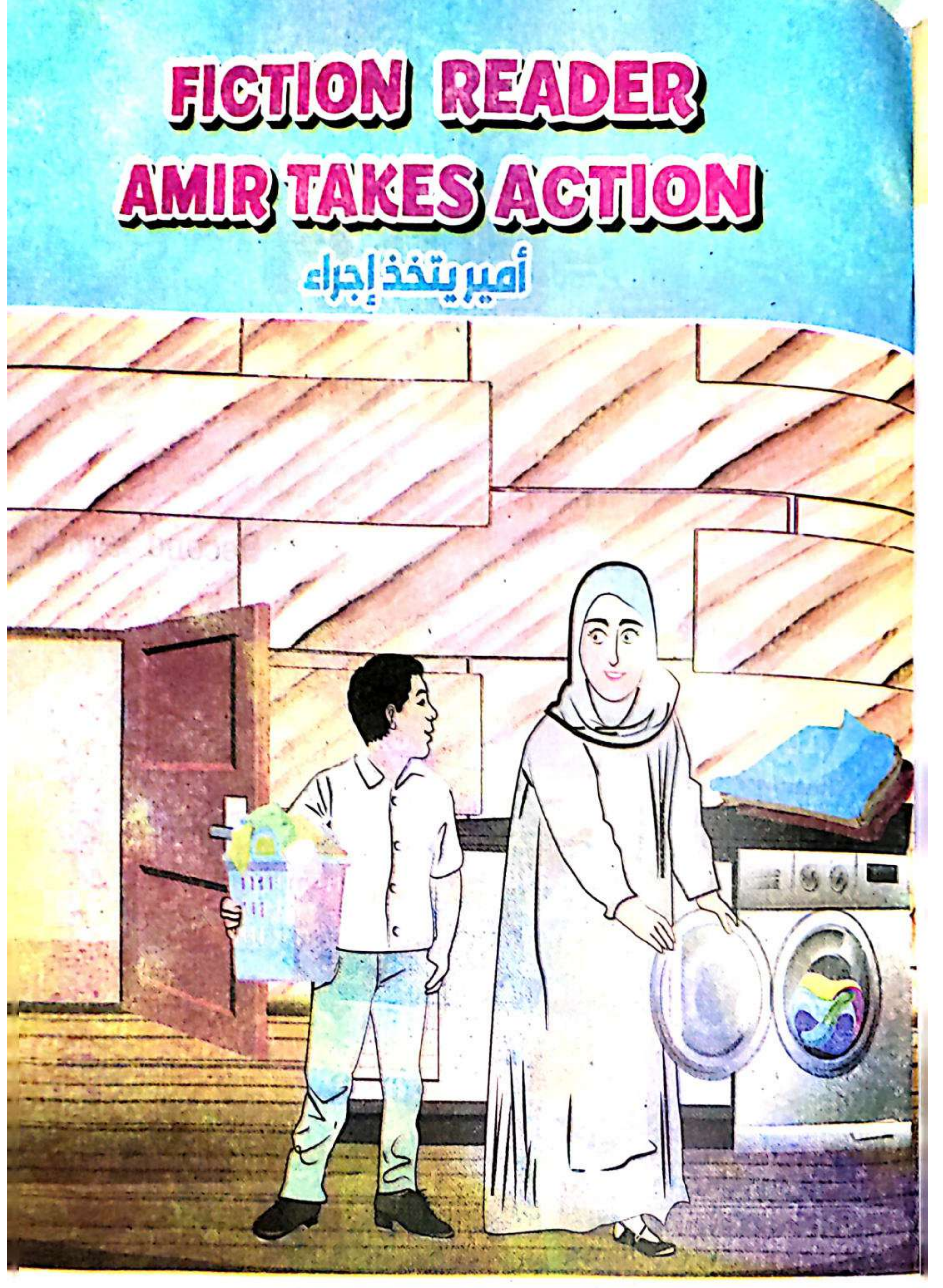




FICTION READER

AMIR TAKES ACTION

أمير يتخذ إجراء



BY SCOT ESPOSITO

ILLUSTRATED BY MIKE LACEY

AMIR TAKES ACTION

The Characters


Grandma


Amir

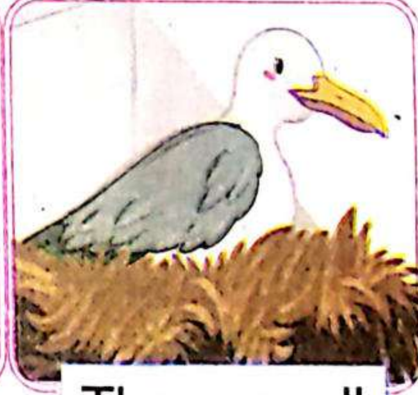

Anissa


Waleed


Waleed's dad


Dalia


Anissa's dad


The seagull


The baby seagulls

Help your child identify the characters of the story.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على شخصيات القصة.

PICTURE DICTIONARY



check
يفحص / يختبر

laundry
غسيل

washing machine
غسالة

seagull
طائر النورس

nest
عُش

land
تهبط الطائرة

roof
سطح

cloth bag
حقيبة قماش

biodegradable bags
حقائب قابلة للتحلل

Help your child identify these words..

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

The Story

The plot

حبكة القصة



The main idea:

الفكرة الرئيسية للقصة:

- It's important to identify the cause of the problems.

  من المهم أن نحدد أسباب المشكلات.

- We should work together and take actions to solve problems.

  يجب أن نعمل معًا ونتخذ الإجراءات اللازمة لحل المشكلات.



The Beginning:

بداية القصة:

- Amir checked the washing machine. قام أمير بفحص الغسالة.
- Amir took the laundry up to the roof. أخذ أمير الغسيل إلى السطح.
- Amir saw plastic bottles floating down the river.

  رأى أمير زجاجات بلاستيكية تطفو في النهر.

- Amir saw a large seagull in the nest. رأى أمير طائر نورس كبير في العش.



The middle:

منتصف القصة:

- There was a plastic bag around the seagull's leg.

  كان هناك كيس من البلاستيك حول ساق النورس.

- Amir was sad for the seagull. كان أمير حزينا على النورس.
- Amir sent a photo to his friends to help the seagull.

  أرسل أمير صورة لأصدقائه لمساعدة النورس.

- Amir wanted to take action. أراد أمير أن يتخذ إجراءً.



The End:

نهاية القصة:

- The friends met at Amir's house. التقى الأصدقاء في منزل أمير.
- Grandma volunteered to help. تطوعت الجدة للمساعدة.
- Waleed wanted his dad to stop using plastic bags in his grocery store.

  أراد وليد أن يتوقف والده عن استخدام الأكياس البلاستيكية في محل البقالة الخاص به.

- Anissa asked her dad for help and he will ask fishermen to take the plastic out of the river.

  طلبت أنيسة المساعدة من والدها وهو سيطلب من الصيادين إخراج البلاستيك من النهر.

- Dalia sent an email to all her cousins.

  أرسلت داليا بريدًا إلكترونيًا إلى جميع أبناء عمومتها.

Help your child read the story plot.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ حبكة القصة.

The Beginning

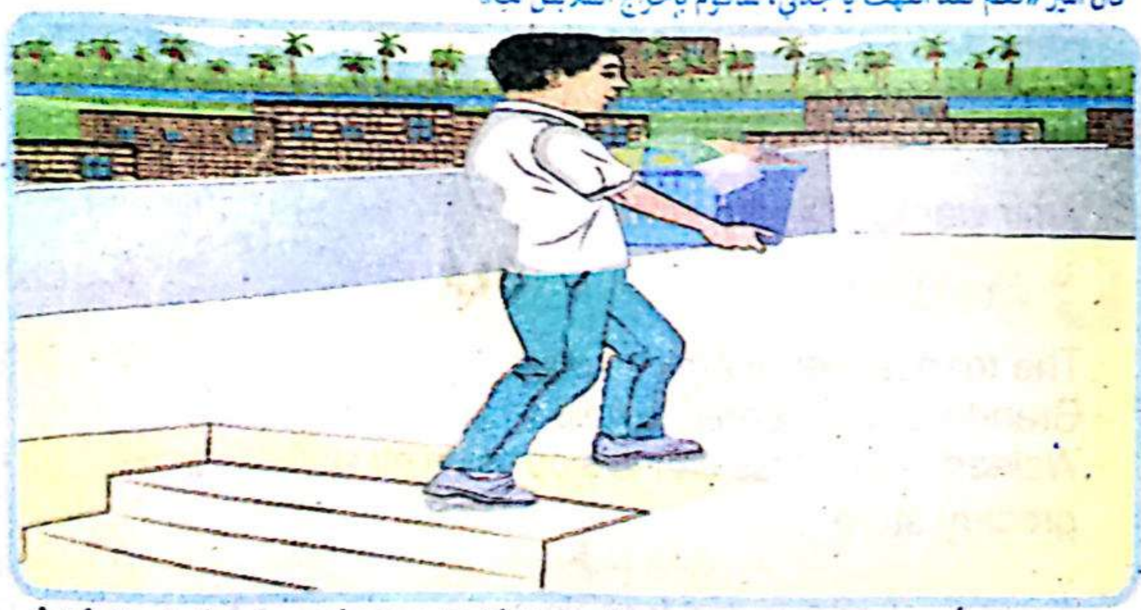


"Amir, can you check the washing machine? I think the wash is finished."

"Yes, it's finished, Grandma. I'll take the clothes out for you."

قالت الجدة لأمير «أمير،هل يمكنك أن تفحص الغسالة؟ أعتقد أن دورة الغسيل انتهت.»

قال أمير «نعم لقد انتهت يا جدتي، سأقوم بإخراج الملابس لك»



Amir took the laundry up to the roof.

From there, he could see the beautiful Nile and the village below him.

أخذ أمير الغسيل إلى أعلى السطح. واستطاع أن يرى النيل الجميل والقرية من على السطح.

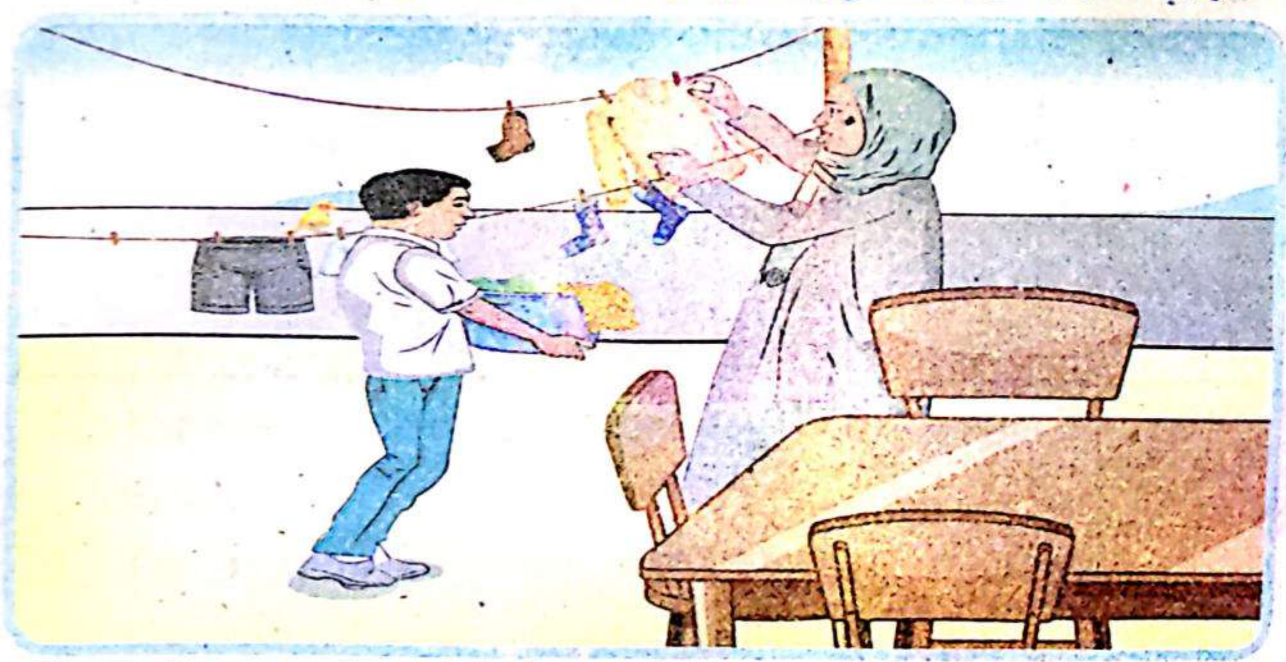
Help your child read the story and have fun.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ القصة ويستمتع بها.



Amir looked down. Trucks transported plastic bottles of water and women carried their shopping home from the market in plastic bags. He could also see plastic bottles floating down the river.

نظر أمير لأسفل. نقلت الشاحنات زجاجات المياه البلاستيكية وحملت النساء سلع التسوق التي جلبوها من السوق في حقائب بلاستيكية. واستطاع أيضا أن يرى الزجاجات البلاستيكية طافيه في النهر.



"Let's hang up these clothes quickly. It's really hot up here today," said Grandma.

قالت الجدة لأمير «هيا نقوم بنشر الغسيل بسرعة. فالجو حار هنا اليوم».



A large seagull landed in a nest on top of the neighbor's building. "Look at the seagull, Grandma! She's so beautiful", said Amir. Grandma nodded her head. "Yes, she is," Grandma answered. "All of nature is beautiful. We must respect it."

هبط طائر النورس الكبير في عش أعلى مبنى الجار. قال أمير للجدة «انظري إلى طائر النورس يا جدتي. إنها جميلة جدًا.» أومأت الجدة برأسها و قالت « نعم ، كل الطبيعة جميلة ويجب أن نحترم ذلك.»



Amir then noticed something horrible: there was a plastic bag around the seagull's leg. "Oh no! She's in trouble," said Amir.

ثم لاحظ أمير شيئًا فظيعًا: فقد كانت هناك حقيبة بلاستيكية في ساق طائر النورس. وقال « أوه ، لا! إنها في ورطة»

Help your child read the story and have fun.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ القصة ويستمتع بها.

Activities

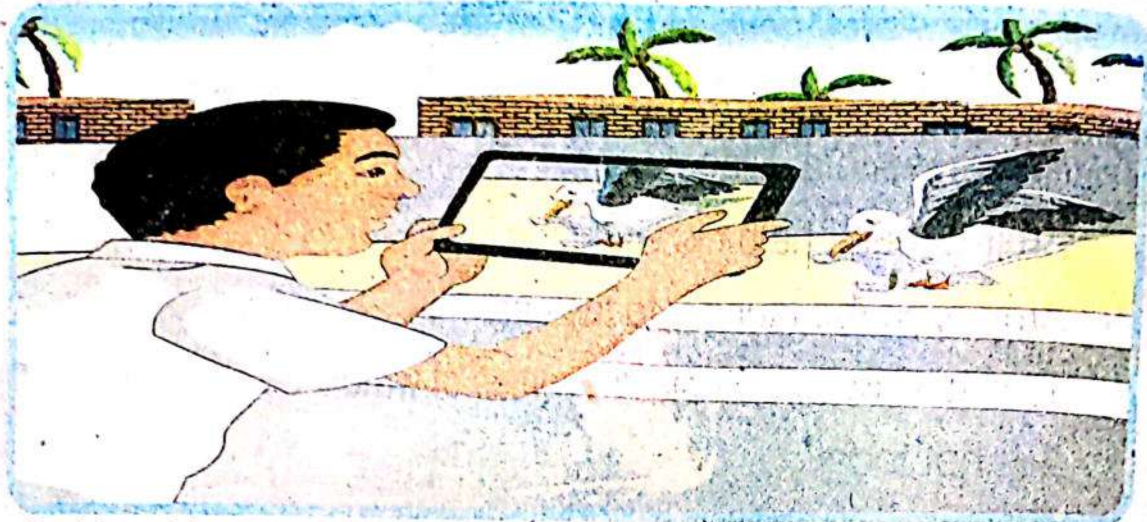
1 Read and write (T) True or (F) False.

1. Amir lives in a village.
2. Amir doesn't help his Grandma.
3. Amir took the laundry to the car.
4. Trucks transported plastic bottles of water.
5. It is hot today.
6. Grandma thinks that the seagull is ugly.
7. There was a plastic bag around the seagull's leg.

2 Choose the correct word.

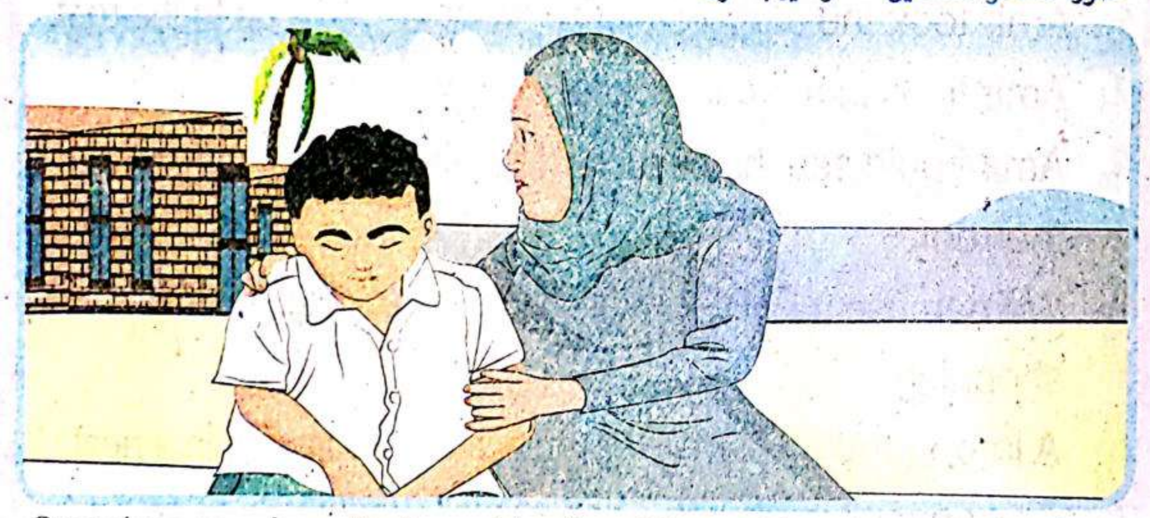
1. Amir took the (bags - laundry - dishes - birds) up to the roof.
2. Amir lives in a (boat - school - village - city).
3. Amir could see the beautiful (Nile - beach - sea - lake) from the roof.
4. Women use (plastic - metal - paper - gold) bags for their shopping.
5. A large (eagle - parrot - seagull - chicken) landed in a nest.
6. The seagull is so (ugly - bad - awful - beautiful).
7. There was a plastic bag around the seagull's (neck - leg - hand - eyes).
8. The seagull was (good - kind - in trouble - happy).
9. We must (play - waste - respect - walk) nature.
10. Amir noticed something (good - horrible - nice - kind) with the bird.

The Middle



Amir's tablet was on the table where he sometimes does his homework in the evening. He picked it up and took a picture of the poor bird. Amir felt sad.

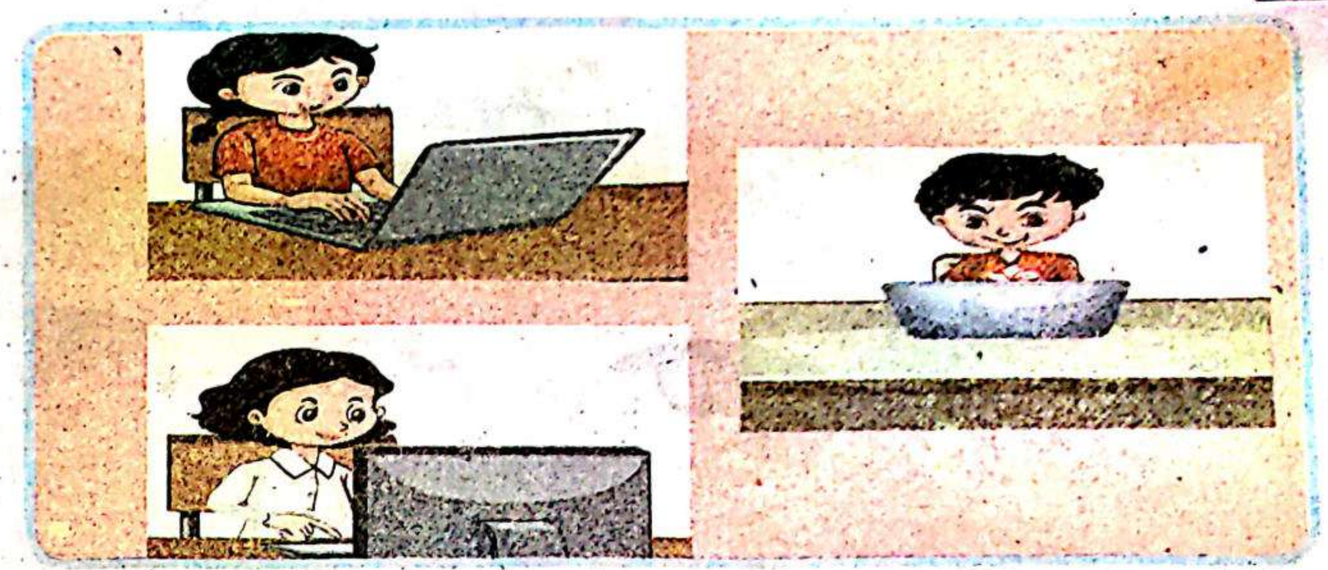
كان تابلت أمير على المنضدة حيث كان أحيانًا يقوم بعمل الواجب المدرسي في المساء. التقط أمير التابلت وأخذ صورة للطائر المسكين. شعر أمير بالحزن.



Grandma saw how Amir was feeling. She put her arm around him. "It'll be OK , Amir." "No, it won't. We have to do something to help. People are using too much plastic and it's harming the birds." "You're a smart boy, Amir. How can we help other people understand this?" his grandma asked him.

رأت الجدة أمير حزينًا فوضعت ذراعها حوله وقالت « سيكون الطائر بخير يا أمير»
فرد أمير قائلًا « لا ، لن يكون بخير، يجب أن نفعل شيئًا لمساعدته. الناس يستخدمون الكثير من البلاستيك و هذا ضار جدًا للطيور.» قالت الجدة « أنت ولد ذكي يا أمير.» وسألته قائلة «كيف يمكننا أن نساعد الناس أن يفهموا ذلك؟»

Help your child read the story and have fun.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ القصة ويستمتع بها.



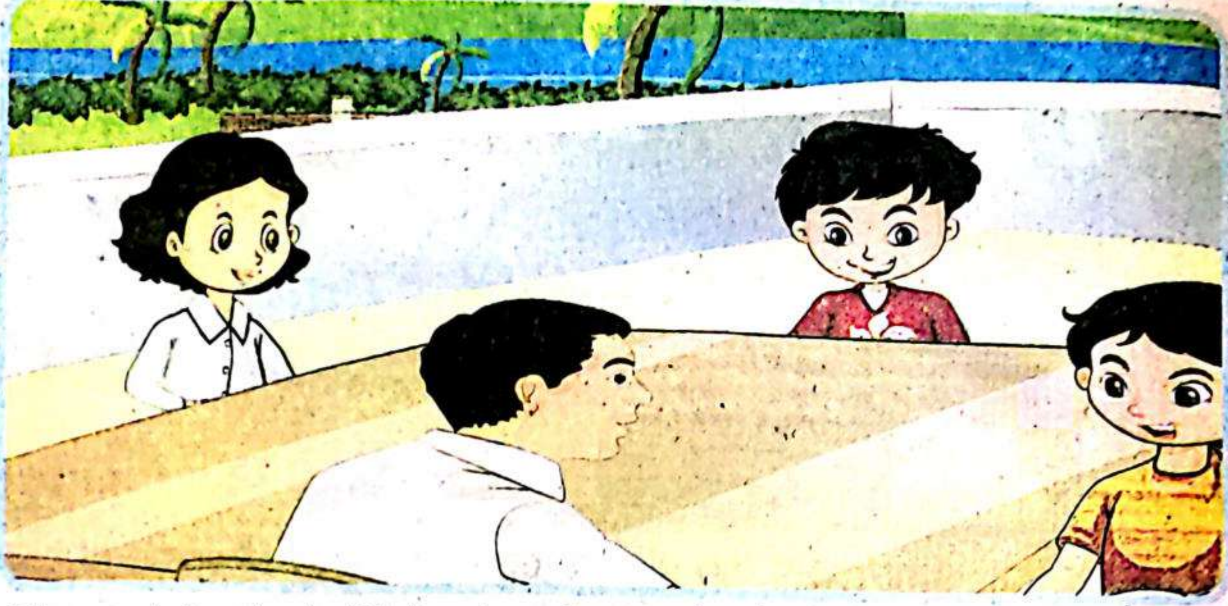
That night, Amir sent the picture of the seagull to some of his friends from school. They were all very worried about the bird. "We need to help her," his friend Waleed texted back. "But what can we do?"

وفي تلك الليلة أرسل أمير صورة طائر النورس لبعض أصدقائه من المدرسة. وكانوا جميعًا قلقين بشأن ذلك الطائر. ورد وليد صديق أمير برسالة عليه قائلًا «نحن نريد مساعدتها، لكن ماذا يمكننا أن نفعل لها؟»



Amir wanted to take action. He started researching on the internet and discovered that people use billions of plastic bags and bottles in Egypt every year. A lot of them end up in the Nile or the sea. So, he sent a message to his friends.

أراد أمير أن يتخذ إجراءً. وبدأ في البحث عبر الإنترنت واكتشف أن الناس يستخدمون المليارات من حقائب وزجاجات البلاستيك في مصر كل عام، و ينتهي بها المطاف في نهر النيل أو البحر. لذلك أرسل رسالة إلى أصدقائه.



The next day,Amir ,Waleed, and some other friends met at Amir's house.

They talked about different things that they could do. Amir took notes on his tablet:

في اليوم التالي، اجتمع أمير و وليد وبعض الأصدقاء في منزل أمير.

وتحدثوا عن أشياء مختلفة يمكنهم القيام بها. ودَوَّن أمير بعض الملاحظات على التابلت الخاص به.

- Use cloth bags. We can give them to people at the market.

  استخدم حقائب مصنوعة من القماش. ويمكن أن نعطي تلك الحقائب للناس في السوق.

- Use biodegradable bags. Waleed's dad can use them at his store.

  استخدم حقائب قابلة للتحلل. ويستطيع والد وليد استخدامها في متجره.

- Clean up the riverbanks. Anissa's dad can ask the fishermen to help us.

  نظّف ضفاف النهر . ويستطيع والد أنيسة أن يطلب من الصيادين مساعدتنا.

- Contact children in other towns. Dalia can send emails to her cousins.

  اتّصل بالأطفال في المدن الأخرى. تستطيع داليا أن ترسل بريد إلكتروني لأبناء عمها.

Help your child read the story and have fun.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ القصة ويستمتع بها.

Activities

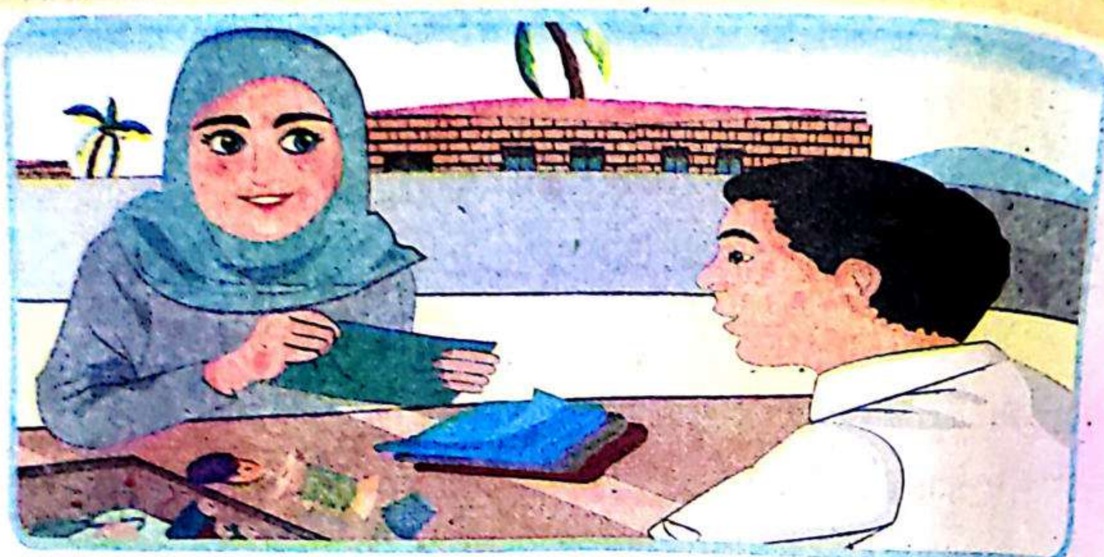
1 Read and write (T) True or (F) False.

1. Amir's friends didn't want to help him with his plan. ( )
2. Dalia took a picture of the seagull and sent it to her friends. ( )
3. Amir wanted to take action. ( )
4. Amir made a new volunteer group. ( )
5. Amir is a bad boy. ( )
6. Amir took a picture of the seagull with his tablet. ( )
7. The plastic bottles are harming the birds. ( )
8. A lot of plastic bags and bottles end up in the Nile and the sea. ( )

2 Choose the correct word.

1. Amir took a picture of the poor bird with his (camera - cellphone - tablet - computer).
2. Amir was (sad - happy - delighted - pleased) about the poor bird.
3. Amir sent the picture of the seagull to his (dad - mum - grandma - friends).
4. Amir and his friends talked about their (plane - plan - school - food) to save the Nile.
5. The friends can give people (paper - metal - cloth - plastic) bags at the market.
6. Waleed's dad can use biodegradable bags at his (house - ship - store - car).
7. Dalia can send emails to her (friends - children - boys - cousins).
8. Anissa's dad can ask the (fishermen - old men - policemen - women) to help him.

The End



Amir explained his ideas to his grandma. She volunteered to help, too. "I have some old cotton cloth,Amir. I can sew some shopping bags for you. Will that help?'
"Yes, Grandma, Thank you! That will help a lot'

شرح أمير أفكاره لجدته. وتطوعت الجدة من أجل المساعدة أيضًا وقالت لأمير «لدي بعض الأقمشة القطنية القديمة. يمكنني أن أقوم بخياطة بعض حقائب التسوق من أجلك. هل هذا سيساعد؟»
قال أمير « نعم يا جدتي، أشكرك. هذا سيساعد كثيرًا»



Waleed went to his dad's grocery store. "Dad, please help us. Let's stop using plastic bags in our store. We can use biodegradable ones instead." "Waleed, why should we do that?" his father asked. Waleed, showed him Amir's picture of the seagull. His dad looked sad. "OK, Waleed. I'll help you. We'll start using these biodegradable bags. We must help the river."

ذهب وليد إلى متجر البقالة الخاص بوالده و قال له « أبي من فضلك ساعدنا. هيًا نتوقف عن استخدام الحقائب البلاستيكية في متجرنا. ونستخدم الحقائب القابلة للتحلل بدلًا منها.»
ردُ والده سائلًا « لِمَ ينبغي أن نفعل ذلك؟» عرض وليد صورة طائر النورس التي التقطها أمير. بدا على والده الحزن وقال: « نعم ، يا وليد سأساعدك. سنبدأ في استخدام تلك الحقائب القابلة للتحلل. يجب أن نساعد في نظافة النهر.»

Help your child read the story and have fun.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ القصة ويستمتع بها.



Anissa's dad works at the market. She showed him Amir's picture of the seagull and told him all about their plans." I'll ask the fishermen to help us take the plastic out of the river. They'll help us. The water is important for all of us," he said.

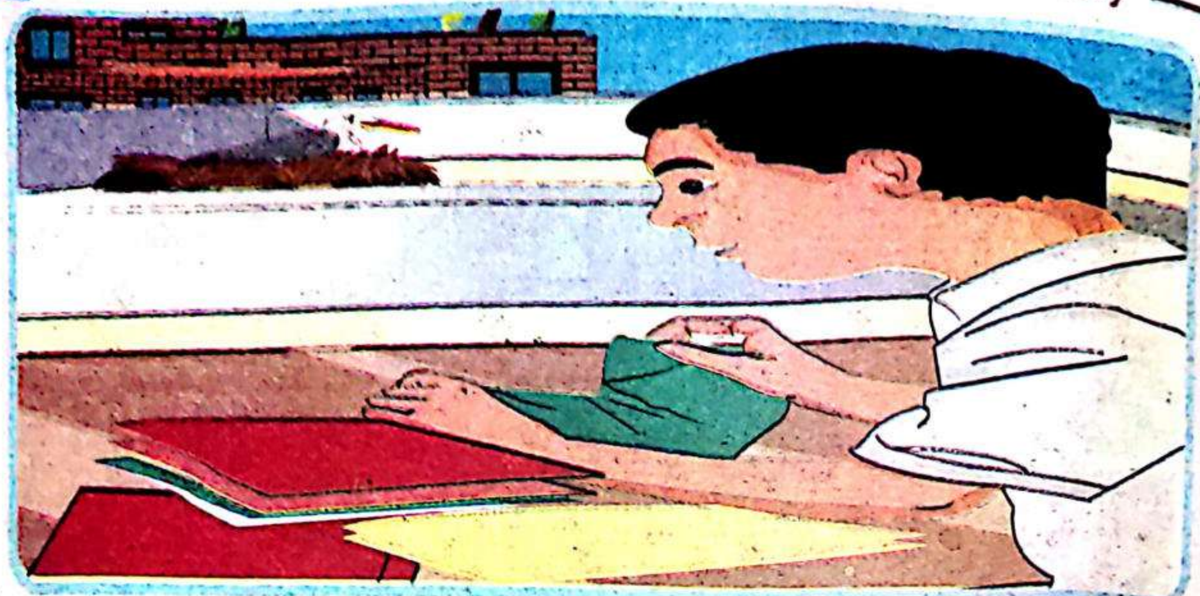
يعمل والد أنيسة في السوق. عرضت أنيسة على والدها صورة طائر النورس التي التقطها أمير و أخبرته عن كل خططهم. قال لها والدها «سأطلب من الصيادين أن يساعدونا في إخراج البلاستيك من النهر. وسيساعدونا في ذلك. فماء النهر مهم لنا جميعًا».



Dalia sent emails to all her cousins. They lived in other villages around Egypt. "Dalia, this is a great idea," her cousin Mariam wrote back. "We will be happy to help in our village,too."

قامت داليا بإرسال بريد إلكتروني لأبناء عمها .

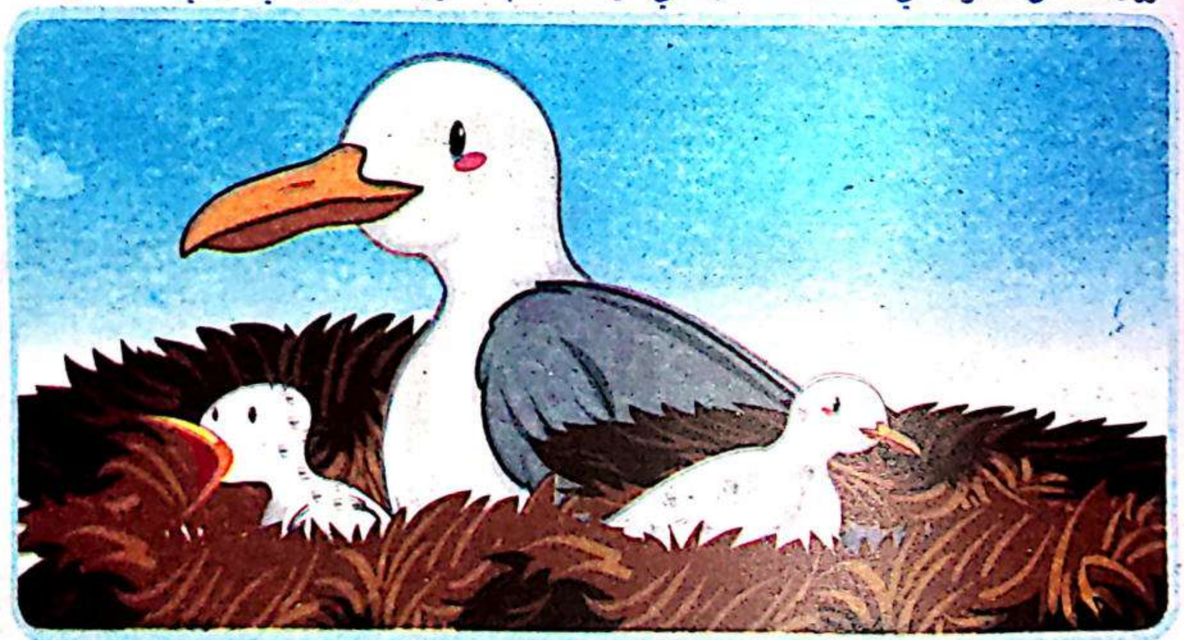
يعيش أبناء عمها في قرى أخرى في أنحاء مصر. ردت ابنة عمها مريم برسالة قائلة « هذه فكرة رائعة. سوف نكون سعداء لمساعدة قريتنا أيضًا.»



A couple days later, Amir went onto his grandma's roof to get her laundry. He saw the colorful cloth she was going to use to sew the cotton shopping bags. He started folding it and putting it in the laundry basket.

وبعد يومين صعد أمير إلى سطح بيت جدته لجمع الغسيل.

ورأى القماش الملون التي ستستخدمه الجدة في خياطة حقائب التسوق القطنية. وبدأ في طيّها في سلة الغسيل.



Then he saw the seagull in her nest. He remembered the plastic around her leg. Suddenly, two baby seagulls put their heads out of the nest. Amir smiled. He knew that he and his friends together could make a change.

ثم رأى أنثى طائر النورس في عشها. فتذكر البلاستيك الذي كان حول ساقها وفجأة طل صغار النورس برأسيهما من العش. ابتسم أمير. وعلم حينها أنه وأصدقائه يمكنهم إحداث تغيير.

Help your child read the story and have fun.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ القصة ويستمتع بها.

Activities

1 Read and write (T) True or (F) False.

1. Mariam is one of Dalia's cousins. ( )
2. Grandma volunteered to help. ( )
3. Anissa's dad works at school. ( )
4. The water isn't important for us. ( )
5. The seagull has two babies. ( )
6. Amir's grandma used some old pieces of cotton cloth to make biodegradable shopping bags. ( )

2 Choose the correct word.

1. The friends met at Amir's (house - street - school - club).
2. Anissa's dad works at the (ship - market - school - workshop).
3. Waleed's dad stopped using (metal - cloth - paper - plastic) bags at his store.
4. Waleed showed his dad the (babies - picture - book - roof) of the seagull.
5. The fishermen can help taking the plastic out of the (sky - land - ground - river).
6. The water is (bad - unhappy - useless - important) for all of us.
7. Dalia sent emails to all her(babies - cousins - sisters - brothers).
8. The children will be (sad - unhappy - happy - unkind) to help their village.
9. The seagull is in her (net - nut - nest - web).
10. The seagull has two (babies - sisters - brothers - cousins).

Unit (7) All around the world

Environments البيئات

coastal	ساحلية	desert	صحراوية	urban	حضرية
mountainous	جبلية	rural	ريفية	polar	قطبية
rainforest	غابة مطيرة	temperature	درجة الحرارة	difficult	صعب

Pollution التلوث

air pollution	تلوث الهواء	water pollution	تلوث الماء
fossil fuels	وقود حفري	climate change	تغير المناخ
carbon dioxide	ثاني أكسيد الكربون	emissions	انبعاثات

Energy الطاقة

Renewable	متجددة	Non-renewable	غير متجددة
wind energy	طاقة الرياح	coal	فحم
solar energy	الطاقة الشمسية	gas	غاز
tidal energy	طاقة المد و الجزر	oil	بترول
geothermal energy	الطاقة الحرارية		

Other words

generate (d)	يولد / ينتج	store (d)	يخزن	absorb (ed)	يمتص
hydroelectricity	طاقة كهرومائية	release (d)	يطلق	heat	حرارة
waterwheels	السواقي	take out	يخرج	turbine	توربين

Large Numbers

1,000 (one thousand)
10,000 (ten thousand)
100,000 (one hundred thousand)
1,000,000 (one million)
10.000,000 (ten million)
100,000,000 (one hundred million)
1,000,000,000 (one billion)

Help your child revise unit (7).

ساعد طفلك على أن يراجع الوحدة السابعة.



The Present Continuous Tense

زمن المضارع المستمر

Form:

Subject + am / is / are + (v + ing)

- I'm walking to school.

Usage:

To express an action that is happening now.

Keywords:

now الآن	Listen! استمع!	at the moment في هذه اللحظة
Look! انظر!	today اليوم	at present في الوقت الحاضر

Negative:

Subject + am / is / are + not + (v + ing)

- I am not using recycled bags.

Yes / No question:

Is + (he / she / it / a singular noun) + (v + ing)...?

- Is he walking to school? - Yes, he is. - No, he isn't.

Are + (they / we / you / a plural noun) + (v + ing)..?

- Are they watching a TV program? - Yes, they are. - No, they aren't.

Wh- question:

Q.W + is / are + subject + (v + ing)...?

- What is he doing now? - He is driving an electric car.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What does the world need?

....

2. What do trees take out?

....

3. Why do people cut down trees and forests?

....

4. Is it important to plant new trees?

....

2 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

keep - doing - garbage - creating

Wael : What are you doing, Amal?

Amal : I am 1)............................ a website about pollution on Mount Everest.

Wael : How are people helping to 2)................................... the environment clean there?

Amal : They don't leave any 3).. on the mountain.

Wael : They're amazing!

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

resources - pollution - electricity - released

When we burn non-renewable, fuels like coal, gas and oil, carbon dioxide is realesd into the atmosphere. This causes air 1)........................ and makes climate change worse. Renewable energy from natural 2)..................... is better for the environment and it doesn't run out. Some countries have a lot of coastal environments and they make 3)........................ using the movement of the sea. We can get solar energy from the sun.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



Read the following text and answer the questions.

Karahnjukar Hydroelectricity plant

Karahnjukar is a hydroelectricity plant in eastern Iceland. The hydroelectric plant is the largest power plant in Iceland. It took five years to build, from 2003 to 2007. Five dams were built across two rivers. This created three large reservoirs of water. Water from the reservoirs travels through 73 kilometers of underground water tunnels. Then it goes down a deep tunnel to the underground power station. The Karahnjukar Dam is the largest of the five dams. It is 193 meters high and 730 meters long. It **generates** more than 690.000 kilowatts of power a year. The power isn't used to heat homes. It is used for an industrial metal plant.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The Karahnjukar hydroelectric plant is in ....
   a) Egypt b) America c) Iceland d) France
2. The underlined word "generates" means ....
   a) makes b) writes c) plays d) uses

B) Answer the following questions.

3. How high is the Karahnjukar Dam?

....

4. What is the power from the Karahnjukar Dam used for?

....

5. What is the general idea of the text?

....

6. How long did Karahnjukar plant take to build?

....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. **Vocabulary**

1. There are high mountains in a .... environment.
   a) urban b) rural c) mountainous d) polar
2. It's very cold in .... environment.
   a) rainforest b) polar c) rural d) desert
3. There are lots of .... in a rainforest.
   a) rivers b) sand c) beaches d) trees
4. The .... environment is where the land is next to the sea.
   a) rainforest b) rural c) coastal d) urban
5. There are lots of trees in a .... environment.
   a) rural b) polar c) rainforest d) urban
6. There can be a lot of traffic in .... areas.
   a) rural b) polar c) mountainous d) urban
7. It's very .... in a desert environment.
   a) cold b) snowy c) dry d) warm
8. .... is something we burn to make heat or power.
   a) Recycling b) Fuel c) Carbon dioxide d) Reuse
9. .... are made by factories, cars and trucks.
   a) Oxygen b) Fuel c) Emissions d) Wind
10. Emissions can cause air ....
    a) recycling b) heating c) pollution d) planting
11. It's important to .... plastic.
    a) throw b) eat c) drop d) recycle
12. Fossil fuels are things like coal, ... and oil.
    a) water b) sun c) gas d) snow
13. A .... environment can get a lot of ice.
    a) polar b) desert c) coastal d) rainforest

14. .... is when the weather and temperature change over a long period of time.

a) Pollution b) Climate change
c) Carbon dioxide d) Recycling

15. .... energies don't make pollution.

a) Non-renewable b) Carbon dioxide
c) Fossil fuels d) Renewable

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. Grammar

1. We are .... our bikes to school.
   a) ride b) rides c) riding d) rode
2. Sarah .... to school today.
   a) walk b) walked c) walking d) is walking
3. They aren't .... up garbage on the beach today.
   a) picking b) pick c) picks d) picked
4. We .... about emissions at school.
   a) was learning b) learning c) are learning d) is learning
5. .... reading an article about climate change?
   a) You are b) Do you c) Are you d) Does he
6. Jasmine isn't .... the TV program about forest fires.
   a) watching b) watch c) watched d) watches
7. I .... an essay about plastic pollution.
   a) am writing b) writing c) is writing d) writes
8. That woman is .... plastic bags.
   a) collecting b) collect c) collects d) collected
9. Look! They .... to keep the environment clean.
   a) helps b) helped c) are helping d) helping
10. What are you .... ?
    a) do b) does c) doing d) did

11. Are you .... to school?
    a) going   b) goes   c) go   d) went
12. What is he .... ?
    a) reads   b) reading   c) read   d) are reading
13. We are .... plastic bottles.
    a) recycled   b) recycle   c) recycles   d) recycling
14. Mum .... listening to the podcast.
    a) isn't   b) aren't   c) don't   d) doesn't
15. Look! They .... trees.
    a) is planting   b) plants   c) are planting   d) planted
16. What is he .... ?
    a) watched   b) watch   c) watching   d) watches

6 Put the words in the correct orders to make sentences.

1. kind of - live - What - do - you - environment - in - ?

....

2. are - There - lots of - trees - a rainforest - in - .

....

3. comes - natural - Geothermal - energy - from - sources - .

....

4. help - the - Trees - protect - to - environment - .

....

5. cold - Iceland - is - country - a - .

....

6. is - Why - it - important - recycle - to - ?

....

7. can - do - What - to - we - help - environment - the - ?

....



Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:

Water pollution

Guiding elements:

(important - keep - plastic - bottles - garbage - chemicals)

....

....

....

....

....

....

8 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. I .... (walk) to school now.
2. Today we're .... (talk) about pollution.
3. Look! He .... (wait) for the bus.
4. We are .... (learn) about climate change.
5. At the moment Hana .... (watch) a TV program.
6. The girls .... (listen) to music now.
7. What are you .... (read)?
8. Are you .... (help) the environment?
9. Aya is .... (watch) TV now.
10. It doesn't .... (going) into the sea.
11. I'm .... (do) my homework at the moment.

Unit (8) Customs and traditions

Vocabulary

festival	عيد	fast (v)	يصوم
celebration	احتفال	feast	وليمة
charity	جمعية خيرية	sacrifice	يضحي
creation	خلق	sunrise	الشروق
fairgrounds	الملاهي - ساحات الألعاب	sunset	الغروب
prayer	صلاة - دعاء	beans	فول
grateful	شاكر	garlic	ثوم
olive oil	زيت زيتون	herbs	أعشاب
buttons	أزرار	spices	توابل
galabeya	جلابية	vinegar	خل
hizam	حزام	sleeves	أكمام (الملابس)
linen	كتان	sandals	صندل
loose	واسع - فضفاض	guest	ضيف
striped	مقلم	host	مضيف
shipwreck	حطام سفينة	generous	كريم
pastry	فطيرة (معجنات)	sights	معالم

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

celebrate with	يحتفل مع	make a meal	يعد وجبة	play music	يعزف موسيقى
her own book	الكتاب الخاص بها	make...with	يصنع ... بـ	go down	تغيب - تغرب
make a lantern	يصنع فانوسا	get ready	يستعد	come up	تشرق
in different colors	بألوان مختلفة	at sunrise	عند شروق الشمس	give information	يقدم معلومات

Help your child revise unit (8).



The Present Simple Tense

Form:

I / We / You / They / A plural noun + inf.
He / She / It / A singular noun + inf. + v + (s / es / ies)

e.g. Men often wear the galabeya.
Sara wears a skirt every day.

Negative:

I / We / You / They / A plural noun + don't + inf.
He / She / It / A singular noun + doesn't + inf.

e.g. I don't wear kaftan.
She doesn't wear hizam.

Yes, No question:

Do + (I / they / we / you / a plural noun) + inf. ...?
Does + (he / she / it / a singular noun) + inf. ...?

e.g. Do you usually wear sandals?
Yes, I do. No, I don't.

e.g. Does he wear loose clothes?
Yes, he does. No, he doesn't.

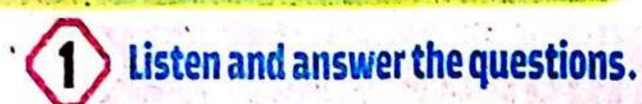
Wh- question:

Q.W + (do / does) + subject + inf...?

e.g. What do you wear to do sports?
I wear a T-shirt and shorts.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب



1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. How long does Eid Al-Adha last?

....

2. What do many people sacrifice?

....

3. What do we give to our family and friends?

....

4. Where do we go for prayers?

....

2 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

Grandma - celebrate - going - dress

Omar : Hello, Sara. Where are you going?

Sara : I'm going to my 1)..

Omar : Why?

Sara : To 2).. her birthday.

Omar : You look beautiful in this 3)..

Sara : Thank you.

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

spring - eggs - traditional - celebrating

I love celebrating Sham El-Nessim with my family. The festival is for the start of 1).......................... and it is very old. Before the day of the festival, we spend time preparing lots of different 2).......................... food, often until sunset. We also paint and decorate 3).......................... in different colors.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



Read the following text and answer the questions.

I think Egypt is a great country to visit. You can visit the pyramids of Giza. The Library in Alexandria, or the beautiful Temple of Hatshepsut in the Valley of the Kings. There are so many things to see. It's a fantastic place to have a holiday. You can take a boat trip down the Nile or go camping in the desert or you can go scuba diving in the Red Sea. The spring festival of Sham El-Nessim is my favorite festival. We have picnics in the park with our families and we eat special food. We paint and decorate eggs. It's fun! My favorite Egyptian dishes are the ones we eat at festival! We eat a delicious dish called fattah at Eid Al-Adha and special cookies called kahk at Eid Al-Fiter!

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The pyramids are at ....

   a) Cairo b) Giza c) Alexandria d) Luxor

2. We eat .... during Eid Al-Adha.

   a) kahk b) fish c) eggs d) fattah

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Which temple can you visit?

....

4. Which festival do people celebrate in spring?

....

5. What is the main idea of the text?

....

6. Where can we go scuba diving?

....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. **Vocabulary**

1. Eid .... is during the month of Zu Elhijja.
   a) Al-Adha b) Al-Fitr c) Sham El-Nessim d) Easter
2. Children go to .... to have fun on the rides.
   a) schools b) hospitals c) fairgrounds d) beaches
3. People go to mosques for .... during Eid Al-Adha.
   a) prayers b) eating c) players d) sleeping
4. Farmers go to work at .... and go home in the afternoon.
   a) noon b) night c) sunrise d) sunset
5. We are .... that we are healthy.
   a) bad b) grateful c) useful d) well
6. .... is made with beef or lamb.
   a) Hawawshi b) Fatta c) Ful medames d) Pizza
7. We always eat .... at Eid Al-Adha.
   a) sayadeya b) fish c) hawawshi d) fatta
8. Ancient Egyptians wore clothes made of ....
   a) cotton b) plastic c) linen d) silk
9. Linen keeps people ....
   a) hot b) cool c) warm d) sunny
10. Kunafa is a delicious ....
    a) dessert b) juice c) sandwich d) desert
11. People usually make .... at Ramadan.
    a) lambs b) glasses c) lanterns d) clothes
12. Give .... is to offer something.
    a) out b) in c) up d) to
13. Muslims go to the .... during the month of Zu Elhijja.
    a) funfair b) prayers c) pilgrimage d) festival

14. Fatta takes a long time to ...., so we don't eat it very often.

a) eat b) digest c) drink d) cook

15. Grandma shares .... from her cook book with friends.

a) photos b) pictures c) recipes d) pens

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. Grammar

1. People don't .... eat fatta because it's difficult to digest.

a) often b) always c) never d) now

2. Press the bread .... around the meat to make hawawshi.

a) careful b) easily c) carefully d) easy

3. People .... eat ful medames with bread.

a) always b) never c) yet d) ever

4. Sayadeya is .... made by people who live near the coast.

a) never b) ever c) sometimes d) always

5. Grandma loves cooking and she cooks ....

a) good b) well c) bad d) badly

6. Today, I .... kahk with my mom and dad.

a) make b) makes c) am making d) are making

7. We always .... fesikh at Sham El-Nessim.

a) eat b) eats c) are eating d) eating

8. I .... colorful clothes.

a) wear usually b) wear often

c) usually wear d) wear always

9. Fares is in the garden with his dad. Fares .... him now.

a) help b) helps c) is helping d) helped

10. Dina's mom .... in an office every day.
    a) works   b) work   c) is working   d) worked
11. I always .... loose clothes.
    a) wear   b) wears   c) is wearing   d) am wearing
12. Today, we .... Eid Al-Fitr.
    a) celebrate   b) celebrates   c) are celebrating   d) celebrated
13. Look at these! I .... some eggs for Sham El-Nessim.
    a) paint   b) painted   c) am painting   d) paints
14. Fares .... in an apartment near the coast.
    a) live   b) lives   c) is living   d) living
15. My brother can run ....
    a) quick   b) quickly   c) easy   d) good

6 Put the words in the correct orders to make sentences.

1. is - country - Egypt - to visit - a fantastic - .

....

2. some - There - very - are - statues - big - .

....

3. do - on - What - special - wear - you - days - ?

....

4. keeps - cool - Linen - you - .

....

5. a very - Islamic- Eid Al-Adha - festival - is - important - .

....

6. playing - are- They - now - a board game - .

....

7 Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:

A visit to the pyramids

Guiding elements:

(Giza - Great - friends - Sphinx - enjoyed)

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

8 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. He always .... (wear) sandals.
2. .... (Do) you eating hawawshi now?
3. My mom cooks .... (good).
4. People .... (often don't) eat fatta.
5. What are you .... (do) at the moment?
6. We .... (always) go to school on Fridays. It's a holiday.
7. Nadia .... (living) in Luxor with her family.
8. What .... (are) you usually wear on the weekend?
9. Today, I .... (help) my mum at home..
10. Look .... (careful) before you cross the road.
11. Ali never .... (watch) TV at night.



Unit (9) Our culture

Vocabulary

cultural heritage	تراث ثقافي	agriculture	زراعة	irrigation	الري
identity	الهوية	ancient Egypt	مصر القديمة	monuments	آثار
archaeologist	عالم آثار	temple	معبد	calendar	تقويم
site	موقع أثري	civilization	حضارة	cruise	جولة نيلية
artifacts	مصنوعات يدوية	board game	لعبة لوحية	mask	قناع
engravings	نقوش	bury	يدفن	perfume	عطر
carve	ينحت	pottery	أواني فخارية	counter	بيدق (قطعة شطرنج)
clay	صلصال	tool	أداة يدوية	vase	زهرية
horizontal	أفقي	vertical	رأسي	bar chart	تمثيل بياني بالأعمدة

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

historical site	موقع تاريخي	lead to	يؤدي إلى
a long white dress	فستان أبيض طويل	proud of	فخور بـ
The Step Pyramid of Djoser	هرم زوسر المدرج	find out	يكتشف
The Temple of Karnak	معبد الكرنك	walk away	يمشي بعيدًا
Qaitbay Citadel	قلعة قايتباي	because of	بسبب
International Museum Day	اليوم العالمي للمتاحف	look for	يبحث عن
The Statue of Amenhotep III	تمثال أمنحتب الثالث	connect to	يرتبط بـ
Tutankhamun's Mask	قناع توت عنخ آمون	a piece of	قطعة من
Pharaoh Khufu's solar boat	مركب الشمس للفرعون خوفو	go up	يصعد لأعلى

Workbook Vocabulary

advanced	متقدم	canal	قناة ري	bring (brought)	يحضر
invent (ed)	يخترع	turn (ed) on	يشغل	Abydos	تمثال أبيدوس
online	متصل بالنت	throne	العرش	sculpture	تمثال منحوت
transportation	نقل	royal	ملكي	papyrus	ورق البردي

Help your child revise unit (9).

ساعد طفلك على أن يراجع الوحدة التاسعة .



The Past Simple Tense

زمن الماضي البسيط

Form:

The second form of the verb

✦ يتكون من التصريف الثاني للفعل (أي بإضافة d, ed, ied للفعل المنتظم وغير المنتظم يحفظ)

e.g. I visited Luxor last week.

e.g. They saw the lion at the zoo.

Usage:

✦ يستخدم للتعبير عن فعل حدث و انتهي في الماضي.

e.g. I went to school late yesterday.

Negative:

Subject + didn't + inf. ...

e.g. We didn't watch TV yesterday.

Yes / No question:

Did + subject + inf. ...?

e.g. Did Dalia find her book? - Yes, she did. - No, she didn't.

Wh- question:

QW + did + subject + inf. .... ?

e.g. Where did you go yesterday? - I went to the zoo.

Keywords:

yesterday	أمس	last (week, month,.....)	(الأسبوع، الشهر، ...) الماضي
ago	منذ	in the past	في الماضي

The Past Continuous Tense

زمن الماضي المستمر

Form:

I / He / She / It / Singular noun + was + v + ing

e.g. He was sitting under a tree.

We / You / They / Plural noun + were + v + ing

e.g. Akil and Ottah were playing the senet game.

Usage:

✦ يستخدم زمن الماضي المستمر للتعبير عن حدث كان مستمرًا في وقت محدد في الماضي:

e.g. They were having dinner yesterday evening.

Negative:

I / He / She / It / Singular noun + was not + v + ing

e.g. Ali was not sleeping at 5 p.m yesterday.

We / You / They / Plural noun + were not + v + ing

e.g. We were not watching TV yesterday morning.

Yes / No question:

(Was / Were) + subject + v + ing?

e.g. Were they playing tennis?

- Yes, they were. - No, they weren't.

Wh- question:

Q.W + (was / were) + subject + v + ing?

e.g. What were you doing at 4 p.m yesterday?

- I was watching TV.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. Where can you visit the Temple of Karnak?

   ....

2. Who did the ancient Egyptians bury?

   ....

3. Where are the Great Pyramids and the Sphinx?

   ....

4. How did the ancient Egyptians carve the Sphinx?

   ....

2 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

Library - interesting - Alexandria - doing

Omar : Where were you yesterday, Nabil?

Nabil : I was in Alexandria.

Omar : What were you 1)..there?

Nabil : I was visiting Alexandria 2)..

Omar : Was your visit 3)...?

Nabil : Yes, it was.

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

seasons - civilization - fertile - flood

Agriculture is an important part of Egypt's heritage. The Nile used to 1)............................ every year making the soil more fertile. This is why ancient Egyptians could farm the land and it led to a growth in 2)........................ There were three 3)................................. of farming in ancient Egypt which were all connected to the Nile.



Read the following text and answer the questions.

The Ancient Egyptians were able to farm the land because of the River Nile. Every year the Nile flooded during the flooding season. The Egyptians couldn't farm the land because the fields were full of water. The flooding season lasted from June to September. After the flood water went away, the soil was fertile and good for farming.

The growing season lasted from October to February. During this time, farmers planted their crops. They dug canals to carry water from the river to the fields. During the harvesting season, farmers cut and stored their crops. It lasted from March to May.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The Nile flooded during the ______________ season.

   a) harvesting b) flooding c) growing d) planting

2. The flooding season lasted four ______________ .

   a) 3 months b) 4 months c) 5 months d) 2 months

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What is the main idea of the text?

   ....

4. When did the farmers plant their crops?

   ....

5. How long is the harvesting season?

   ....

6. Why were the Ancient Egyptians able to farm the land?

   ....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. Vocabulary

1. A country's .... comes from its history and traditions.
   a) sport b) heritage c) pyramid d) irrigation
2. Heritage includes arts, buildings, music and dancing from the ....
   a) past b) present c) future d) certain time
3. .... and monuments are an important part of Egyptian heritage.
   a) Temples b) Libraries c) Hospitals d) Schools
4. People in ancient Egypt .... agriculture and calendars.
   a) broke b) grew c) developed d) ate
5. The ancient Egyptians were an advanced ....
   a) civilization b) site c) season d) location
6. Archaeologists explore historical .... to learn about the past.
   a) music b) sites c) plants d) food
7. A country's history and traditions are part of its ....
   a) crops b) seasons c) identity d) economy
8. A .... shows us the twelve months of the year.
   a) field b) calendar c) map d) site
9. In the past the Nile .... during the flooding season.
   a) rained b) snowed c) flooded d) blew
10. The soil was fertile and good for farming in the .... season.
    a) flooding b) growing c) harvesting d) snowing
11. During the .... season, farmers cut and stored crops.
    a) harvesting b) flooding c) growing d) raining
12. The ancient Egyptians built the Step Pyramid for .... Djoser.
    a) Prince b) Queen c) King d) Princess

13. Archaeologists think that the Sphinx was built to .... the pyramids.

    a) destroy b) break c) protect d) cut

14. Many tourists travel down the Nile on a ....

    a) bike b) cruise c) train d) car

15. You can show artifacts in a/an ....

    a) drawer b) exhibition c) bedroom d) kitchen

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. Grammar

1. Sara and her parents .... at the Egyptian artifacts in the museum.

   a) looks b) has looked c) were looking d) looking

2. Sara .... some information to her parents from the museum brochure.

   a) have read b) was reading c) reading d) were reading

3. Archaeologists .... a senet game in Egyptian tombs.

   a) finds b) was finding c) found d) finding

4. Sara .... on her phone and started to look online.

   a) were turning b) turned c) will turn d) turning

5. My mum .... on a chair yesterday morning.

   a) was sitting b) sits c) will sit d) sitting

6. The ancient Egyptians .... their kings and queens.

   a) will bury b) bury c) buried d) buries

7. Did the ancient Egyptians .... the Sphinx from a stone?

   a) carved b) carve c) were carving d) carves

8. The ancient Egyptians .... pots from clay.

   a) make b) will make c) made d) makes

9. What .... at 5 pm yesterday?

   a) you were doing b) do you do c) were you doing d) have you done

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعدْ طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

10. Where .... you born?

a) was b) are c) were d) is

11. They .... the senet game.

a) was playing b) were playing c) plays d) playing

12. The archaeologist .... when she found an old box.

a) were digging b) was digging c) will dig d) digs

13. Sami .... cookies when his dad came home.

a) made b) were making c) was making d) make

14. Mona and Salma .... a museum.

a) visits b) were visiting c) was visiting d) visiting

15. When I .... Fares, I was studying in the library.

a) saw b) see c) was seeing d) sees

6 Put the words in the correct orders to make sentences.

1. did - find - What - you - artifacts - ?

....

2. has - design - museum - new - to - Adam - a - .

....

3. a bar chart - show - Mazen - to - used - information - his - .

....

4. a country's - a - heritage - of - Agriculture - part - is - .

....

5. watching - home - came - I - while - was - TV - Ali - .

....

6. is - country - to visit - Egypt - a fantastic - .

....

7 Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:

A historical site

Guiding elements:

Sphinx - Pyramids - culture - Egypt - heritage

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

8 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. Archaeologists .... (find) tombs last year.
2. What was he .... (do) yesterday evening?
3. Ali .... (did) his homework when he saw a bird.
4. Dina .... (were) visiting the museum.
5. .... (Did) you happy yesterday?
6. The children .... (are) playing a game at 7 pm yesterday.
7. My friend .... (sits) under a tree last week.
8. What .... (you were) doing at 6 pm yesterday?
9. Ottah .... (take) out some counters from his bag yesterday.
10. Ottah sat down with Akil and .... (show) him a long wooden box.
11. I was walking in the street when I .... (meet) my best friend.

Unit (10) Connecting the world

Vocabulary

cyber friends	أصدقاء عبر الإنترنت	access	تسجيل الدخول
instant message	رسائل فورية	adventure	مغامرة
electronic device	جهاز إلكتروني	prepare	يعد/ يجهز
email	إيميل- بريد إلكتروني	type	يكتب /يطبع
presentation	عرض - تقديم	keyboard	لوحة المفاتيح
vlog	مدونة فيديو	publish	ينشر
website	موقع على الإنترنت	checklist	قائمة التدقيق
nasty comment	تعليقات بغيضة	technology	تكنولوجيا
electric car	سيارة كهربائية	digital	رقمي
scrubber	مدخنة لتنقية الغازات والأبخرة	blog	مدونة
smog- free tower	برج تنقية الهواء	fossil fuels	وقود حفري
global community	مجتمع عالمي	smoke signals	إشارات الدخان
social media account	حساب على مواقع التواصل الاجتماعي	social media platform	منصة التواصل الاجتماعي
means of communication	وسائل الاتصال		

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

talk about	يتحدث عن	instead of	بدلًا من	look at	ينظر إلى
share with	يتشارك مع	need to	يحتاج أن	ask for help	يطلب المساعدة
similar to	مشابه لـ	help with	يساعد في	use for	يستخدم لـ
belong to	يخص / ينتمي إلى	hand to	يُسلم لـ	set up	يؤسس
make fun of	يسخر من	turn off	يغلق / يقفل	for fun	للمتعة
interested in	مهتم بـ	lots of	كثير من	contact with	يتصل بـ



Giving advice (should - shouldn't)

Form:

Subject + should + inf.

- You should choose a title for your story.

Usage:

We use "should + inf" to say that something is a good idea.

- You should check your work.

Negative:

Subject + shouldn't + inf.

- You shouldn't forget your homework.

We use "shouldn't + inf" to say that something is a bad idea.

- You shouldn't be afraid to ask your teacher for help.

NOTE **shouldn't = should not**

Remember

- We put a period (.) at the end of a sentence.
- We put a comma (,) after "First, / Dear Editor," and in lists.
- We put a question mark (?) at the end of the question.
- We use (and) to join similar ideas.

e.g. I like English and Arabic.

- We use (but) to join contrasting ideas.

e.g. He is poor, but he is happy.

- (or) is used instead of (and) in negative sentences.

e.g. She doesn't like maths or Arabic.

Help your child revise unit (10).

ساعد طفلك على أن يراجع الوحدة العاشرة.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. Who helped Nahla to set up an account?

....

2. What does Nahla want to be?

....

3. Do Nahla's friends like her photos?

....

4. When did Nahla post her first video?

....

2 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

solve - causes - pollution - factories

Sara : Do you learn about pollution?

Toka : Yes, of course.

Sara : What 1).. pollution?

Toka : Airplanes, traffic and 2)..

Sara : How do we 3).. this problem?

Toka : We can plant more trees.

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

devices - smoke - technology - messages

There are different ways to send messages from one place to another place. In the past people used 1).................... signals or birds to send messages to each other. Today we use 2)...................... like electronic 3)...................... to help us send messages.



4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Air pollution is one of the biggest problems for people's health. Air pollution is created by airplanes, traffic, factories, and power plants. When we burn fossil fuels and use strong cleaning chemicals to clean our houses, it also creates pollution. However, there are some new and exciting ways to solve the problem of air pollution. We have learned about scrubbers and smog-free towers that help to clean gases and pollution produced by factories and industry. Another method which is becoming popular is called greening. Greening is growing a wall of plants on the side of a building.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. .... pollution is created by airplanes, traffic, factories, and power plants.

   a) Air b) Water c) Land d) River

2. .... and smog-free towers help to stop air pollution.

   a) Scrubbers b) Factories c) Airplanes d) Traffic

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What is the general idea of the text?

....

4. How can we solve the air pollution problem?

....

5. What does "greening" mean?

....

6. What happens when we burn fossil fuels?

....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. **Vocabulary**

1. A .... is a way to share information with other people by talking about it.
   a) vlog b) website c) presentation d) digital
2. A/An .... is a digital form of a letter.
   a) blog b) vlog c) email d) website
3. Nahla has a new social media ....
   a) account b) photos c) videos d) access
4. Air .... is one of the biggest problems for people's health.
   a) location b) pollution c) resolution d) presentation
5. A .... is similar to a blog.
   a) website b) vlog c) device d) web
6. People post videos they make instead .... written texts.
   a) at b) by c) of d) in
7. Abdelrahman is a perfect typist. He can type without looking at the ..... .
   a) mouse b) screen c) keyboard d) email
8. You should share your ideas .... others.
   a) by b) for c) with d) in
9. I also made some .... online.
   a) cyberfriends b) doctors c) enemies d) vets
10. You shouldn't write .... comments on social media.
    a) good b) nasty c) kind d) happy
11. .... is my favorite hobby.
    a) Pictures b) Photography c) Paints d) Photos
12. Some of my friends are also interested .... writing after school.
    a) on b) at c) in d) about

13. The .... make air pollution worse.

a) fossil fuels b) rain c) sun d) moon

14. This is an .... story, I can't believe it.

a) credible b) incredible c) good d) bad

15. A .... is a home page on the World Wide Web.

a) blog b) vlog c) website d) email

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. **Grammar**

1. You .... waste your time.

a) should b) shouldn't c) can d) must

2. You .... check your spelling while writing.

a) shouldn't b) can't c) should d) mustn't

3. You shouldn't .... any spelling or grammar mistakes.

a) has b) had c) having d) have

4. You shouldn't .... the punctuation while writing.

a) forget b) forgets c) forgot d) forgotten

5. You .... work too long without a break.

a) should b) shouldn't c) can d) must

6. You .... choose a title for your story.

a) can't b) shouldn't c) should d) mustn't

7. You should .... your homework before dinner.

a) do b) does c) doing d) did

8. I can write short stories .... articles.

a) but b) and c) or d) so

9. There aren't any after-school clubs .... our school.

a) at b) on c) in d) or

Help your child deal with such questions.

• ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

10. There's a newspaper, ... there isn't a magazine.

a) and b) but c) or d) because

11. I'll go to a photography club .... a sports club.

a) but b) and c) or d) so

12. You .... go to bed early. You have an exam tomorrow.

a) should b) shouldn't c) can't d) mustn't

13. You shouldn't .... afraid to ask your teacher for help.

a) is b) being c) are d) be

14. You should .... a coat if the weather is cold.

a) wears b) wearing c) wear d) wore

15. You .... write nasty comments online.

a) should b) shouldn't c) can d) must

6 Put the words in the correct orders to make sentences.

1. technology - a form - The smartphone - of - is - .

....

2. spelling - check - your - should - You - .

....

3. make - video - I'm - a new - to - going - .

....

4. writing - stories - like - you - Do - ?

....

5. air - causes - What - pollution - ?

....

6. made - Nadia - has - for - vlog - her - a new video - .

....



7 Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:

Means of communication

Guiding elements:

(website - information - World Wide Web - devices)

....

....

....

....

....

....

8 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. I go to school .... (at) the morning.
2. Ali was .... (on) school yesterday.
3. I don't like science .... (and) math.
4. I like milk, ... (or) I don't like coffee.
5. I'd like a pen .... (but) a pencil.
6. You .... (should) be afraid to ask for help.
7. You .... (shouldn't) check your work while writing.
8. You shouldn't .... (eats) in class.
9. You .... (shouldn't) listen carefully to your teachers.
10. I do my homework .... (on) the evening.
11. What should I .... (doing) to stay safe online?

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Unit (11) On the road!

Vocabulary

garbage	قمامة	destination	وجهة الوصول	airplane	طائرة
streetcar	ترام	volunteer	متطوع - يتطوع	mule	بغل
traffic jam	ازدحام مروي	transportation	النقل و المواصلات	cab	سيارة أجرة
wagon	عربة نقل	plan	خطة	canal	قناة
waterway	ممر مائي	on time	في الوقت المحدد	canoe	زورق
subway	مترو الأنفاق	steam train	قطار بخاري	rocket	صاروخ
recycle	يعيد تدوير	traffic lights	إشارات المرور	ferry	عبّارة
reuse	يعيد استخدام	bike path	مسار للدراجات	reduce	يقلل
roof	سطح	green spaces	مساحات خضراء	walking	المشي
residents	السكان	recycling bins	صناديق إعادة التدوير	trash	قمامة
highway	طريق سريع	water vapor	بخار الماء	trip	رحلة قصيرة

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

go with	يذهب مع	learn a lot about	يتعلم كثيرًا عن	fly through	يطير عبر (خلال)
need to	يحتاج أن	along the river	بطول النهر	on foot	سيرًا على الأقدام
use for	يستخدم لـ	up and down	ذهابًا و إيابًا	on time	في الوقت المحدد
a lot of	كثير من	other types of	أنواع أخرى من	is located on	يقع في
run on	يدار بـ	much faster than	أسرع كثيرًا من	come from	يأتي من
bad for	ضار لـ	on my way to	في طريقي إلى	no more than	ليس أكثر من
transport...to...	ينقل... إلى...	move from...to....	ينتقل من...إلى...		

Comparative & Superlative

Comparative Adjectives

Short adjectives

adj. صفة قصيرة + er + than

➥ The coast is greener than the desert.

Long adjectives

more / less + adj صفة طويلة + than

➥ Gold is more expensive than silver.

Superlative Adjectives

Short adjectives

the + adj. صفة قصيرة + est

➥ The Nile is the longest river in the world.

Long adjectives

the most / the least + adj. صفة طويلة

➥ This is the most interesting film.

هناك صفات غير منتظمة:

Adjective	Comparative adjective	Superlative adjective
good جيد	better than أفضل من	the best الأفضل
bad سئ	worse than أسوء من	the worst الأسوء

The Prefix البادئات (dis - re - un)

- **un = not:** ➥ Kareem is unhappy.
- **dis = not:** ➥ I dislike playing tennis, but I like football.
- **re = again:** ➥ You can recycle old things.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What did humans watch from the beginning of time?

....

2. How long do we fly from one continent to another today?

....

3. What the problem with transportation that uses gasoline?

....

4. Who are designing greener airplanes and ships?

....

2 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

major - transportation - skiff - highway

Seif : Can you tell me about transportation in ancient Egypt?

Safia : Yes. The most important 1).. was the River Nile.

Seif : Why did the Egyptians travel along the river?

Safia : Because all the 2)............................ cities were along the River Nile.

Seif : What kind of boat did they use?

Safia : They used a small boat called a 3)..

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

transportation - canals - bikes - goods

There is a system of canals in my city with bike paths next to them. I believe that more people will ride their 1)...................... if there are more bike paths. The 2)...................... provide more outdoor spaces for people to enjoy, but they also provide 3)...................... . Electric canal boats carry goods across the city, so there are fewer truc , the road.



4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

In ancient Egypt the most important highway was the River Nile. The Egyptians traveled mostly along the river because all the major cities were along the River Nile. So boats and ships were the most important forms of transportation. Most Egyptians used a small boat called a skiff. They made this simple boat from papyrus and rope. People could travel short distances in these boats, or they could use it for fishing. They used oars to make the boats move. They made larger boats and ships from wood. These ships had a large sail to catch the wind and they used oars to move and control the direction.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The most important highway was the ....

   a) lake b) canal c) River Nile d) sea

2. They made larger boats and ships from ....

   a) glass b) wood c) metal d) steel

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What is the main idea of the text?

....

4. Why did the ships have a large sail?

....

5. What was the first small boat called?

....

6. Where were the major cities?

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. Vocabulary

1. The train will reach its .... in an hour.
   a) destination b) country c) factory d) city
2. All the cars and trucks in the city cause a lot of ....
   a) population b) pollution c) translation d) celebration
3. Dad likes walking so he always goes to work on ....
   a) a train b) foot c) a bus d) a car
4. Anas is never on .... He's always late.
   a) seconds b) minutes c) time d) hours
5. Our car is in traffic .... We are moving very slowly.
   a) gym b) jam c) device d) bread
6. You must stop at the traffic .... when the light is red.
   a) candles b) lamps c) lights d) balloons
7. Put your plastic bottles in the recycling ....
   a) baskets b) bins c) bags d) pins
8. .... spaces keep the air clean in our cities.
   a) Green b) Red c) Yellow d) Pink
9. Over 1,000 .... live in my neighborhood.
   a) vehicles b) roads c) residents d) seats
10. We should .... the traffic in our cities.
    a) recycle b) reduce c) reuse d) exercise
11. There is too much .... in the street. It looks very messy.
    a) garbage b) scenery c) green spaces d) trees
12. Don't .... this plastic bottle. It's got a hole in it.
    a) reuse b) reduce c) replay d) rewrite

13. We can .... plastic, paper and glass at the recycling center.
    a) reduce b) reuse c) recycle d) redo
14. A lot of .... helped at the beach clean up.
    a) volunteers b) chairs c) bins d) bags
15. In the past, farmers used to transport their goods in ....
    a) airplanes b) subway
    c) wagons and trucks d) rockets

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. Grammar

1. What is the .... form of renewable energy?
   a) cheap b) cheapest c) cheaper d) more cheap
2. We need to create a .... urban environment for everyone.
   a) cleaner b) cleanest c) clean as d) cleaner than
3. Our cities should be .... with more trees and plants.
   a) much green b) greener c) greenest d) less green
4. Benban Solar Park in Egypt is the .... solar park in Africa.
   a) larger b) large c) largest d) larger than
5. I think the wind energy is the .... form of renewable energy.
   a) good b) better c) best d) well
6. Solar energy is .... ecological than fossil fuels.
   a) more b) most c) least d) little
7. The .... things we can do about climate change is to burn fuels.
   a) bad b) worse c) worst d) better
8. Alexandria is .... than Tanta.
   a) busy b) busier c) busiest d) the busiest
9. The Sahara is the .... desert in the world.
   a) big b) bigger c) biggest d) much bigger

10. Tigers are .... than cats.
    a) large b) larger c) largest d) the largest
11. To .... something is to make it less.
    a) reduce b) reuse c) recycle d) redo
12. I like tennis but I .... handball.
    a) disconnect b) dislike c) disagree d) accept
13. .... the TV when you leave the room.
    a) Disconnect b) Appear c) Dislike d) Disappear
14. Sweets are ....
    a) unhappy b) unfriendly c) unhealthy d) healthy
15. Menna lost her bag. She is ....
    a) unhealthy b) unhappy c) unfriendly d) unkind

6 Put the words in the correct orders to make sentences.

1. the biggest - in - The Sahara - the world - is - desert - .

....

2. medal - better - is - A gold - a silver - than - medal - .

....

3. more ecological - fossil fuels - than - is - Solar energy - .

....

4. is - the world - Tutankhamun - famous - the most - in - pharaoh - .

....

5. polar bears - than - larger - Elephants - are - .

....

6. did - What - do - the - oars - ?

....



7 Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:

Transportation in ancient Egypt

Guiding elements:

(highway - River Nile - boat - skiff - oars)

....

....

....

....

....

....

8 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. Talia is crying. She is .... (happy).
2. Hamza is .... (tall) than Adham.
3. The car is .... (fastest) than the bike.
4. Sweets and fats are .... (healthy).
5. Drive .... (slow). Children are playing.
6. Be .... (carefully). There are animals on the road.
7. You .... (mustn't) wear your seat belt.
8. Solar energy is .... (the most) ecolc.gical than fossil fuels.
9. A gold medal is .... (good) than a silver medal.
10. The Sahara Desert is .... (big) in the world.
11. The sun is the .... (cheap) form of renewable energy.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Unit (12) A global challenge

Vocabulary

geology	علم الجيولوجيا	global	عالمي	newspaper report	تقرير صحفي
treaty	معاهدة	news	أخبار	lentils	عدس
rocks	صخور	newspaper	جريدة	chickpeas	حمص
stones	أحجار	pact	ميثاق	wheat	قمح
erosion	تآكل التربة	agreement	إتفاقية	dish	طبق / أكلة
drought	جفاف	leader	قائد / زعيم	appetizer	فاتح الشهية
flood	فيضان	foundation	مؤسسة	ingredients	مكونات
glacier	نهر جليدي	youth	الشباب	dessert	الحلو (بعد الأكل)
landslide	انزلاق التربة	headline	عنوان رئيسي	party	حزب
tsunami	تسونامي	lead-in	المقدمة	water shortage	نقص المياه
agriculture	الزراعة	caption	تعليق (على صورة)	climate change	تغير المناخ
conference	مؤتمر	nations	أمم		

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

move from..to..	ينتقل من .... إلى	a piece of	قطعة من
result in	يؤدي إلى	agree to	يوافق أن
for a long time	لفترة طويلة	decide to	يقرر أن
in danger	في خطر	in fact	في الحقيقة
made of	مصنوع من	for example	على سبيل المثال



The Future Simple Tense زمن المستقبل البسيط



Subject (الفاعل) + will + inf. (مصدر الفعل)

e.g. The drought will cause a water shortage.

Usage:

✦ يستخدم زمن المستقبل البسيط للتحدث عن التنبؤات المستقبلية.

e.g. It will rain tomorrow.

Negative:

Subject (الفاعل) + will + not + inf. (مصدر الفعل)

e.g. We will not burn fossil fuels.

e.g. It won't rain tomorrow.

Yes / No question:

Will + subject (الفاعل) + inf. (مصدر الفعل) ...?

e.g. Will you go shopping tomorrow? Yes, I will. No, I won't.

Conjunctions الروابط

أداة الربط هي كلمة تربط الكلمات والجمل ببعض.

and و

تستخدم (and) لربط فكرتين متشابهين.

- My family recycles paper and glass.

but لكن

تستخدم (but) لربط فكرتين مختلفين أو متناقضين.

- The leaders went to a conference, but they didn't sign a treaty.

or أو

تستخدم (or) للتعبير عن الاختيارات.

- Do they use solar energy or do they burn coal?

so لذلك

تستخدم (so) لربط السبب والنتائج.

- My dad was at the conference so he is really tired.

Help your child revise unit (12).

ساعد طفلك على أن يراجع الوحدة الثانية عشرة.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. Where were you last week?

....

2. What were you doing there?

....

3. What did you hear?

....

4. How was the colorful bird?

....

2 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

erosion - doing - reading - about

Sama : What are you doing?

Rodyna : I'm 1) .... a book.

Sama : What is it 2) ....?

Rodyna : It's about 3) ....

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

shortage - rivers - Farmers - danger

Drought happens where there is not enough rain for a long time. When this happens, 1) .... and lakes become dry. 2) .... cannot grow food and nature is in 3) .... When people do not have all the water that they need, we say that there is a water shortage.



4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Our world needs our care. Many problems threaten it. One of these problems is climate change. Climate change is caused by many factories which lead to great pollution in land, water and air. Burning fossil fuels like petrol and coal causes air pollution and global warming. Individuals and nations must work together to stop using fossil fuels and make use of cleaner sources of energy like solar, wind and waves energies. By this way, climate change will disappear.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. .... is a fossil fuel.

a) Solar energy b) Wind energy

c) Coal d) Wave energy

2. .... energy is a cleaner source of energy.

a) Coal b) Petrol c) Gas d) Solar

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What is the main idea of the text?

....

4. What does our world need?

....

5. Is climate change a dangerous problem?

....

6. What caused the climate change?

....

 Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. Vocabulary

1. When it doesn't rain for a long time, there is sometimes a ....
   a) landslide b) tsunami c) drought d) glacier
2. Too much rain in one area can cause a ....
   a) flood b) landslide c) tsunami d) water shortage
3. When a volcano explodes under the sea, this creates a huge wave called ....
   a) drought b) flood c) landslide d) tsunami
4. A .... is a huge ice flow that moves very slowly across the land.
   a) glacier b) tsunami c) flood d) drought
5. The .... is made of oxygen, carbon dioxide, and other gases.
   a) atmosphere b) tsunami c) flood d) drought
6. When chemicals from air pollution mix with water and sunlight, it creates ....
   a) acid rain b) tsunami c) flood d) drought
7. Climate change affects everyone living on our ....
   a) plant b) plan c) planet d) plate
8. A .... is a group of people who have the same goals.
   a) party b) pact c) treaty d) conference
9. A .... is a formal meeting where people meet to talk about a topic.
   a) treaty b) conference c) pact d) party
10. A .... is a formal written agreement between two or more countries.
    a) pact b) conference c) treaty d) party
11. A .... is a formal agreement between two people or groups of people.
    a) pact b) conference c) treaty d) party
12. The .... is one or two sentences that summarize the report.
    a) lead-in b) headline c) caption d) body

13. The .... is the title of the report.
    a) caption b) headline c) lead-in d) body
14. The .... is a description of a picture.
    a) headline b) caption c) body d) lead-in
15. Erosion is a .... process.
    a) chemical b) medical c) natural d) industrial

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. Grammar

1. It .... tomorrow.
   a) rain b) rains c) raining d) will rain
2. We .... go to the beach next Friday.
   a) don't b) won't c) aren't d) haven't
3. Will he .... an electric car?
   a) buy b) buys c) buying d) bought
4. Will you go shopping this afternoon? Yes, I ....
   a) do b) will c) have d) am
5. We will .... to the museum.
   a) go b) goes c) going d) went
6. If it doesn't rain, we .... a water shortage.
   a) have b) are having c) will have d) has
7. Polar bears .... their habitat if the polar ice caps continue to melt.
   a) lose b) lost c) will lose d) loses
8. If we .... plastic and glass, we will produce less waste.
   a) recycle b) recycles c) recycled d) will recycle
9. If we plant more trees, the air .... cleaner.
   a) is b) was c) are d) will be

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

10. It .... the environment if we stop using plastic.

a) help b) helping c) helped d) will help

11. If the climate .... hotter, there will be more droughts.

a) get b) gets c) getting d) will get

12. The parties agreed to reduce air pollution .... plastic waste.

a) but b) so c) and d) or

13. We need to stop pollution now .... it will be too late.

a) and b) but c) so d) or

14. Traffic wasn't a problem 50 years ago, ... now it's very serious.

a) and b) but c) so d) or

15. The government decided to stop using fossil fuels, ... they built a wind farm.

a) and b) but c) so d) or

6 Put the words in the correct orders to make sentences.

1. change - everything - Climate - our - affects - planet - on - .

....

2. had - meeting - leaders - important - World - a very - .

....

3. favorite - What's - food - your - ?

....

4. is - process - Erosion - a natural - .

....

5. ingredients - What - you - do - need - ?

....

6. do - need - we - Why - trees - more - ?

....



7 Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:

Food

Guiding elements:

(plants - animals - wheat - cheese)

....

....

....

....

....

....

8 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. If we .... (uses) electric cars, our cities will be cleaner.
2. He is poor, ... (and) he is happy.
3. Ali was ill .... (or) he didn't go to school.
4. I will .... (visits) the zoo.
5. Sameh won't .... (going) to school tomorrow.
6. You .... (will) save electricity if you don't turn off your computer at night.
7. I got up early, ... (and) I went to school late.
8. If I have enough money, I .... (buy) a car.
9. If we don't .... (burns) fossil fuels, the air will be cleaner.
10. .... (Do) you recycle these newspaper later? - Yes, I will.
11. If the climate gets hotter, there will .... (is) more droughts.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Exam (1) محافظة الجيزة

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What grade is Fares in?

....

2. What does Fares like?

....

3. Who is younger than Fares?

....

4. What's Amr's favorite subject?

....

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

out - energy - wind - pollution

There are some kinds of 1)........................ We can use which are renewable. They don't run 2)........................ We get renewable energy from natural resources such as the 3)......................, the sun, water and heat inside the Earth. These kinds of energy don't make pollution and on the long run, they are better.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Ali often helped his dad look after the sheep and goats. One day, he was sitting under a tree. It was a hot day, and he was tired. Then he saw one of his friends. He waved at him. His friend was carrying a bag, and he was very happy when he saw his friend. Look Ali a long wooden box with squares on the top. It was a game. Father made it. The box had beautiful pictures on the other side.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Ali looked after the ....

a) camels b) horses c) sheep d) lions

2. Ali was sitting under a ....

a) tree b) building c) school d) flower

B) Answer the following questions.

3. How was the weather?

....

4. What was Tamer carrying?

....

5. Who made the game?

....

6. What is the general idea of the text?

....

4 The Reader

A) Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Amir took the laundry to the roof. ( )

2. Amir saw the River Nile below. ( )

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

3. There was a .... bag around the seagull's leg.

a) plastic b) woolen c) fiber d) cotton

4. Amir took the picture of the seagull by his.. .

a) laptop b) mobile phone c) tablet d) computer

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. They .... watching TV programs now.
   a) isn't b) weren't c) aren't d) am not
2. Where .... you go last week?
   a) do b) are c) did d) were
3. Do you like swimming? - Yes, I ....
   a) do b) does c) am d) was
4. He .... go to school every Friday.
   a) don't b) doesn't c) isn't d) wasn't

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. school - We - are - to - walking - now - .

   ....

2. wearing - What - you - are - today - ?

   ....

7 Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:

Sham Al-Nessim

Guiding elements:

(Sham El-Nessim - festival - boiled eggs - gardens - play)

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Exam (2) محافظة القليوبية

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. When does Adam always visit his grandma?

....

2. How does Adam go to his grandma?

....

3. What does he play in the evening?

....

4. Where does he help his grandma?

....

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

celebrated - ate - spring - picnics

Sham El-Nessim is celebrated all over Egypt. It comes in 1)...................... or May on Mondays. The Ancient Egyptians 2)..................... it long time ago. People always have 3).................... on that day. They usually eat dried fish with salt. They enjoy the fresh spring air.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Amira has a new social media account. Her sister helped her to set up her account. Amira signed into her account. There were some comments from people she didn't know. Amira felt very sad because some of the comments were **nasty**. Amira told her mom about the comments.

Mom said "Sign into your account and go to the settings. First, you need to make your page private, that means only your friends can see your videos. Now, let's turn off the comments. That way people can't say bad things about you." Amira said, "I'm going to make a new video now and see what happens."

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The underlined word "nasty" means ....

a) great b) bad c) nice d) good

2. Amira's .... helped her to set up her account.

a) friend b) father c) mother d) sister

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Why is Amira going to make a new video?

....

4. Who sent the comments?

....

5. Who turns off the comments?

....

6. How did Amira feel after reading the comments?

....

4 The Reader

A) Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Amir could see the Nile from the roof. ( )
2. There was a basket around the seagull's leg. ( )

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

3. Plastic trash can .... the birds.

a) put b) help c) harm d) make

4. Waleed's dad works at the ....

a) home b) grocery store c) school d) hospital

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The children .... a game when their dad came home.
   a) were playing b) are playing c) played d) play
2. You should .... your friends.
   a) helps b) helping c) to help d) help
3. She often .... to school.
   a) walks b) walked c) walk d) is walking
4. I like poetry .... fiction.
   a) or b) because c) but d) and

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. never - Ful medames - has - it - meat - in - .

....

2. tourists - How - to - many - Luxor - travel - ?

....

7 Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:

A visit to the pyramids

Guiding elements:

(fantastic place - Giza - Ancient Egyptians - huge stones - happy)

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Exam (3) محافظة دمياط

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What season does Egypt celebrate Sham El-Nessim in?

....

2. What's the weather like in Sham El-Nessim?

....

3. What do people do with eggs?

....

4. Where do people go with their families?

....

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

protect - recycle - garbage - pollution

Our environment is the land, water and air that people, animals and plants live in. To help the environment, people can 1)..................... plastic, paper and glass. They shouldn't drop 2)..................... and they should use fewer fossil fuels because they create pollution. Trees are the source of oxygen as they absorb carbon dioxide, so we should plant more trees to help to 3)..................... the environment

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Tourists from all over the world come to Egypt to see its wonderful treasures and monuments. Many visitors take a Nile cruise, stopping at Luxor to visit the famous temples in the Valley of the Kings. They can see some of artifacts in Luxor Museum and they can visit the great temple of Karnak. In Cairo, they can enjoy visiting the sultan Hassan Mosque and see the Cairo Museum. They can buy souvenirs from Khan El-Khalili. In Egypt, people are proud of their heritage from the past.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The main idea in the text is about ....

a) tourists b) students c) neighbours d) teachers

2. The underlined word "proud" in the text means ....

a) bored b) angry c) pleased d) easy

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Why do tourists come to Egypt?

....

4. What can tourists see in Luxor?

....

5. Where can tourists buy souvenirs?

....

6. What is the main idea of the text?

....

4 The Reader

A) Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. During the earthquake, bricks fell onto the ship and made it sink. ( )
2. Amir's friends didn't want to help him with his plan. ( )

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

3. In 2001 .... discovered the city of Thônis-Heracleion when they dived under water.

a) doctors b) archaeologists c) teachers d) engineers

4. The seagull is in.............................., there was a plastic bag around its leg.

a) trouble b) dish c) car d) bottle



5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. We are .... the beach because it is full of plastic.

   a) cleaned   b) cleaning   c) clean   d) cleans

2. The Sahara is .... desert in the world.

   a) the biggest   b) bigger than   c) biggest   d) bigger

3. People in ancient Egypt .... pottery and vases from clay.

   a) have made   b) make   c) will make   d) made

4. If Aser buys an electric car, he .... the environment.

   a) will help   b) would help   c) helped   d) helping

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. person's - copy - You - shouldn't - another - work - .

   ....

2. the science - Will - museum - they - go - to - ?

   ....

7 Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:

Your favourite dish

Guiding elements:

(Hawawshi - beef - bread - meat - onion - pressed - salad)

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Exam (4)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What's Rahma's grade?

....

2. How do they go to school?

....

3. What subject does Rahma like?

....

4. What's Rahma's favorite game?

....

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

learn - agriculture - sites - heritage

Egypt built many amazing temples and monuments, this is an important part of our 1)...................... They also developed agriculture and some of the first calendars. Archaeologists have learned lots of interesting things about the civilization of ancient Egypt by exploring historical 2)...................... at places like Abu Simbel, Luxor and Giza. I visit museums with my parents to 3)...................... about things people did in the past.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Last month was Ramadan. Abdullah made a special lantern to celebrate Ramadan. After Ramadan comes the 10th month of Shawwal. Shawwal is a celebratory month, with Eid Al-Fitr taking place from the first to the third day. Lots of food and gifts are exchanged during Shawwal. Many people fast the six days in Shawwal. Eid Al-Fitr is very important Islamic festival. We wear our best clothes for the celebration and we visit our family and friends. We give each other presents and we have a feast together.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. After Ramadan, we celebrate ....

a) Eid Al-Adha b) Eid- Al Fitr c) Sham El- Nessim d) Flooding

2. Eid Al- Fitr lasts for .... days.

a) three b) four c) five d) seven

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What did Abdullah do last Ramadan?

....

4. What do many people do in Shawwal?

....

5. How do Muslims celebrate Eid Al-Fitr?

....

6. What's the main idea of the text?

....

4 The Reader

A) Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Amir and his friends couldn't make change. ( )

2. Waleed's dad would use plastic bags instead of biodegradable ones. ( )

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

3. Amir took the laundry up to the ....

a) ground b) roof c) Nile d) garden

4. Grandma volunteered to ....

a) swim b) go c) sleep d) help

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Today, we .... our English exam.
   a) take b) took c) taking d) are taking
2. Nada always .... to school early by bus.
   a) go b) goes c) went d) is going
3. We .... waste our time.
   a) shouldn't b) must c) should d) aren't
4. The coast is .... than the desert.
   a) green b) most green c) greener d) more green

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. Egyptians - clay - Ancient - made - from - pottery vases - .

....

2. plant - How - Egypt - trees - did - many - ?

....

7 Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:

Your trip to Alex

Guiding elements:

(Last summer - Alex - sea - family - hotel - enjoyed)

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Exam (5)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What do animals and plants need to live?

....

2. What do most of the energy we use come from?

....

3. Mention three kinds of fossil fuels.

....

4. What happens when we burn fossil fuels?

....

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

families - eggs - games - spring

Sham El-Nessim is an old Egyptian festival. It is the start of 1)...................... Ancient Egyptians celebrated it. The weather at Sham El-Nessim is sunny. Most 2)...................... enjoy going to parks, gardens and beaches. They wear colourful clothes. Young children play 3)...................... like hide and seek. People color boiled eggs and eat salted fish. It is a wonderful day.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Adel is from Cairo. He began swimming lessons a few months ago. He likes swimming very much. He often went to the swimming pool in the club near his house. He went with his parents for two or three hours every day. His parents were very pleased with him because he was swimming well. They decided to take him to the sea in Alexandria to swim there. When Adel saw the sea, he looked at it for a long time. But he was not very happy. He turned to his parents and said, " I think the swimming pool is much safer than the sea!"

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Adel enjoys .... in the swimming pool.

   a) swimming   b) eating   c) walking   d) drawing

2. He went to the sea in ....

   a) Port Said   b) Alexandria   c) Matrouh   d) Tanta

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What does Adel think of the swimming pool?

....

4. Why were Adel's parents pleased with him?

....

5. How was Adel when he looked at the sea?

....

6. What is the general idea of the text?

....

4 The Reader

A) Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Amir was sad for the bird's problem. (   )
2. Amir's father can sew some shopping bags for him. (   )

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

3. There was a plastic bag around the seagull's ....

   a) beak   b) wing   c) leg   d) feather

4. We should clean the .... to save the Nile.

   a) roofs   b) riverbanks   c) nests   d) beaches

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. What are you .... now?
   a) do b) does c) doing d) did
2. It always .... in winter.
   a) raining b) rains c) rain d) rained
3. Adam .... cookies when his dad came home.
   a) was making b) were making c) makes d) made
4. Grandma loves cooking and she cooks ....
   a) often b) never c) careful d) well

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. from - energy - Solar - the - sun - comes - .

....

2. the - How - is - season - harvesting - long - ?

....

7 Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:

Your favorite dish

Guiding elements:

(delicious - mom - cook - eat)

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Exam (6)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What city do tourists visit?

....

2. What can tourists see there?

....

3. Who buried their kings and queens?

....

4. What can we see in the temples?

....

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

trees - caused - oxygen - solutions

Air pollution is one of the most dangerous problems we face these days. It is 1).................... by smoke from cars and factories. We must find 2).................... to this problem. We can plant more 3).............................. because they can absorb carbon dioxide and give us oxygen.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Mazen is a pupil in fourth year primary. He gets up at six o'clock. First he washes his face. Then he eats his breakfast. He goes to school at 7 o'clock. He goes to school by car. He finishes his school at one o'clock. He arrives home at 2 o'clock. He does his homework. He helps his mom. He watches a film. He goes to bed at 9 o'clock.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Mazen is in primary ....

a) five b) six c) four d) three

2. Mazen goes to school by ....

a) bus b) car c) train d) metro

B) Answer the following questions.

3. When does Mazen arrive home?

....

4. When does Mazen get up?

....

5. What meal does he eat before school?

....

6. What's the general idea of the text?

....

4 The Reader

A) Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Amir didn't help his Grandma. ( )

2. Waleed's dad stopped using plastic bags in his store. ( )

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

3. Grandma .... to help Amir.

a) refused b) disagreed c) volunteered d) shouted

4. .... texted back Amir.

a) Grandma b) Waleed c) Mariam d) Fishermen

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Today we .... about pollution.
   a) talk b) talks c) are talking d) talking
2. I love .... Sham El-Nessim with my family.
   a) celebrate b) celebrated c) celebrates d) celebrating
3. Yesterday Akil .... his goats walking away.
   a) see b) saw c) seeing d) sees
4. I like poetry .... fiction.
   a) and b) so c) but d) because

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. is - a fantastic - Egypt - visit - country - to - .

....

2. many - How - tourists - to - Luxor - travel - ?

....

7 Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:

Alexandria

Guiding elements:

1. Where is Alexandria? 2. What places can you see there?
3. What is Alexandria famous for?
4.What can you make on the beaches?

....

....

....

....

....

Exam (7)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. When does Adam get up?

....

2. What subjects does Adam like?

....

3. Why do Adam's teachers love him?

....

4. When does he go to bed?

....

2 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

keep - sacrifice - Eid Al-Adha - prayers

Omar : How are Amir?

Amir : I'm fine, thank you.

Omar : How long does 1).. last?

Amir : It lasts for four days.

Omar : What do people do in it?

Amir : They 2)...................................... a sheep and eat some of its meat.

Omar : What else do they do?

Amir : During Eid Al-Adha they go to the mosque for 3)................................

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Nadia lives in Luxor with her family. Today she is celebrating Eid Al-Fitr with her family. She wears her best dress and new shoes. She usually goes to school on Thursdays, but today is a holiday. The whole family is together. Grandpa and Grandma sit in the living room. Nadia's brother Khaled gives his grandparents some special cakes. Eid Al-Fitr is Nadia's favorite festival!

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Nadia lives in .... with her family.

   a) Aswan b) Luxor c) Hurghada d) Cairo

2. .... is Nadia's favorite festival.

   a) Ramadan b) Eid Al-Fitr c) Sham El-Nessim d) Eid Al-Adha

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Where do Grandpa and Grandma sit?

....

4. What does Khaled give his grandparents?

....

5. What does Nadia wear?

....

6. What is the general idea of the text?

....

4 The Reader

A) Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Anissa's dad works at the market. ( )

2. Amir lived in a village. ( )

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

3. Amir sent the picture of the .... to his friends.

   a) grandma b) seagull c) bottle d) bag

4. The fishermen could help take the .... out of the river.

   a) seagull b) plastic c) nets d) pictures

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. What are they .... now?
   a) wear b) wears c) wearing d) wore
2. Laila always .... her grandparents at Eid Al-Adha.
   a) visit b) visits c) will visit d) visiting
3. You .... look directly at the sun.
   a) should b) shouldn't c) must d) are
4. I can .... show you the way to the bank.
   a) ease b) easy c) easily d) easiness

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. statue - What - is - made - this - of - ?

   ....

2. person's - copy - You - another - work - shouldn't - .

   ....

7 Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:

Helping the environment

Guiding elements:

(trees - cleaner - carbon - oxygen - important - happier)

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Exam (8)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What happens when heavy rain moves soil?

....

2. How do rivers and lakes become during a drought?

....

3. What human activity that can create erosion?

....

4. Who can't grow food or feed their animals?

....

2 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

rainforest - environments - doing - taking

Ola : Hi Noha. What are you doing?

Noha : I'm 1).. a research.

Ola : What is it about?

Noha : It's about different 2)..

Ola : What environment are you searching about?

Noha : I'm searching about 3).. environment.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

In ancient Egypt, the most important highway was the River Nile. The Egyptians traveled mostly along the river because all the major cities were along the River Nile, so boats and ships were the most important form of transportation. Most Egyptians used a small boat called a skiff. They made this simple boat from papyrus and rope. People could travel short distances in these boats, or they could use it for fishing. They used oars to make the boats move. They made larger boats and ships from wood. These ships had a large sail to catch the wind and they used oars to move and control the direction.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. They made larger ships and boats from ....

a) metal b) wood c) cotton d) linen

2. The underlined word "ancient" means very ....

a) new b) long c) short d) old

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What's the most important highway in ancient Egypt?

....

4. Why did they use oars?

....

5. Why did the ships have large sails?

....

6. What's the main idea of the text?

....

4 The Reader

A) Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Waleed showed his father a picture of his friends. ( )
2. Grandma didn't like the seagull. ( )

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

3. Dalia sent .... to all her cousins .

a) photos b) emails c) bags d) birds

4. Grandma sew some .... bags.

a) plastic b) cotton c) metal d) wood

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Hana .... a TV program now.
   a) watch b) watches c) watching d) is watching
2. You .... go to bed early. You have an exam tomorrow.
   a) should b) shouldn't c) can't d) mustn't
3. Akil and Ottah .... happy yesterday.
   a) is b) are c) was d) were
4. What .... at the moment?
   you are doing b) are you doing c) do d) did

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. is - headline - Your - good - very - .

   ....

2. food - What - can - eat - you - a feast - at - ?

   ....

7 Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:

Egypt

Guiding elements:

1. What do you think of Egypt? 2. What places can you see there?
3. What are the Egyptians famous for?
4. What are the most famous Egyptian foods?

....

....

....

....

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Exam (9)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What do we need to make about our page?

....

2. What can we do if we have nasty comments?

....

3. Who can only see your videos?

....

4. Can you turn the comments back?

....

2 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

decorate - carved - Pyramids - protect

Mona : Good morning Salma.

Salma : Good morning Mona.

Mona : Where did you go yesterday?

Salma : I went to Giza to visit the 1).. and the Sphinx.

Mona : Why did the Ancient Egyptians build the Sphinx?

Salma : Archaeologists think they built it to 2)........................ the Pyramids.

Mona : How did the Ancient Egyptians build it?

Salma : They 3).. it from one huge piece of stone.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Lots of people visit Egypt every year because of the amazing archaeological sites. Tourists want to see the large monuments, pyramids, and temples. It is incredible to think that ancient Egyptians were building these amazing structures over 4,000 years ago, when civilizations in other countries were much simpler. Archaeologists have found lots of artifacts such as tools, pottery, vases, and masks. These can tell us about how people lived in ancient Egypt.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The ancient Egyptians built amazing structures over .... years ago.

a) 4,000 b) 2,000 c) 3,000 d) 1,000

2. Archaeologists have found lots of ....

a) facts b) artifacts c) jobs d) photos

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What do we call people who have found lots of artifacts?

....

4. Why do lots of people visit Egypt every year?

....

5. What do tourists want to see in Egypt?

....

6. What is the main idea of the text?

....

4 The Reader

A) Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. The friends together couldn't make a change. ( )
2. Amir helped his grandma cook dinner. ( )

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

3. The friends were .... about the seagull.

a) happy b) worried c) delighted d) pleased

4. Amir helped his.. take out the clothes.

a) sister b) Grandma c) cousin d) brother

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The children .... a game.
   a) playing b) plays c) were playing d) has played
2. Egypt is .... than Tunisia.
   a) the bigger b) biggest c) big d) bigger
3. Tarek .... to a podcast now.
   a) listen b) listens c) is listening d) listened
4. You .... forget punctuation while writing.
   a) should b) shouldn't c) can d) must

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. museum - visited - I - the - yesterday - .

....

2. need - Why - do - we - trees - more - ?

....

7 Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:

The Pyramids

Guiding elements:

(visited - bus - camels - Tourists - happy - enjoyed - nice)

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Exam (10)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What were the only types of transportation in the past?

....

2. What animals did people use in transportation?

....

3. What did people use for water transportation?

....

4. Who could transport their goods to the markets easily?

....

2 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

Citadel - where - visit - did

Ali : Welcome to Egypt, where are you from?
Tom : I am from England.
Ali : How 1).. you come here?
Tom : I came by plane.
Ali : What places will you 2)..?
Tom : The Pyramids and the 3)..
Ali : What do you think of the Egyptians?
Tom : They are kind and friendly.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

People in ancient Egypt built many amazing temples and monuments, and this is an important part of our heritage. They also developed agriculture and some of the first calendars. Archaeologists have learned lots of interesting things about the civilization of ancient Egypt by exploring historical sites at places like Abu Simbel, Luxor, and Giza. I'm very interested in Egypt's heritage and I enjoy learning about it.

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

I visit museums with my parents to learn about the things people did in the past. For example, did you know that the ancient Egyptians were one of the first civilizations to develop a system of writing? I'm very proud of my heritage.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. People in ancient Egypt built many amazing ....

   a) factories b) temples c) houses d) flats

2. I'm very interested in Egypt's .... and I enjoy learning about it.

   a) heritage b) trains c) carriage d) village

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What does the underlined word "They" refer to?

....

4. Where did archaeologists explore historical sites?

....

5. Why does the writer visit museums with his parents?

....

6. What is the general idea of the text?

....

4 The Reader

A) Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Mariam is Dalia's cousin. ( )
2. The seagull has two babies. ( )

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

3. The plastic bag was around the seagull's ....

   a) neck b) hand c) leg d) eye

4. .... transported plastic bottles of water.

   a) Bags b) Trucks c) Planes d) Trains

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. We often .... hawawshi with salad.
   a) eat b) eats c) are eating d) eating
2. I don't have any free time today, ... I'm free this weekend.
   a) so b) or c) and d) but
3. If Tarek buys an electric car, he .... the environment.
   a) helps b) helped c) will help d) is helping
4. We .... to a podcast about geothermal power now.
   a) are listening b) are listened c) listen d) will listen

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. of - Lots - people - Egypt - visit - year - every - .

   ....

2. of - What - is - moral - the - story - this - ?

   ....

7 Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:

A visit to the museum

Guiding elements:

(Sara - museum - mom - bus - artifacts - tourists - happy)

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Exam (11)

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What's the weather like in the desert?

....

2. What can we get from the desert?

....

3. Is the electricity from the sun renewable or non-renewable energy?

....

4. What else can we get electricity from?

....

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

homes - carbon dioxide - atmosphere - plant

The world needs lots of trees because they take carbon dioxide out of the 1)...................... and make our air cleaner. Sometimes people cut down trees and forests to build 2)................... or make farms, but it's important to 3)......................... new trees.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

In Ramadan, we have a meal in the evening at sunset. There's always lots of delicious food! Last year my mom made, kunafa, with sweet pastry. We had it with soft cheese. I was helping her in the kitchen when I dropped the sugar! We quickly cleaned up the mess and then finished cooking. There were lots of different things to eat, but kunafa was my favorite.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. In Ramadan, we have a meal in the evening at ....

a) sunrise b) noon c) sunset d) night

2. There's always delicious .... in Ramadan.

a) colors b) food c) subjects d) books

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What does the underlined word "delicious" mean?

....

4. Who were you helping in the kitchen?

....

5. What was your favorite food?

....

6. What is the opposite of the word "quickly"?

....

4 The Reader

A) Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Grandma could help Amir. ( )
2. Dalia couldn't send emails to her cousins. ( )

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

3. Amir took the laundry up to the ....

a) roof b) village c) kitchen d) bedroom

4. Amir was a .... boy.

a) bad b) ugl c) smart d) sad

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Do you do the recycling .... the morning?
   a) on   b) at   c) and   d) in
2. What are you .... now?
   a) does   b) do   c) doing   d) did
3. If it doesn't ...., the rivers won't have any water.
   a) rains   b) raining   c) rain   d) rained
4. An electric car is .... than a bike.
   a) expensive   b) the most expensive
   c) least expensive   d) more expensive

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. never - The sun - in - shines - the evening - .

....

2. clothes - I - wear - usually - colorful - .

....

7 Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:

Water pollution

Guiding elements:

(important - plastic - garbage - bags - chemicals - keep - clean)

....

....

....

....

....

....

Listening Texts

Unit (7)

- Listen and circle the correct answer.

The world needs lots of trees because they take carbon dioxide out of the atmosphere, and make our air cleaner. Sometimes people cut down trees and forests to build homes or make farms, but it's important to plant new trees.

Unit (8)

- Listen and circle the correct answer.

Eid Al-Adha usually lasts for four days,and it is a very important Islamic festival. It celebrates the time when Ibrahim listened to God in a dream. At Eid Al-Adha, many people sacrifice a sheep and eat some of its meat in a traditional dish called fatta. We give out meat to our family and friends. During Eid Al-Adha, we go to the mosque for prayers and we are grateful for all the good things in our lives.

Unit (9)

- Listen and circle the correct answer.

You can visit the Temple of Karnak in Luxor. You can also visit the Valley of the Kings from the city. This is where the ancient Egyptians buried their kings and queens. Many tourists visit this city from a cruise on the Nile River.

The Great Pyramids and the Sphinx are in Giza. Archaeologists think that the Sphinx was built to protect the pyramids. The ancient Egyptians carved it from one piece of stone.

Unit (10)

- Listen and circle the correct answer.

Nahla has a new social media account. Her older brother Faisal helped her to set up her account. She wants to be a wildlife photographer when she grows up. So,she posts photos of flowers, trees, birds, and animals on her account. Nahla's account is private so only her friends and family can see it. Her friends like her photos and they always write nice comments about them. Nahla has started making a short video, too. She posted her first video on her account yesterday.

Unit (11)

- Listen and circle the correct answer.

From the beginning of time, humans watched birds and wanted to fly through the skies.

Today, we fly from one continent to another in no more than one day. We are even able to send people to the moon in rockets. The problem with transportation that uses gasoline is that it burns fossil fuels, and these are bad for the environment. Engineers are designing greener airplanes and ships, too.

Unit (12)

- Listen and circle the correct answer.

Last week, my friend and I were at the park. We were running and playing football. Then, we had lunch. We heard a very unusual sound. It was a big colorful bird. It was very hungry.

Exams

Exam (1)

- Listen and answer the questions.

Fares is in grade four. He likes reading stories. Dalia is younger than Fares. Amr's favorite subject is English.

Exam (2)

- Listen and answer the questions.

Adam always visits his grandma on Friday. He goes to his grandma on foot. He plays football with his friends in the evening. He sometimes helps his grandma in the kitchen.

Exam (3)

- Listen and answer the questions.

Sham El-Nessim is a day in Egypt that celebrates the start of spring. The weather at Sham El-Nessim is usually sunny and warm. People would colour their boiled eggs. People go with their families to parks and beaches to enjoy nice weather.

Exam (4)

- Listen and answer the questions.

Hi! I'm Rahma. I'm in primary four. My sister Eman is in primary five. We go to school by bus. I like English. My favourite game is basketball.

Exam (5)

- Listen and answer the questions.

Nothing can live without energy. People, animals and plants need energy to live. Machines need energy to work. Most of the energy we use still comes from fossil fuels like coal, oil and gas. We call these non-renewable energy. When we burn them, a lot of carbon dioxide is released into the atmosphere.

Exam (6)

- Listen and answer the questions.

Many tourists visit Luxor from a Nile River cruise. They can see the Temple of Karnak and the Valley of the Kings. Ancient Egyptians buried their kings and queens here for thousands of years. You can see lots of paintings and engravings in the temples.

Exam (7)

- Listen and answer the questions.

Adam is a clever pupil in primary four. He goes to school every day. He gets up at six o'clock. He likes English and science. He is kind and polite, so all his teachers love him. He does his homework regularly. He sometimes helps his mom make dinner. He goes to bed early at ten o'clock.

Exam (8)

- Listen and answer the questions.

When heavy rain or strong winds move soil from one place to another, it creates erosion. Human activities such as heavy agriculture can also create this. During a drought, there isn't enough rain, and rivers and lakes become dry. There isn't enough water and there is a water shortage. This affects the environment and farmers can't grow food or feed their animals.

Exam (9)

- Listen and answer the questions.

I think there are something you need to learn about using social media,' she said. 'Sign into your account and go to the settings. First, we need to make your page private. That means only your friends can see your videos. Now let's turn off the nasty comments. That way people can't say bad things about you. If you want,you can turn them back on later.

Exam (10)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

In the past, the only types of transportation for humans were walking, running,and swimming. After that, humans began to use animals like mules, donkeys, horses. Then came small boats like canoes and other types of water transportations. Once they invented the wheel, people started to use small wagons and carts. Farmers in the country could transport their goods to markets in cities more easily.

Exam (11)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

It is very hot in the desert so it is a good place to get solar energy. This is a clean way to get electricity, and it is a good source of renewable energy. We can also get electricity from the wind.

Model Answers

Unit (7)

Lesson (1)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1- Trees, plants and flowers.

2- Insects, birds, reptiles and mammals.

3- It always rains. 4- It's hot.

1) Read and complete the text with:

1- rural 2- plants 3- sparsely

2) Read the passage then answer the questions.

1- coastal 2- desert

3- The coastal environment is where the land is next to the sea.

4- The desert is very dry.

5- The Nile Delta - the Red Sea.

6- They have to find clever ways to survive without a lot of water.

3) Put the words in the correct order.

1- The rural environment is a quiet place to live.

2- There is always a beach in a coastal environment.

3- What kind of environment do you live in?

4) Choose the correct word.

1- desert 2- urban 3- polar

4- mountainous 5- rural

5) Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:

Rainforest environment

There are lots of trees, plants and flowers in the rainforest. Lots of animals live in these places. For example, there are insects, birds, reptiles and mammals. It often rains and the temperature is hot.

Lesson (2)

1) Choose the correct word.

1- talking 2- are we 3- walking

4- is waiting 5- doing

2) Look and write a sentence.

- Hana is watching a TV programme.
- I am walking to school.
- Tarek is listening to a podcast.
- They are wearing gloves.

Exercises

1) Read and complete the text with:

1- picking 2- dirty 3- wearing 9

2) Choose the correct word.

1- are finding 2- trying 3- am

4- are learning 5- driving 6- is watching

7- reading 8- wearing 9- Are you

10- putting 11- aren't

12- am traveling 13- reading 14- cleaning

15- discovering

3) Put the words in the correct order.

1- What are they discussing?

2- We are talking about pollution.

3- I'am walking to school.

4- They are learning about climate change.

5- What is he doing to stop pollution?

4) Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:

Pollution

There are many kinds of pollution such as air, water and land pollution. Old plastic or glass bottles can cause land and water pollution. Exhaust fumes of our cars and factories cause air pollution. We mus find solutions to get rid of pollution.

Lesson (3)

1) Complete the following dialog with:

1- renewable 2- What 3- remains

2) Read the passage then answer the questions.

1- kinds 2- wind 3- Student's answer.

4- The sea goes up and down throughout the day. 5- In hot deserts. 6- sun-water.

3) Choose the correct word.

1- non-renewable 2- sun 3- Tidal

4- store 5- turbines

4) Put the words in the correct order.

1- What are fossil fuels made from?

2- You can store electrical energy.

3- Renewable energy doesn't run out.

4- We can get renewable energy from natural resources.

5) Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:

Energy around us

We have two kinds of energy: renewable and non-renewable energies. Renewable energy resources are clean and will never run out. Non-renewable energies are not clean and will run out like coal and gas.

Lesson (4)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1- It's cold. 2- 600 hot springs.

3- Underground.

4- To heat homes and to make electricity.

2) Read and complete the text with:

1- Hydroelectricity 2- electricity

3- waterwheels

3) Choose the correct word.

1- title 2- Photos

3- facts and figures 4- steam 5- renewable

6- waterwheels 7- kilowatt 8- water

9- position 10- electricity

4) Put the words in the correct order.

1- Iceland is a cold country.

2- Iceland has more than 600 hot springs.

3- Why is the High Dam important?

4- How was hydroelectricity used in the past?

5- The High Dam was finished in1971.

5) Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:

Hydroelectricity

People have used hydroelectricity for a long time. Hydroelectricity means using the energy from moving water to move machines or generate electricity. It is a clean renewable energy.

Lessons (5&6)

1) Read and complete the text with:

1- article 2- help 3- plant

2) Choose the correct word.

1- are 2- drop 3- to 4- absorb

3) Choose the correct word.

1- Why is it important to plant trees?

3- Forests help to protect the environment.

4) Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:

How to keep the environment

We should keep our environment clean. We shouldn't drop garbage. We should use renewable energy sources to keep our air clean. We should protect our forests. We should turn off the light when we leave a room.

Exam on Unit (7)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1- By using more renewable energy.

2- We should use less fossil fuels.

3- Our country should plant more trees.

4- We can protect the rainforest.

2) Read and complete the text with:

1- absorb 2- take 3- billion

3) Read the passage then answer the questions.

1- non-renewable 2- steam

3- Student's answer.

4- More than 600 hot springs.

5- Holes down to the hot water underground.

6- They come from renewable sources.

4) The Reader.

1- False 2- True 3- river 4- laundry

5) Choose the correct word.

1- helping 2- is picking 3- wearing 4- walking

6) Put the words in the correct order.

1- We are talking about pollution.

2- A turbine is a machine to make energy.

7) Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:

Polar environment

There are two of these environments in the world: the Arctic and the Antarctic. It is cold and windy with a lot of ice. Some animals have found ways to live in these areas, but there aren't any trees or flower.

Unit (8)

Lesson (1)

1) Choose the correct word.

1- spring 2- meat 3- Monday 4- sunrise

5- sheep 6- prayers 7- grateful 8- lantern

9- Nile 10- fairground

Read and match.

1- c 2- a 3- d 4- b

3) Read and complete the text with:

1- lasts 2- sacrifice 3- prayers

4) Read the passage then answer the questions.

1- fairgrounds 2- old

3- Sham El-Nessim. 4- Sunny and warm.

5- Sham El-Nessim is always on the same day as Coptic Easter Monday.

6- Lots of people go with their family to meet friends in parks, gardens or beaches.

5) Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:

Your lantern

Last year for Ramadan I made a special lantern. I used an empty glass jar and stuck bright pictures on the side. My brother gave me a small electric candle to put inside. I hung it on the balcony. It was pretty.

Lesson (2)

-) Choose the correct word.

1- often 2- well 3- never 4- easily 5- always

Exercises

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1- Her Grandma. 2- In the kitchen.

3- She cooked well. 4- Her own cook book.

2) Read and complete the text with:

1- sayadeya 2- fish 3- olive

3) Read and match.

1- b 2- c 3- d 4- a

4) Choose the correct word.

1- often 2- share 3- always 4- fatta

5- carefully 6- well

5) Put the words in the correct order.

1- Bread was important in ancient Egypt.

2- Which dish is hard to digest?

3- We always eat fulmedames with bread.

4- How does Grandma get her recipes?

6) Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:

Your favorite dish

My favorite dish is fatta. I like eating it in Eid Al-Adha. Fatta has layers of rice and bread, with tomato sauce, vinegar, and meat. It takes a long time to digest, so we don't eat it very often.

Lesson (3)

1) Choose the correct word.

1- am talking 2- wearing 3- help

4- Is 5- often eat

2) Read and complete the text with the verbs in brackets.

1- is wearing 2- wears 3- is 4- celebrates

5- is helping 6- eat 7- are making

Exercises

1) Read and complete the dialog with:

1- wearing 2- dress 3- birthday

2) Read and complete the text with:

1- celebrating 2- shoes 3- goes

2) Put the words in the correct order.

1- What are you wearing now?

2- Some people prefer white clothes.

3- The galabeya has long sleeves.

4- Eid Al-Fitr is my favorite festival.

3) Choose the correct word.

1- is wearing 2- helps 3- is waiting

4- always gives 5- are celebrating

6- doesn't 7- do you 8- have

9- Are you waiting 10- rises 11- works

12- is helping

4) Read the passage then answer the questions.

1- ful medames 2- Hana

3- A blue dress. 4- Vegetarian.

5- Student's answer.

6- She is celebrating Eid Al-Fitr.

6) Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:

Eid Al-Fitr

Eid Al-Fitr is a special festival. It comes at the end of Ramadan. I celebrate it with my family. We enjoy eating cookies. We have very good time.

Lesson (4)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1- Egypt. 2- Amazing sights

3- Hospitable and generous.

4- Traditional food.

2) Read and complete the text with:

1- typical 2- generous 3- traditional

3) Put the words in the correct order.

1- Egypt is a fantastic country to visit.

2- There are four statues inside the temple.

3- Egyptians are very generous.

4) Read the passage then answer the questions.

1- Aswan 2- inside

3- On February 22nd and October 22nd.

4- Ramses, Ra, Amun and Ptah.

5- There are four statues inside the temple.

6- Student's answer.

5) Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:

Egypt

Egypt is a fantastic country to visit. You can see the famous pyramids. Egyptians are very generous people serve kahk in Eid Al-Fitr with sugar on top. They eat salted fish (fesikh) in Sham El-Nessim.

Lessons (5&6)

1) Choose the correct word.

1- with 2- for 3- snake

4- for 5- setting

2) Read and match.

1- c 2- d 3- b 4- a

3) Put the words in the correct order.

1- I saw a giant snake in the waves.

2- I will send you many presents.

3- How long was the servant on the island.

4) Read the passage then answer the questions.

1- king 2- afraid

3- The ship sank and the man swam to an island.

4- With the best sailors. 5- Student's answer.

6- He was alone and frightened.

5) Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:

A tale of sailor

I was a sailor. I went on a journey for the king with the best sailors in the country. But a storm came and our ship sank. I fell into the sea, and swam to an island. I was alone and frightened. Then, I looked for food, and the island had food, water, and everything i needed.

Exam on Unit (8)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1- Sham El-Nessim. 2- Eggs.

3- At Eid Al-Fitr. 4- Fatta.

2) Read and complete the text with:

1- pyramids 2- the Nile 3- The Red Sea

3) Read the passage then answer the questions.

1- four 2- Eid Al-Adha 3- Student's answer.

4- A sheep. 5- They go to the mosque.

6- We wear our best clothes.

4) The Reader.

1- T 2- F 3- seagull 4- clothes

5) Choose the correct word.

1- is reading 2- lives 3- am painting 4- play

6) Put the words in the correct order.

1- Ful medames never has any meat in it.

2- There are many stories from ancient Egypt.

7) Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:

Your favorite dish

My favorite dish is ful Medames. I eat is every morning. I eat it with bread. It's made with lemon juice, onion and salt. It has no meat in it. Egyptians like it very much. It's very delicious.

Unit (9)

Lesson (1)

1) Read and complete the dialog with:

1- heritage 2- identity 3- history

2) Choose the correct word.

1- identity 2- temples 3- ancient

4- Archaeologists 5- site 6- calendar

7- civilization 8- monuments

9- flooding 10- harvesting 11- fertile

12- seasons 13- crops 14- growth

3) Put the words in the correct order.

1- All countries have their own heritage.

2- I visited the museum with my parents.

3- What do farmers grow in Egypt?

4- Are you interested in Egypt's heritage.

4) Read and match.

1- c 2- d 3- a 4- b

2) Read and match.

1- c 2- a 3- d 4- b

3) Read and complete the text with:

1- lasts 2- sacrifice 3- prayers

4) Read the passage then answer the questions.

1- fairgrounds 2- old

3- Sham El-Nessim. 4- Sunny and warm.

5- Sham El-Nessim is always on the same day as Coptic Easter Monday.

6- Lots of people go with their family to meet friends in parks, gardens or beaches.

5) Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:

Your lantern

Last year for Ramadan I made a special lantern. I used an empty glass jar and stuck bright pictures on the side. My brother gave me a small electric candle to put inside. I hung it on the balcony. It was pretty.

Lesson (2)

-) Choose the correct word.

1- often 2- well 3- never 4- easily 5- always

Exercises

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1- Her Grandma. 2- In the kitchen.

3- She cooked well. 4- Her own cook book.

2) Read and complete the text with:

1- sayadeya 2- fish 3- olive

3) Read and match.

1- b 2- c 3- d 4- a

4) Choose the correct word.

1- often 2- share 3- always 4- fatta

5- carefully 6- well

5) Put the words in the correct order.

1- Bread was important in ancient Egypt.

2- Which dish is hard to digest?

3- We always eat ful medames with bread.

4- How does Grandma get her recipes?

6) Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:

Your favorite dish

My favorite dish is fatta. I like eating it in Eid Al-Adha. Fatta has layers of rice and bread, with tomato sauce, vinegar, and meat. It takes a long time to digest, so we don't eat it very often.

Lesson (3)

1) Choose the correct word.

1- am talking 2- wearing 3- help

4- Is 5- often eat

2) Read and complete the text with the verbs in brackets.

1- is wearing 2- wears 3- is 4- celebrates

5- is helping 6- eat 7- are making

Exercises

1) Read and complete the dialog with:

1- wearing 2- dress 3- birthday

2) Read and complete the text with:

1- celebrating 2- shoes 3- goes

2) Put the words in the correct order.

1- What are you wearing now?

2- Some people prefer white clothes.

3- The galabeya has long sleeves.

4- Eid Al-Fitr is my favorite festival.

3) Choose the correct word.

1- is wearing 2- helps 3- is waiting

4- always gives 5- are celebrating

6- doesn't 7- do you 8- have

9- Are you waiting 10- rises 11- works

12- is helping

4) Read the passage then answer the questions.

1- ful medames 2- Hana

3- A blue dress. 4- Vegetarian.

5- Student's answer.

6- She is celebrating Eid Al-Fitr.

6) Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:

Eid Al-Fitr

Eid Al-Fitr is a special festival. It comes at the end of Ramadan. I celebrate it with my family. We enjoy eating cookies. We have very good time.

Lesson (4)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1- Egypt. 2- Amazing sights

3- Hospitable and generous.

4- Traditional food.

2) Read and complete the text with:

1- typical 2- generous 3- traditional

3) Put the words in the correct order.

1- Egypt is a fantastic country to visit.

2- There are four statues inside the temple.

3- Egyptians are very generous.

4) Read the passage then answer the questions.

1- Aswan 2- inside

3- On February 22nd and October 22nd.

4- Ramses, Ra, Amun and Ptah.

5- There are four statues inside the temple.

6- Student's answer.

5) Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:

Egypt

Egypt is a fantastic country to visit. You can see the famous pyramids. Egyptians are very generous people serve kahk in Eid Al-Fitr with sugar on top. They eat salted fish (fesikh) in Sham El-Nessim.

Lessons (5&6)

1) Choose the correct word.

1- with 2- for 3- snake

4- for 5- setting

2) Read and match.

1- c 2- d 3- b 4- a

3) Put the words in the correct order.

1- I saw a giant snake in the waves.

2- I will send you many presents.

3- How long was the servant on the island.

4) Read the passage then answer the questions.

1- king 2- afraid

3- The ship sank and the man swam to an island.

4- With the best sailors. 5- Student's answer.

6- He was alone and frightened.

5) Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:

A tale of sailor

I was a sailor. I went on a journey for the king with the best sailors in the country. But a storm came and our ship sank. I fell into the sea, and swam to an island. I was alone and frightened. Then, I looked for food, and the island had food, water, and everything i needed.

Exam on Unit (8)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1- Sham El-Nessim. 2- Eggs.

3- At Eid Al-Fitr. 4- Fatta.

2) Read and complete the text with:

1- pyramids 2- the Nile 3- The Red Sea

3) Read the passage then answer the questions.

1- four 2- Eid Al-Adha 3- Student's answer.

4- A sheep. 5- They go to the mosque.

6- We wear our best clothes.

4) The Reader.

1- T 2- F 3- seagull 4- clothes

5) Choose the correct word.

1- is reading 2- lives 3- am painting 4- play

6) Put the words in the correct order.

1- Ful medames never has any meat in it.

2- There are many stories from ancient Egypt.

7) Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:

Your favorite dish

My favorite dish is ful Medames. I eat is every morning. I eat it with bread. It's made with lemon juice, onion and salt. It has no meat in it. Egyptians like it very much. It's very delicious.

Unit (9)

Lesson (1)

1) Read and complete the dialog with:

1- heritage 2- identity 3- history

2) Choose the correct word.

1- identity 2- temples 3- ancient

4- Archaeologists 5- site 6- calendar

7- civilization 8- monuments

9- flooding 10- harvesting 11- fertile

12- seasons 13- crops 14- growth

3) Put the words in the correct order.

1- All countries have their own heritage.

2- I visited the museum with my parents.

3- What do farmers grow in Egypt?

4- Are you interested in Egypt's heritage.

4) Read and match.

1- c 2- d 3- a 4- b

5) Read the passage then answer the questions.

1- flood 2- flooding 3- Agriculture.

4- The flooding, growing and harvesting seasons.

5- There were three seasons of farming in ancient Egypt. 6- Yes, it is.

5) Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:

How do farmers use the Nile today

Agriculture is an important part of Egypt's heritage, too. The Nile used to flood every year, making the soil more fertile. This is why ancient Egyptians could form the land it led to a growth in civilization. There were three seasons of farming in ancient Egypt, which were all connected to the Nile.

Lesson (2)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1- Khufu is famous for building the Great pyramid.

2- It shows the pharaoh sitting on a throne.

3- In 1903. 4- It's 42 meters long.

2) Read and complete the dialog with:

1- did 2- museum 3- senet

3) Read and complete the text with:

1- goats 2- tree 3- tired

4) Choose the correct word.

1- were playing 2- was digging

3- was studying 4- were visiting

5- was making 6- were taking

7- was 8- were 9- goats 10- winner

11- ordinary 12- artifacts 13- board

5) Read and match.

1- c 2- d 3- a 4- b

6) Put the words in the correct order.

1- Sara was reading some information.

2- The goats were walking away over the hill.

3- He was sitting under a tree.

4- What were the boys doing?

5) Write an email of FORTY (40) words about:

From: Hany@yahoo.com
To: Ali@yahoo.com
Subject: Egypt civilization
Dear Ali,

I hope you are fine. I want to tell you about the Egyptian civilization is very famous. Egypt has a long history. People started to live near the Nile. At first, there were two separate areas. Lower Egypt was in the north, where the Nile joins the sea. Upper Egypt was in the south, where the Nile flows- through the deserts of Africa.

Yours,
Hany.

Lesson (3)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1- It has many tombs. 2- King Djoser.

3- About 2630 BCE. 4- In Giza.

2) Read and complete the dialog with:

1- Giza 2- tourists 3- Pyramids

3) Choose the correct word.

1- monuments 2- pottery 3- clay

4- hold 5- perfume 6- protect 7- carved

8- sites 9- capital 10- cruise

4) Put the words in the correct order.

1- How do many tourists travel to Luxor?

2- The temple of Karnak is in Luxor.

3- Ancient Egyptians used lots of pottery.

4- Alexandria is famous for its library.

5) Read the passage then answer the questions.

1- vases 2- pottery

3- To see the amazing archaeological, sites.

4- Tools, pottery, vases and masks.

4- Student's answer.

6- They made small pots for oil or perfume.

6) Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:

Luxor

Many tourists visit Luxor from a Nile River cruise. They can see the Temple of Karnak and Valley of the kings. Ancient Egyptians buried their kings and queens here for thousands of years. You can see lots of paintings and engravings in the temples. There are lots of other amazing things to see in Egypt. What would you like to visit?

Lesson (4)

1) Read and complete the dialog with:

1- chart 2- across 3- line

2) Read and match.

1- e 2- b 3- d 4- a

3) Choose the correct word.

1-bar 2-horizontal 3-y-axis 4-vertical

4) Students Answer.

5) Put the words in the correct order.

1-Let's get your paper and pens.

2-What do you have to do?

Lessons (5&6)

1) Read and complete the dialog with:

1-information 2-old 3-limestone

2) Read and match.

1-c 2-d 3-a 4-b

3) Choose the correct word.

1-old 2-made 3-long 4-believed
5-to 6-desert 7-map 8-for
9-from 10-for

4) Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:

Pharaoh Khufu's solar boat

Khufu's solar boat is a wooden boat. It is about 4,600 years old. It is made of wood. It is 42 meters long. It is in Giza. Many people and tourists like to visit it.

Exam on Unit (9)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1-Every year.

2-Because of it's amazing archaeological sites.

3-Tourists. 4-Over 4000 years ago.

2) Read and complete the dialog with:

1-Luxor 2-see 3-interesting

3) Read the passage then answer the questions.

1-Nile 2-small

3-The Temple of Karnak and the Valley of the Kings. 4-In the temple.

5-Student's answer. 6-Tourists.

4) The Reader.

1-T 2-F 3-tablet 4-sad

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1-built 2-were visiting 3-saw 4-were

6) Put the words in the correct order.

1-We were visiting the museum.

2-Historians are interested in monuments.

7) Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:

A visit to Alexandria

There are lots of things to see in this port city, including a Roman theatre, the old town, and Qaitbay Citadel. Alexandria used to be the capital of Egypt. It had the first Library of Alexandria, which is famous all over the world.

Review (3)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1-In Ramadan. 2-My mom.

3-In the kitchen. 4-The sugar.

2) Read and complete the text with:

1-Temple 2-buried 3-engravings

3) Read the passage then answer the questions.

1-Egypt 2-traditions

3-Welcoming visitors with food and drink.

4-The Pyramids, the old Luxor Temple and the Nile.

5-Student's answer. 6-It's delicious.

5) The Reader.

1-F 2-T 3-plastic 4-plastic

6) Choose the correct word.

1-visited 2-wearing 3-were playing 4-makes

7) Put the words in the correct order.

1-Egypt is a fantastic country to visit.

2-A turbine is a machine to make energy.

8) Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:

Agriculture

Agriculture is an important part of Egypt's heritage. The Nile used to flood every year, making the soil more fertile. This is why ancient Egyptians could farm the land and it led to a growth in civilization. There were three seasons of farming, flooding, growing and harvesting

Unit (10)

Lesson (1)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1-A blog is a special kind of website.

2-One person. 3-To read.

4-Sports or cooking

2) Read and complete the text with:

1-topic 2-access 3-devices

3) Choose the correct word.

1- communication 2- signals 3- devices
4- email 5- account 6- platform
7- presentation 8- website 9- access
10- blog 11- vlog 12- pigeons 13- smartphone

4) Put the words in the correct order.

1- How can people access websites?
2- An email is a digital form of a letter.
3- What means of communication do you use?

5) Read the passage then answer the questions.

1- account 2- receive 3- Student's answer.
4- Electronic devices.
5- People used smoke signals or birds to send messages to each other.
6- An email is a digital from of a letter.

6) Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:

Means of communication

Means of communication are different ways to send messages from one place to another. In the past people used smoke signals or birds to send messages to each other. Today we use technology like electronic devices to help send messages. An email is a digital form of letter. A blog is a special kind of website. A vlog is similar to a blog a site is a personal website.

Lesson (2)

1) Choose the correct word:

1- should 2- choose 3- shouldn't
4- should 5- be 6- shouldn't

2) Give your friend advice. Complete the sentences.

2- should have a rest.
3- should ask your teacher for help.
4- shouldn't hide your writing.
5- should wear glasses.

Exercises

1) Read and complete the dialog with:

1- hungry 2- eat 3- should

2) Choose the correct word.

1- at 2- backpack 3- newspaper
4- with 5- keyboard 6- publish
7- for 8- shouldn't 9- should

3) Put the words in the correct order.

1- I made a checklist for you.
2- You shouldn't work too long without a break.
3- You should check your work.

4) Read the passage then answer the questions.

1- give 2- writer 3- Around Africa.
4- He should let more people read his story.
5- Adam loved to write. 6- Student's answer.

Lesson (3)

1) Read and complete the dialog with:

1- for 2- bad 3- long

2) Choose the correct word.

1- nasty 2- cyberfriends
3- post 4- Photography
5- fun 6- for 7- Sign
8- private 9- Social 10- off

3) Read the passage then answer the questions.

1- room 2- bad 3- Photography.
4- He felt really sad. 5- After dinner.
6- Student's answer.

4) Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:

Social media

Social media is very important for every one. These days. First you must have an account before using it. I made some cyberfriends online. You shouldn't write nasty comments on social media. If you have nasty comments sign into your account, go to the settings and turn it off.

Lesson (4)

Exercises

1) Choose the correct word.

1- create 2- improve 3- grade
4- in 5- in 6- and
7- or 8- at 9- in

2) Read and correct the underlined words.

1- I like football <u>and</u> handball.
2- He is poor, <u>but</u> he is happy.
3- I go to school <u>in</u> the morning.
4- I don't like meat <u>or</u> fish.

3) Students answer

Book Answers

4) Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:

Amira gets up early every day. She goes to school by bus. She likes Maths and Science. She goes home at 2 o'clock with her friends. She does her homework before dinner. She goes to bed at ten o'clock. Amira is a clever and polite girl. All her teachers love her.

Lessons (5&6)

1) Read and complete the dialog with:

1- Air pollution 2- causes 3- factories

2) Choose the correct word.

1- outdoor 2- fossil fuels 3- smog
4- eye 5- feet

3) Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:

Air pollution

Air pollution is one of the biggest problems for people's health. It is created by air planes, traffic, factories and power plants. Smoke from these factories also cause pollution. We must work hard to find solutions to this big problem by planting more trees.

Exam on Unit (10)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1- I'm very tired. 2- My sister.
3- I had dinner and watched TV.
4- I went to school late.

2) Read and complete the text with:

1- topic 2- access 3- devices

3) Read the passage then answer the questions.

1- one 2- vlog
3- From different electronic devices like smartphones, tablets and laptops.
4- Means of communication.
5- A blog is a special kind of website.
6- The difference is that on a vlog, people post videos they make instead of written texts.

4) The Reader.

1- T 2- T 3- house 4- worried

5) Choose the correct word.

1- choose 2- shouldn't 3- should 4- should

6) Put the words in the correct order.

1- What do you need to send an email?
2- You shouldn't write your story by hand.

7) Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:

Pros and cons of social media

Social media has a lot of pros and cons. You can send messages if you have an account. You can chat your friends. As for cons social media wastes a lot of time. You shouldn't stay too long without having a break. Using social media affects your eyesight.

Unit (11)

Lesson (1)

1) Read and complete the dialog with:

1- traffic 2- trip 3- always

2) Choose the correct word.

1- on 2- exciting 3- lights
4- belt 5- slowly 6- careful
7- destination 8- pollution 9- time
10- transportation

4) Read the passage then answer the questions.

1- near 2- jam
3- Student's answer. 4- No, they don't.
5- In a big city. 6- One hour.

5) Put the words in the correct order.

1- You must wear your seat belt.
2- Cities are exciting places to live.
3- Do you get to school on time?

6) Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:

Traffic

I live in a big city. It's an exciting place. There is a lot of traffic in my neighbourhood. The trip to school takes an hour. I always get into a traffic jam. I am always late for school.

Lesson (2)

1) Choose the correct word.

1- larger 2- more interesting
3- smaller 4- more 5- largest

2) Choose the correct word.

1- reuse 2- unhappy 3- dislike
4- rewrite 5- recycle
6- Disconnect 7- recycle

Exercises

1) Read and complete the dialog with:

1- spaces 2- recycle 3- paths

2) **Choose the correct word.**

1- reduce 2- recycling 3- green 4- volunteer
5- museum 6- longest 7- friendlier
8- youngest 9- than 10- more

3) **Read the passage then answer the questions.**

1- recycle 2- parks and trees
3- Creating a cleaner Urban environment.
4- For people to ride their bikes on.
5- Yesterday I went on a school trip to the science museum.
6- About creating a cleaner urban environment.

4) **Put the words in the correct order.**

1- Cairo is busier than Damietta.
2- The Nile is the longest river in the world.
3- Cats are friendlier than tigers.

5) **Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:**

A cleaner urban environment

To have a cleaner urban environment, we should have green spaces. They make people happier. We need to recycle every thing we can. We need bike paths for people to ride their bikes on. Residents should use recycling bins.

Lesson (3)

1) **Listen and answer the questions.**

1- The invention of the steam engine.
2- The wind. 3- In Wales. 4- Faster and safer.

2) **Read and complete the dialog with:**

1- like 2- cheap 3- faster

3) **Choose the correct word.**

1- send 2- steam 3- Engineers
4- rural 5- solar 6- mules

4) **Read the passage then answer the questions.**

1- wheel 2- car
3- Mules, donkeys and horses.
4- animals - ships - cars.
5- It burns fossil fuels, and these are bad for the environment.
6- They were walking, running, and swimming.

5) **Put the words in the correct order.**

1- The first steam train was in Wales.
2- People are developing new forms of transportation.
3- Farmers could transport their goods to markets.

6) **Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:**

Kinds of transportation

A long time ago, the only types of transportation for humans were walking, running, and swimming. Then, people used to use animals like mules, donkeys and horses. Then, they used canoes on water. When the steam train was invented it made transportation easier, faster and safer. Then the subway came and became more popular.

Lesson (4)

1) **Listen and answer the questions.**

1- On the River Nile. 2- No, there aren't.
3- In the parks. 4- On Fridays.

2) **Choose the correct word.**

1- on 2- that 3- Personally
4- driverless 5- warm 6- better
7- generate 8- solar 9- warm air 10- louder

3) **Put the words in the correct order.**

1- The city uses green energy.
2- The new buses produce water vapor.
3- Parks are important for everyone.
4- What do the canals provide?

4) **Read the passage then answer the questions.**

1- think 2- bad 3- Student's answer.
4- To help them stay cooler.
5- On the Nile River. 6- On their roofs.

Lessons (5&6)

1) **Read and complete the dialog with:**

1- by 2- leave 3- subway

2) **Choose the correct word.**

1- metro 2- bikes 3- wet
4- on 5- ferry 6- fastest

6) **Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:**

How to get to school

Every day I get up early. I wash my face and have breakfast. I leave for school. I take the subway. It is fast. It takes about an hour. It's safe and greener.

Exam on Unit (11)

1) **Listen and answer the questions.**

1- It takes an hour.

2- I always get into traffic jams.

3- Green. 4- I get up early.

2) Read and complete the dialog with:

1- coast 2- spaces 3- walks

3) Read the passage then answer the questions.

1- old 2- Nile

3- Because all the major cities were along the Nile. 4- They used oars

5- Student's answer. 6- Large boats.

4) The Reader.

1- True 2- False 3- dad's 4- market

5) Choose the correct word.

1- cheapest 2- better 3- more 4- largest

6) Put the words in the correct order.

1- Which cities in Egypt have a subway?

2- They used oars to make the boats move.

7) Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:

A plan for your ideal city

My city is located on the Red Sea coast. There are many interesting places like cinemas, restaurants and clubs. We get electricity from solar panels on the roofs of our houses. For transportation we use green buses. We use them to protect the environment.

Unit (12)

Lesson (1)

1) Read and complete the dialog with:

1- rain 2- dry 3- farmers

2) Read and complete the text with:

1- dry 2- nature 3- shortage

3) Choose the correct word.

1- natural 2- rain 3- erode

4- agriculture 5- rise 6- shortage

7- limestone 8- down 9- tsunami

10- glacier

4) Put the words in the correct order.

1- Humans can cause erosion.

2- Burning fossil fuels causes climate change.

3- We don't have enough water.

4- The Sphinx is made of limestone.

5) Read the passage then answer the questions.

1- dry 2- safety

3- When people don't have all the water that they need.

4- Farmers can't grow food and nature is in danger.

5/6- Student's answer.

6) Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:

Erosion

Erosion is a natural process. It happened when rock and soil is moved from one place to another. The waves and currents in the sea can erode beaches, and rivers can erode river banks. Heavy rains or winds can also cause the land to erode. Humans can cause erosion, too.

Lesson (2)

1) Choose the correct word.

1- Will 2- will visit 3- won't

2) Choose the correct word.

1- buy 2- uses 3- If

4- will help 5- saves 6- will catch

7- will save 8- doesn't

Exercises

1) Read and complete the dialog with:

1- won't 2- will 3- electricity

2) Choose the correct word.

1- will help 2- won't 3- play

4- Will 5- will rise 6- tomorrow

7- rains 8- use 9- will save

10- use 11- will 12- help 13- go

3) Put the words in the correct order.

1- It will rain tomorrow.

2- Malak will visit the desert.

3- Will you recycle these old newspapers?

4- I will help the environment.

5- The drought will cause a water shortage

Lesson (3)

1) Choose the correct word.

1- and 2- or 3- and 4- but

2) Fill in the spaces with

1- or 2- and 3- but 4- so

Exercises

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1- On December 12th, 1995.

2- 196 parties.

3- They agreed to reduce global warming.

4- They agreed to start reducing greenhouse gases.

2) Read and complete the text with:

1- problem 2- parties 3- coal

3) Choose the correct word.

1- bad 2- and 3- but

4- caption 5- or

6- so 7- body 8- lead-in

9- but 10- reporter's name

4) Put the words in the correct order.

1- Climate change is a dangerous problem.

2- It's very important to recycle.

3- A pact is a formal agreement.

4- People must stop using fossil fuels.

5- What causes climate change?

5) Read the passage then answer the questions.

1- change 2- slow

3- Student's answer.

4- 40% of carbon dioxide. 5- In Glasgow.

6- We can recycle paper, plastic and glass.

6) Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:

Climate change

Climate change affects everyone living on our planet, so we need to try to slow it by working together. Nations are now making plans to work on this problem. If we all help, we can slow climate change. We can recycle paper, plastic, and glass at home, but what can nations do?

Lesson (4)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1- It links the Red Sea and the Mediterranean Sea.

2- Yes. It's the most important canal in the world.

3- The ships travel to many countries all over the world. 4- Thousands of ships.

2) Put the words in the correct order.

1- Deforestation is a global emergency.

2- Who wrote the newspaper report?

3- We must keep the air clean.

4- Why do we need more trees?

Lessons (5&6)

1) Read and complete the dialog with:

1- koshari 2- ingredients 3- chickpeas

2) Choose the correct word.

1- koshari 2- appetizer 3- dish

4- ingredients 5- dessert

3) Put the words in the correct order.

1- Nada has some money an a shopping bag.

2- My mom wants make koshari.

4) Read the passage then answer the questions.

1- meat 2- unhealthy

3- A famous restaurant. 4- Because it is healthy.

5- Rice, macaroni, lentils and chickpeas

6- Student's answer.

5) Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:

Your favorite meal

My favourite meal is koshari. I like it very much because it is a plant-based meal. The ingredients of koshari are rice, macaroni, lentils and chickpeas. My mothers cooks delicious koshari. I eat it at home with my family.

Exam on Unit (12)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1- A drought happens where there isn't enough rain for a long time. 2- They become dry.

3- Farmers. 4- When people don't have all the water that they need.

2) Read and complete the text with:

1- plant 2- shade 3- be

3) Read the passage then answer the questions.

1- recycled 2- climate change

3- We can slow climate change.

4- By reducing green houses immediately.

5- Student's answer. 6- 1995.

4) The Reader.

1- T 2- F 3- babies 4- happy

5) Choose the correct word.

1- will have 2- and 3- gets 4- or

6) Put the words in the correct order.

1- Electric cars will help the environment.

2- How do humans affect the environment?

7) Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:

How to help the environment

We have to help the environment. Fossil fuels like coal, gas and oil cause air pollution. Cars, buses, trains and other traffic increase carbon dioxide in the air. We can use electric cars to keep the environment clean. We should recycle plastic bags and bottles.

Final Revision Answers

The Story (Amir takes action)

Exercises (1)

1) Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1-T 2-F 3-F 4-T
5-T 6-F 7-T

2) Choose the correct answer.

1-laundry 2-village 3-Nile
4-plastic 5-seagull 6-beautiful
7-leg 8-in trouble 9-respect
10-horrible

Exercises (2)

1) Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1-F 2-F 3-T 4-T
5-F 6-T 7-F 8-T

2) Choose the correct answer.

1-tablet 2-sad 3-friends
4-plan 5-cloth 6-store
7-cousins 8-fishermen

Exercises (3)

1) Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1-T 2-T 3-F 4-F
5-T 6-F

2) Choose the correct answer.

1-house 2-market 3-plastic
4-pictures 5-river 6-important
7-cousins 8-happy 9-nest 10-babies

Final Revision

Unit (7)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1-Lots of trees. 2-Carbon dioxide.
3-To build home or make farms.
4-Yes, it is.

2) Read and complete the dialog.

1-creating 2-keep 3-garbage

3) Read and complete the text.

1-pollution 2-resources 3-electricity

4) Read the following text and answer questions.

1-Iceland 2-makes
3-193 meters high.
4-For an industrial metal plant.
5-Student's answer.
6-It took five years to build, from 2003 to 2007.

5) Choose the correct answer. (Vocabulary)

1-mountainous 2-rainforest 3-trees
4-coastal 5-rainforest 6-urban
7-dry 8-Fuel 9-Emissions
10-pollution 11-recycle 12-gas
13-polar 14-Climate change
15-Renewable

-) Choose the correct answer. (Grammar)

1-riding 2-is walking 3-picking
4-are learning 5-Are you 6-watching
7-am writing 8-collecting
9-are helping 10-doing 11-going
12-reading 13-recycling 14-isn't
15-are planting 16-watching

6) Put the words in the correct order.

1-What kind of environment do you live in?
2-There are lots of trees in a rainforest.
3-Geothermal energy comes from natural resources.
4-Trees help to protect the environment.
5-Iceland is a cold country.
6-Why is it important to recycle?
7-What can we do to help the environment?

7) Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:

It's important to keep the River clean. Water pollution affects the Nile badly. We shouldn't throw plastic bottles on the River. Garbage is also harmful to the river. It makes the water dirty. We shouldn't put chemicals in the river to keep it clean.

8) Read and write the correct form of the word(s).

1-am walking 2-talking 3-is waiting
4-learning 5-is watching
6-are listening 7-reading 8-helping
9-watching 10-go 11-doing

Unit (8)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1- It lasts for four days. 2- A sheep.
3- Meat. 4- The mosque.

2) Read and complete the dialog.

1- Grandma 2- celebrate 3- dress.

3) Read and complete the text.

1- spring 2- traditional 3- eggs

4) Read the following text and answer questions.

1- Giza 2- fattah
3- Hatshepsut. 4- Sham El-Nessim.
5- Student's answer. 6- In the Red Sea.

5) Ch... e the correct answer. (Vocabulary)

1- Al-Adha 2- fairgrounds 3- prayers
4- sunrise 5- grateful 6- Hawawshi
7- fatta 8- linen 9- cool
10- dessert 11- lanterns 12- out
13- pilgrimage 14- digest 15- recipes

-) Choose the correct answer. (Grammar)

1- often 2- carefully 3- always
4- always 5- well
6- am making 7- eat
8- usually wear 9- is helping 10- works
11- wear 12- are celebrating
13- am painting 14- lives 15- quickly

6) Put the words in the correct order.

1- Egypt is a fantastic country to visit.
2- There are some very big statues.
3- What do you wear on special days?
4- Linen keeps you cool.
5- Eid Al-Adha is a very important Islamic festival.
6- They are playing aboard game now.

7) Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:

I went o the pyramids. I went with my family. I went by bus. They are in Giza. They are great. We took photos. We saw the sphinx. We enjoyed our time there. I enjoyed talking to tourists.

8) Read and write the correct form of the word(s).

1- wears 2- Are 3- well
4- don't often 5- doing 6- never
7- lives 8- do
9- am helping 10- carefully 11- watches

Unit (9)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1- In Luxor. 2- The kings and the queens.
3- In Giza. 4- From one piece of stone.

2) Read and complete the dialog.

1- doing 2- library 3- interesting

3) Read and complete the text.

1- flood 2- civilization 3- seasons

4) Read the following text and answer questions.

1- flooding 2- 4 months
3- Student's answer.
4- During the growing season.
5- Three months. 6- Because of the River Nile.

5) Choose the correct answer. (Vocabulary)

1- heritage 2- past 3- Temples
4- developed 5- civilization 6- sites
7- identity 8- calendar 9- flooded
10- flooding 11- harvesting 12- King
13- protect 14- cruise 15- exhibition

-) Choose the correct answer. (Grammar)

1- were looking 2- was reading 3- found
4- turned 5- was sitting 6- buried
7- carve 8- made 9- were you doing
10- were 11- were playing
12- was digging 13- was making
14- were visiting 15- saw

6) Put the words in the correct order.

1- What artifacts did you find?
2- Adam has to design a new museum.
3- Mazen used a bar chart to show his information.
4- Agriculture is a part of a country heritage.
5- I came home while Ali was watching TV.
6- Egypt is a fantastic country to visit.

7) Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:

The Sphinx is a very important historical site. It's at Giza. It's famous all over the world. Archaeologists think that the ancient Egyptians built it to protect the Pyramids. It's a part of Egypt's culture, it's a mark of Egypt's heritage.

8) Read and write the correct form of the word(s).

1- found 2- doing 3- was
4- was 5- Were 6- were
7- sat 8- were you 9- took
10- showed 11- met

Unit (10)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1- Her brother Faisal.
2- A wildlife photographer.
3- Yes, they do. 4- Yesterday.

2) Read and complete the dialog.

1- causes 2- factories 3- solve

3) Read and complete the text.

1- smoke 2- technology 3- devices

4) Read the following text and answer questions.

1- Air 3- scrubbers 3- Student's answer.
4- We have learned about scrubbers and smog-free towers that help to clean gases and pollution produced by factories and industry.
5- Greening is growing a wall of plants on the side of a building. 6- It creates pollution.

5) Choose the correct answer. (Vocabulary)

1- presentation 2- email 3- account
4- pollution 5- vlog 6- of
7- keyboard 8- with 9- cyberfriends
10- nasty 11- Photography 12- in
13- fossil fuels 14- incredible 15- website

-) Choose the correct answer. (Grammar)

1- shouldn't 2- should 3- have
4- forget 5- shouldn't 6- should
7- do 8- or 9- at
10- but 11- or 12- should
13- be 14- wear 15- shouldn't

6) Put the words in the correct order.

1- The smart phone is a form of technology.
2- You should check your spelling.
3- I'm going to making a new video.
4- Do you like writing stories?
5- What causes air pollution?
6- Nadia has made a new video for her vlog.

7) Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:

A presentation and website are means of communications. A presentation is a way to share information with others. When you give a presentation, you share information about something or explain something by talking about it. A website is a home page on the World Wide Web. Websites are usually about one topic. Users can access websites from different electronic devices like smartphones, tables, and laptops.

8) Read and write the correct form of the word(s).

1- in 2- at 3- or
4- but 5- or 6- shouldn't
7- should 8- eat 9- should
10- in 11- do

Unit (11)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1- Birds. 2- In no more than one day.
3- It burns fossil fuels. 4- Engineers.

2) Read and complete the dialog.

1- highway 2- major 3- skiff

3) Read and complete the text.

1- bikes 2- canals 3- transportation

4) Read the following text and answer questions.

1- River Nile 2- wood
3- Student's answer. 4- To catch the wind.
5- It was called a skiff. 6- Along the River Nile.

5) Choose the correct answer. (Vocabulary)

1- destination 2- pollution 3- foot
4- time 5- jam 6- lights
7- bins 8- Green 9- residents
10- reduce 11- garbage 12- reuse
13- recycle 14- volunteers
15- wagons and trucks

-) Choose the correct answer. (Grammar)

1- cheapest 2- cleaner 3- greener
4- largest 5- best 6- more
7- worst 8- busier 9- biggest
10- larger 11- reduce 12- dislike
13- Disconnect 14- unhealthy 15- unhappy

6) Put the words in the correct order.

1- The Sahara desert is the biggest in the world.

2- A gold medal is better than a silver.

3- Solar energy is more ecological than fossil fuels.

4- Tutankhamun is the most famous pharaoh in the world.

5- Elephants are larger than polar bears.

6- What did the oars do?

7) Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:

In ancient Egypt the most important highway was the River Nile. The Egyptians traveled mostly along the river because all the major cities were along the River Nile. So boats and ships were the most important forms of transportation. Most Egyptians used a small boat called a skiff. They made this simple boat from papyrus and rope. People could travel short distances in these boats, or they could use it for fishing. They used oars to make the boats move.

8) Read and write the correct form of the word(s).

1-unhappy 2-taller 3-faster
4-unhealthy 5-slowly 6-careful
7-must 8-more 9-better
10-the biggest 11-cheapest

Unit (12)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1-At the park.

2- We were running and playing football.

3-A very unusual sound. 4-It was very hungry.

2) Read and complete the dialog.

1-reading 2-about 3-erosion

3) Read and complete the text.

1-rivers 2-Farmers 3-danger

4) Read the following text and answer questions.

1-Coal 2-Solar 3-Student's answer.
4-Our care. 5-Yes, it is.
6-By many factories.

5) Choose the correct answer. (Vocabulary)

1-drought 2-flood 3-tsunami
4- glacier 5-atmosphere
6-acid rain 7-planet 8-party
9-conference 10-treaty 11-pact
12-lead-in 13-headline 14-caption
15-natural

-) Choose the correct answer. (Grammar)

1-will rain 2-won't 3-buy
4-will 5-go 6-will have
7-will lose 8-recycle 9-will be
10-will help 11-gets 12-and
13-or 14-but 15-so

6) Put the words in the correct order.

1-Climate change affects everything on our planet.

2-World leaders had a very important meeting.

3-What is your favourite food?

4-Erosion is a natural process.

5-What ingredients do you need?

6-Why do we need more trees?

7) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Food is very important for all of us. We should eat healthy food. They are food from plants like wheat, oat and flour. There are a lot of food from animals like cheese and yogurt.

8) Read and write the correct form of the word(s).

1-use 2-but 3-so
4-visit 5-go 6-won't
7-but 8-will buy 9-burn
10-Will 11-be

Exam (1)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1-Fares is in grade four.

2-He likes reading stories.

3-Dalia. 4-English.

2) Read and complete the text.

1-energy 2-out 3-wind

3) Read the following text and answer questions.

sheep · tree · It was a hot day
He was carrying a bag. · Father made it.
Student's answer.

4- The Reader:

1-T 2-T · plastic · 4-tablet

Choose the correct answer.

1-aren't 2-did 3-do 4-doesn't

Final Revision Answers

6) Put the words in the correct order.

1- We are walking to school now.

2- What are you wearing today?

7) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Sham Al-Nessim is my favourite festival. We eat boiled eggs. We go to the gardens. We play there.

Exam (2)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1- On Friday. 2- On foot.

3- Football. 4- In the kitchen.

2) Read and complete the text.

1- spring 2- picnics 3- celebrated

3) Read the following text and answer questions.

1- bad 2- sister

3- To see what happens.

4- Some people she didn't know.

5- Amira and her mother. 6- Very sad.

4) The Reader:

1- T 2- F 3- harn 4- grocery store

5) Choose the correct answer.

1- were playing 2- help 3- walks 4- and

6) Put the words in the correct order.

1- Ful medames never has meat in it.

2- How many tourists travel to Luxor?

7) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Last week we visited the pyramids. It's a fantastic place. The pyramids are in Giza. Ancient Egyptians built them .They used huge stones. We were very happy.

Exam (3)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1- Spring 2- Sunny and warm.

3- They color them. 4- To parks and beaches.

2) Read and complete the text.

1- recycle 2- garbage 3- protect

3) Read the following text and answer questions.

1- tourists 2- pleased

3- To see its wonderful treasures and monuments.

4- They can see some artifacts.

5- Khan El-Khalili. 6- Student's answer.

4) The Reader:

1- T 2- F 3- archaeologists 4- trouble

5) Choose the correct answer.

1- cleaning 2- the biggest

3- made 4- will help

6) Put the words in the correct order.

1- You shouldn't copy another person's work.

2- Will they go to the science museum?

7) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Hawawshi is my favourite dish. We use beef, bread, meat and onion to make it. We pressed it and put it in the oven. I usually eat it with salad.

Exam (4)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1- She's in primary 4. 2- By bus.

3- English. 4- Basketball.

2) Read and complete the text with:

1- heritage 2- sites 3- learn

3) Read the following text and answer questions.

1- Eid Al-Fitr 2- three

3- He made a special lantern to celebrate Ramadan. 4- They fast six days.

5- They wear best clothes for the celebration, visit there families and friends, gave each other presents. 6- Student's answer.

4) The Reader:

1- False 2- False 3- roof 4- help

5) Choose the correct answer.

1- are taking 2- goes 3- shouldn't 4- greener

6) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1- Ancient Egyptian made pottery vases from clay.

2- How many trees did Egypt plant?

7) Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words about:

Last summer I went to Alex. I went with my family. We stayed in a hotel. We went to the sea. We enjoyed our time there.

Exam (5)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1- Energy. 2- From fossil fuels.

3- Coal, oil and gas.

4- A lot of carbon dioxide is released into the atmosphere.

2) Read and complete the text with:

1- spring 2- families 3- games

3) Read the following text and answer questions.

1- swimming 2- Alexandria

2- The swimming is safer than the sea.

4- Because he was swimming well.

5- He wasn't very happy. 6- Student's answer.

4) The Reader:

1- True 2- False 3- leg 4- riverbanks

5) Choose the correct answer.

1- doing 2- rains 3- was making 4- well

6) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1- Solar energy comes from the sun.

2- How long is the harvesting season?

7) Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words about:

My favorite dish is rice with chicken. It is so delicious! My mom cooks it perfectly. She adds spices that make it tasty. I love to eat it with my family. Mom's cooking always makes me happy.

Exam (6)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1- Luxor

2- The Temple of Karnak and the Valley of the Kings. 3- The Ancient Egyptians.

4- Lots of paintings and engravings.

2) Read and complete the text with:

1- caused 2- solutions 3- trees

3) Read the following text and answer questions.

1- four 2- car

3- At two o'clock. 4- At six o'clock.

5- Breakfast. 6- Student's answer.

4) The Reader:

1- False 2- True

3- volunteered 4- Waleed

5) Choose the correct answer.

1- are talking 2- celebrating

3- saw 4- and

6) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1- Egypt is a fantastic country to visit.

2- How do many tourists travel to Luxor?

7) Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words about:

Alexandria is in the north of Egypt. I can visit Alexandria library, Qaitbay citadel and Montaza palace. Alexandria is famous for. Its exciting beaches and fine weather especially in summer. On the beaches, I can make sandcastles, enjoy my time, play and run. Really, Alexandria is an exciting place to live.

Exam (7)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1- At six o'clock. 2- English and science.

3- Because he is kind and polite.

4- At ten o'clock.

2) Read and complete the dialog.

1- Eid Al-Adha 2- sacrifice 3- prayers

3) Read the following text and answer questions.

1- Luxor 2- Eid Al-Fitr

In the living room.

4- Some special cakes.

5- Her best dress and shoes.

6- Student's answer.

4) The Reader:

1- True 2- True 3- seagull 4- plastic

5) Choose the correct answer.

1- wearing 2- visits

3- shouldn't 4- easily

6) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1- What is this statue made of?

2- You shouldn't copy another person's work.

7) Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words about:

We should all hep the environment. We can plant more trees to make it a cleaner place to live. Plants give us oxygen and take out carbon dioxide. It's very important to help the environment and clean it. We will be happier if we keep the environment clean.

Final Revision Answers

Exam (8)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1-It creates erosion. 2-They become dry.

3-Heavy agriculture. 4-Farmers.

2) Read and complete the dialog.

1-doing 2-environments 3-rainforest

3) Read the following text and answer questions.

1-wood 2-old

3-The River Nile.

4-To move and control the direction.

5-To catch the wind. 6-Student's answer.

4) The Reader:

1-False 2-False 3-emails 4-cotton

5) Choose the correct answer.

1-is watching 2-should

3-were 4- are you doing

6) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1-Your headline is very good.

2-What food can you eat at a feast?

7) Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words about:

Egypt is a fantastic country to visit. There are many places to see in Egypt such as the Pyramids of Giza, the old Luxor Temple, the Red Sea and the River Nile. Egyptians are famous for welcoming visitors with food and drink and for inviting guests. Koshari and Fattah are the most Egyptian foods.

Exam (9)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1-We need to make our page private.

2-We can turn off them.

3-Our friends. 4-Yes, I can.

2) Read and complete the dialog.

1-Pyramids 2-protect 3-carved

3) Read the following text and answer questions.

1-4000 2-artifacts 3-Archaeologists

4-Because of the amazing archaeological sites.

5-The large monuments - pyramids and temples.

6-Student's answer.

4) The Reader:

1-False 2-False 3-worried 4-Grandma

5) Choose the correct answer.

1-were playing 2-bigger

3- is listening 4- shouldn't

6) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1-I visited the museum yesterday.

2-Why do we need more trees?

7) Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words about:

Last week, we visited the pyramids. We went by bus. We rode camels. We met a lot of tourists. We talked to them. We were very happy. We enjoyed our time there. We took a lot of pictures. Really, we had a nice time there.

Exam (10)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1-Walking, running and swimming.

2-Mules, donkeys and horses.

3-Small boats like canoes. 4-Farmers.

2) Read and complete the dialog.

1-did 2-visit 3-Citadel

3) Read the following text and answer questions.

1-temples 2-heritage 3-People.

4-At places like Abu Simbel, Luxor and Giza.

5-To learn about things people did in the past.

6-Student's answer.

4) The Reader:

1-True 2-True 3-leg 4-Trucks

5) Choose the correct answer.

1-eat 2-but

3-will help 4- are listening

6) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1-Lots of people visit Egypt every year.

2-What is the moral of this story?

7) Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about:

Last week, Sara went to the museum. She went with her mom. She went by bus. She saw a lot of artifacts there. She met a lot of tourists she talked to them. She enjoyed her time there. She was very happy.

Exam (11)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1- It's hot. 2- Solar energy. 3- It's renewable. 4- From the wind.

2) Read and complete the text with:

1- atmosphere 2- homes 3- plant

3) Read the following text and answer questions.

1- sunset 2- food 3- Good / Tasty. 4- My mom. 5- Kunafa. 6- Slowly.

4) The Reader:

1- True 2- False 3- roof 4- smart

5) Choose the correct answer.

1- in 2- doing 3- rain 4- more expensive

6) ...r the words to make correct sentences.

1- The sun never shines in the evening.

2- I usually wear colorful clothes.

7) Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words about:

Water pollution is one of the most important problems. People always throw plastic bottles and bags in the river. Sometimes people throw garbage, it produces chemicals. We should work hard to keep our rivers clean to drink clear water.



إلى اللقاء في الصف الخامس الابتدائي